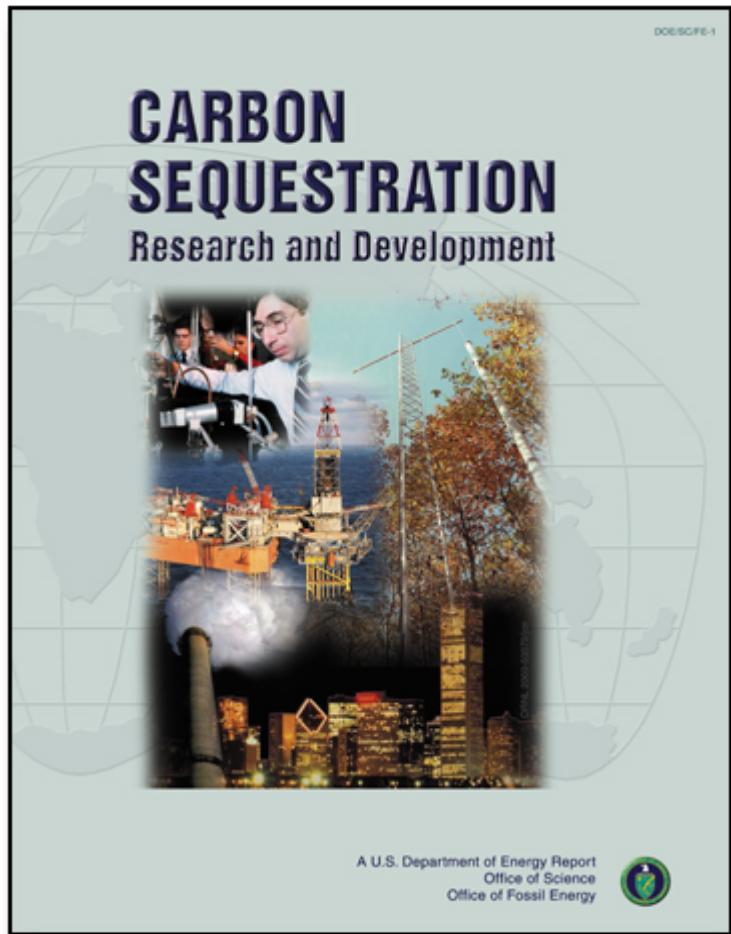


# CARBON SEQUESTRATION RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT

The following files are in PDF and can be read using [Acrobat Reader](#).

- [TRANSMITTAL LETTER](#)
- [FRONT MATTER](#)
  - CONTENTS
  - EXECUTIVE SUMMARY
- [1. CARBON SEQUESTRATION: A THIRD APPROACH TO CARBON MANAGEMENT](#)
- [2. SEPARATION AND CAPTURE OF CARBON DIOXIDE](#)
- [3. OCEAN SEQUESTRATION](#)
- [4. CARBON SEQUESTRATION IN TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEMS](#)
- [5. SEQUESTRATION OF CARBON DIOXIDE IN GEOLOGIC FORMATIONS](#)
- [6. ADVANCED BIOLOGICAL PROCESSES](#)
- [7. ADVANCED CHEMICAL APPROACHES TO SEQUESTRATION](#)
- [8. DEVELOPING AN EMERGING TECHNOLOGY ROAD MAP FOR CARBON CAPTURE AND SEQUESTRATION](#)
- [9. STAKEHOLDER PERSPECTIVES](#)
- [10. FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS](#)
- [APPENDIX A. CARBON SEQUESTRATION WORKING PAPER CONTRIBUTORS AND 1998 WORKSHOP ATTENDEES](#)
- [APPENDIX B. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS OF ECOSYSTEMS AND RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT NEEDS](#)
- [APPENDIX C. ATTENDEES AT DOE WORKSHOP ON RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES FOR CARBON SEQUESTRATION](#)



A Service of the [Networking and Computing Technologies Division](#)

Rev: Wednesday, 14-May-2003 16:50:37 EDT - 3



## Department of Energy

Washington, DC 20585

The potential impact of rising greenhouse gases in the atmosphere will be a global concern well into the 21<sup>st</sup> century and perhaps beyond. The Department of Energy already has extensive energy research and development programs that will result in less carbon-intensive and more energy-efficient methods of generating energy in the future. These two programs, although initially started for other reasons, will help reduce the emissions of those greenhouse gases.

A third program, carbon sequestration, now offers the potential to further reduce the buildup in atmospheric concentrations of greenhouse gases. Although there are a few pioneering scientists who have been conducting research in carbon sequestration for many years, this field is relatively new. The field is remarkably broad-based both in the ideas for potential sequestration options and in the science spread across many different disciplines. Structuring a research program that makes sense of the options and allocates resources in high-priority topics will be a challenge.

This Carbon Sequestration Research and Development Report is an important step in our goal to implement the research program in an organized, coordinated, and thoughtful manner. More than 70 scientists came together to help write the report and more than 200 experts from around the world gathered at a September 1999 workshop to suggest research priorities, share their own experiences, and form collaborations. We want to thank each of them. The proceedings of this workshop are provided in Chapter 9.

We also want to encourage those scientists who are participating in the actual research. Some of these carbon sequestration options may be impractical for economic, environmental, or other reasons. That will be critically important information. New discoveries will also uncover new options. We believe that carbon sequestration holds great potential to reduce greenhouse gas accumulation at costs and impacts that will prove to be affordable and acceptable. We intend to continue the dialog with the public, industry, academia, the environmental community, and international organizations that has begun on this important research topic. We critically need research and development on carbon sequestration to turn scientific potential into pragmatic reality.

Martha A. Krebs  
Director  
Office of Science

Robert S. Krikowicz  
Principal Deputy Assistant Secretary  
for Fossil Energy



Printed with soy ink on recycled paper

# **CARBON SEQUESTRATION RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT**

**Office of Science  
Office of Fossil Energy  
U.S. Department of Energy**

**December 1999**

Dave Reichle, ORNL  
John Houghton, DOE

Bob Kane, DOE  
Jim Ekmann, FETC

Sally Benson, LBNL  
John Clarke, PNNL  
Roger Dahlman, DOE  
George Hendrey, BNL  
Howard Herzog, MIT  
Jennie Hunter-Cevera, LBNL  
Gary Jacobs, ORNL  
Rod Judkins, ORNL

Joan Ogden, Princeton  
Anna Palmisano, DOE  
Robert Socolow, Princeton  
John Stringer, EPRI  
Terry Surles, LLNL  
Alan Wolsky, ANL  
Nicholas Woodward, DOE  
Michael York, DOE

This report is available on the world wide web at  
[www.ornl.gov/carbon\\_sequestration/](http://www.ornl.gov/carbon_sequestration/)

This report was prepared as an account of work sponsored by an agency of the United States government. Neither the United States government nor any agency thereof, nor any of their employees, makes any warranty, express or implied, or assumes any legal liability or responsibility for the accuracy, completeness, or usefulness of any information, apparatus, product, or process disclosed, or represents that its use would not infringe privately owned rights. Reference herein to any specific commercial product, process, or service by trade name, trademark, manufacturer, or otherwise, does not necessarily constitute or imply its endorsement, recommendation, or favoring by the United States government or any agency thereof. The views and opinions of authors expressed herein do not necessarily state or reflect those of the United States government or any agency thereof.

This report has been reproduced from the best available copy.

Reports are available to the public from the following source.

National Technical Information Service  
5285 Port Royal Road  
Springfield, VA 22161  
**Telephone** 703-605-6000 (1-800-553-6847)  
**TDD** 703-487-4639  
**Fax** 703-605-6900  
**E-mail** [orders@ntis.fedworld.gov](mailto:orders@ntis.fedworld.gov)  
**Web site** [www.ntis.gov/ordering.htm](http://www.ntis.gov/ordering.htm)

Reports are available to U.S. Department of Energy (DOE) employees, DOE contractors, Energy Technology Data Exchange (ETDE) representatives, and International Nuclear Information System (INIS) representatives from the following source.

Office of Scientific and Technical Information  
P.O. Box 62  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831  
**Telephone** 865-576-8401  
**Fax** 865-576-5728  
**E-mail** [reports@adonis.osti.gov](mailto:reports@adonis.osti.gov)  
**Web site** [www.osti.gov/products/sources.html](http://www.osti.gov/products/sources.html)

Reports produced after January 1, 1996, are generally available via the DOE Information Bridge.

**Web site** [www.doe.gov/bridge](http://www.doe.gov/bridge)

## CONTENTS

<b>FIGURES .....</b>	<b>ix</b>
<b>TABLES .....</b>	<b>xiii</b>
<b>ABBREVIATIONS, ACRONYMS, AND INITIALISMS .....</b>	<b>xv</b>
<b>EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....</b>	<b>xvii</b>
<b>1. CARBON SEQUESTRATION: A THIRD APPROACH TO CARBON MANAGEMENT .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
<b>1.1 Carbon Management .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
<b>1.1.1 The Challenge .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
<b>1.1.2 The Vision .....</b>	<b>1-2</b>
<b>1.1.3 Three Approaches to Carbon Management .....</b>	<b>1-2</b>
<b>1.1.4 What is Carbon Sequestration? .....</b>	<b>1-3</b>
<b>1.1.5 Necessary Characteristics for Carbon Sequestration Systems .....</b>	<b>1-4</b>
<b>1.2 The Global and the Fossil Fuel Carbon Cycles .....</b>	<b>1-4</b>
<b>1.2.1 The Global Carbon Cycle .....</b>	<b>1-4</b>
<b>1.2.2 The Fossil Fuel Cycle .....</b>	<b>1-5</b>
<b>1.3 Approach and Scope of This Report .....</b>	<b>1-6</b>
<b>1.4 Toward Development of a Carbon Sequestration Road Map .....</b>	<b>1-8</b>
<b>1.4.1 Foundations for an Expanded National Program in Carbon Sequestration .....</b>	<b>1-8</b>
<b>1.4.2 The Need for a National R&amp;D Plan for Carbon Sequestration .....</b>	<b>1-10</b>
<b>1.5 End Notes .....</b>	<b>1-11</b>
<b>1.6 References .....</b>	<b>1-12</b>
<b>1.7 Acknowledgments .....</b>	<b>1-13</b>
<b>2. SEPARATION AND CAPTURE OF CARBON DIOXIDE .....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
<b>2.1 Characterization of Carbon Flows (Source Terms) .....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
<b>2.2 Current and Potential Science and Technology Requirements .....</b>	<b>2-4</b>
<b>2.3 Current and Potential Science and Technology Capabilities .....</b>	<b>2-4</b>
<b>2.3.1 Chemical and Physical Absorption .....</b>	<b>2-4</b>
<b>2.3.2 Physical and Chemical Adsorption .....</b>	<b>2-6</b>
<b>2.3.3 Low-temperature Distillation .....</b>	<b>2-7</b>
<b>2.3.4 Gas-Separation Membranes .....</b>	<b>2-8</b>
<b>2.4 Science and Technology Gaps .....</b>	<b>2-9</b>
<b>2.4.1 Chemical and Physical Absorption .....</b>	<b>2-9</b>
<b>2.4.2 Physical and Chemical Adsorption .....</b>	<b>2-10</b>
<b>2.4.3 Low-Temperature Distillation .....</b>	<b>2-11</b>
<b>2.4.4 Gas-Separation Membranes .....</b>	<b>2-11</b>
<b>2.4.5 Product Treatment and Conversion .....</b>	<b>2-12</b>

2.4.6 Transportation .....	2-12
2.4.7 Advanced Concepts .....	2-12
2.5 Alignment of Requirements to Capabilities (R&D Road Map) .....	2-14
2.6 References .....	2-14
3. OCEAN SEQUESTRATION .....	3-1
3.1 Direct Injection of CO <sub>2</sub> .....	3-3
3.1.1 Science and Technology Requirements .....	3-3
3.1.2 Current Scientific and Technological Capabilities .....	3-4
3.1.3 Science and Technology Gaps .....	3-8
3.1.4 Research and Development Plan .....	3-9
3.2 Enhancement of Natural Carbon Sequestration in the Ocean .....	3-9
3.2.1 Science and Technology Requirements .....	3-11
3.2.2 Current Science and Technology Capabilities .....	3-11
3.2.3 Science and Technology Gaps .....	3-12
3.2.4 Research and Development Plan .....	3-13
3.3 Longer-Term, Innovative Concepts for Ocean CO <sub>2</sub> Sequestration .....	3-14
3.4 Conclusion .....	3-15
3.5 Acknowledgments .....	3-16
3.6 References .....	3-16
4. CARBON SEQUESTRATION IN TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEMS .....	4-1
4.1 Terrestrial Ecosystems: Natural Biological Scrubbers .....	4-3
4.2 Potential for Carbon Sequestration .....	4-5
4.3 Current Capabilities .....	4-8
4.4 Terrestrial Ecosystem Science and Technology Road Map .....	4-10
4.4.1 Objectives .....	4-12
4.4.2 Strategies .....	4-15
4.4.3 Research and Development Needs .....	4-20
4.5 Summary .....	4-24
4.6 Acknowledgments .....	4-26
4.7 End Notes .....	4-26
4.8 References .....	4-27
5. SEQUESTRATION OF CARBON DIOXIDE IN GEOLOGIC FORMATIONS .....	5-1
5.1 Sequestration in Geologic Formations Builds on a Strong Experience Base .....	5-1
5.1.1 Sequestration Mechanisms .....	5-1
5.1.2 Sources and Forms of CO <sub>2</sub> .....	5-3
5.1.3 Capacity of Geologic Formations Suitable for Sequestration .....	5-3
5.1.4 Drivers for R&D .....	5-3

<b>5.2 Assessment of Current Capabilities and R&amp;D Needs</b> .....	5-5
5.2.1 Opportunities for CO <sub>2</sub> Sequestration in Oil and Gas Formations .....	5-6
5.2.2 CO <sub>2</sub> Sequestration in Brine Formations .....	5-8
5.2.3 Opportunities for CO <sub>2</sub> Sequestration in Coal Formations .....	5-11
<b>5.3 Cross-Cutting R&amp;D Needs for Geologic Formations</b> .....	5-13
5.3.1 CO <sub>2</sub> Trapping Mechanisms .....	5-13
5.3.2 CO <sub>2</sub> Waste Stream Characteristics .....	5-13
5.3.3 Formation Characterization .....	5-14
5.3.4 Injection, Drilling, and Well Completion Technology .....	5-16
5.3.5 Performance Assessment .....	5-16
5.3.6 Monitoring .....	5-16
5.3.7 Cross-Cutting Fundamental Research Needs .....	5-17
<b>5.4 Advanced Concepts for Sequestration in Geologic Formations</b> .....	5-18
<b>5.5 Overall R&amp;D Priorities</b> .....	5-19
<b>5.6 Works Consulted</b> .....	5-20
<b>6. ADVANCED BIOLOGICAL PROCESSES</b> .....	6-1
6.1 Background and Rationale for Advanced Biological Processes to Sequester Carbon .....	6-1
6.2 Carbon Capture Technology Support .....	6-2
6.2.1 Current Science and Technology Capabilities .....	6-2
6.2.2 Science and Technology Requirements .....	6-3
6.2.3 Research Implementation .....	6-4
6.3 Sequestration in Reduced Carbon Compounds .....	6-5
6.3.1 Current Science and Technology Capabilities .....	6-5
6.3.2 Science and Technology Requirements .....	6-5
6.3.3 Research Implementation .....	6-6
6.4 Increasing Plant Productivity .....	6-8
6.4.1 Current Science and Technology Capabilities .....	6-9
6.4.2 Science and Technology Requirements .....	6-13
6.4.3 Research Implementation .....	6-13
6.5 Alternative Durable Materials .....	6-14
6.5.1 Current Science and Technology Capabilities .....	6-14
6.5.2 Science and Technology Requirements .....	6-15
6.5.3 Research Implementation .....	6-16
6.6 Summary and Conclusions .....	6-16
6.7 References .....	6-19
<b>7. ADVANCED CHEMICAL APPROACHES TO SEQUESTRATION</b> .....	7-1
7.1 Introduction .....	7-1
7.1.1 Introduction to the Problem and Solutions .....	7-2
7.1.2 Potential Chemical Approaches to Sequestration .....	7-2
7.2 Chemical Processes for Sequestration .....	7-4
7.2.1 Inert Benign Long-Term Storage Forms .....	7-5
7.2.2 Products from Carbon Dioxide Utilization .....	7-8

7.3 Enabling Chemical Technologies .....	7-10
7.4 Summary .....	7-12
7.5 End Notes .....	7-14
7.6 References .....	7-14
<b>8. DEVELOPING AN EMERGING TECHNOLOGY ROAD MAP FOR CARBON CAPTURE AND SEQUESTRATION .....</b>	<b>8-1</b>
8.1 Introduction .....	8-1
8.2 A Carbon Capture and Sequestration System .....	8-1
8.3 Building an Emerging Technology Road Map .....	8-3
8.4 Building the Carbon Capture and Sequestration Road Map .....	8-4
8.5 Building the R&D Capacity .....	8-6
8.5.1 Advanced Sensors and Monitoring Systems .....	8-7
8.5.2 Carbon Processing Platforms .....	8-9
8.5.3 Biological Absorption Platforms .....	8-10
8.5.4 Engineered Injection Platforms .....	8-10
8.6 Next Steps .....	8-11
<b>9. STAKEHOLDER PERSPECTIVES: CARBON SEQUESTRATION STAKEHOLDERS WORKSHOP .....</b>	<b>9-1</b>
9.1 Points Communicated to DOE at the Workshop .....	9-3
Collaborative Programs .....	9-3
Priority Setting .....	9-3
A Systems Approach .....	9-4
9.2 A Radical Approach to Global Warming .....	9-5
 Reports from the Plenary Sessions and the Breakout Groups .....	9-8
The Plenary Speakers .....	9-9
International Perspectives .....	9-9
Research Perspective .....	9-11
Environmental Community Perspectives .....	9-13
Energy Industry Perspective .....	9-14
Reports from Workshop Breakout Sessions .....	9-17
Carbon Separation and Capture .....	9-17
Carbon Sequestration in the Oceans .....	9-20
Carbon Sequestration in Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	9-23
Carbon Sequestration in Geologic Formations .....	9-26
Advanced Concepts for Carbon Sequestration .....	9-30
<b>10. FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS .....</b>	<b>10-1</b>
10.1 Findings .....	10-2
10.2 Recommendations .....	10-4
10.2.1 Beginning the R&D Program .....	10-4
10.2.2 Developing the Road Map .....	10-6
10.3 Principal Focus Area Recommendations .....	10-7
10.3.1 Separation and Capture of CO <sub>2</sub> .....	10-7
10.3.2 Ocean Sequestration .....	10-7
10.3.3 Carbon Sequestration in Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	10-8

---

10.3.4 Sequestration in Geological Formations.....	10-9
10.3.5 Advanced Biological Processes .....	10-10
10.3.6 Advanced Chemical Approaches .....	10-11
<b>10.4 References .....</b>	<b>10-11</b>
<b>Appendix A: CARBON SEQUESTRATION WORKING PAPER</b>	
<b>CONTRIBUTORS AND 1998 WORKSHOP ATTENDEES .....</b>	<b>A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B: DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS OF ECOSYSTEMS AND</b>	
<b>RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT NEEDS .....</b>	<b>B-1</b>
<b>Appendix C: ATTENDEES AT DOE WORKSHOP ON RESEARCH AND</b>	
<b>DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES FOR CARBON SEQUESTRATION.....</b>	<b>C-1</b>



## FIGURES

1.1	One representation of the reductions in CO <sub>2</sub> that would be necessary to reach atmospheric stabilization compares the IS92A (business as usual) scenario with a scenario (WRE550) that leads to stabilized atmospheric CO <sub>2</sub> concentrations of 550 ppm .....	1-2
1.2	Human-induced changes in the global carbon cycle resulting from increases in the combustion of fossil fuels and changing land-use patterns .....	1-5
1.3	Carbon flows in the energy system and sources of emissions in the United States in 1995 .....	1-6
1.4	Deploying an effective carbon sequestration system will require an integrated program of science, enabling technology, and advanced power systems—all dependent on better understanding of environmental carbon dynamics .....	1-7
2.1	Separation and capture R&D road map .....	2-13
3.1	Every year the ocean actively takes up one-third of our anthropogenic CO <sub>2</sub> emissions .....	3-2
3.2	A schematic diagram of the biological pump .....	3-3
3.3	For injection of CO <sub>2</sub> at depths of 1000 to 2000 m, it has been suggested that liquid CO <sub>2</sub> be transported from shore through a pipeline for discharge from a manifold lying on the ocean bottom .....	3-5
3.4	Simulated distribution of carbon injected into the ocean at a depth of 1720 m off the coast of Cape Hatteras, North Carolina, after 20 years of continuous injection, as computed by the three-dimensional ocean model of Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory .....	3-6
3.5	The multiple unit large-volume in situ filtration system (MULVFS) allows the precise determination of properties of particulate matter that is needed for a systematic survey of ocean carbon inventory and for the evaluation of ecosystem function .....	3-11
3.6	R&D road map for ocean sequestration of CO <sub>2</sub> .....	3-15

4.1	Overall system view of the science and technology road map for the terrestrial ecosystems .....	4-11
4.2	Detailed view of the system level showing the ecosystem categories that are part of the overall system .....	4-12
4.3	Detailed view of the objectives level showing the various components that feed into the three primary objectives that are described in equation (1) .....	4-13
4.4	Detailed view of the strategies level illustrating the options for which R&D will be required for effective implementation .....	4-16
4.5	Detailed view of the R&D needs level illustrating the fundamental R&D needed to support the development of carbon sequestration options for terrestrial ecosystems .....	4-21
5.1	Location of gas-producing areas in the United States .....	5-4
5.2	Location of deep saline aquifers in the United States .....	5-4
5.3	Location of coal-producing areas in the United States and power plants.....	5-5
5.4	Gravity segregation, viscous fingering, heterogeneity, and preferential flow through faulted cap rocks could influence CO <sub>2</sub> migration in the subsurface .....	5-10
5.5	Comparative evaluation of the technological and scientific maturity of operational requirements for sequestering CO <sub>2</sub> in geologic formations.....	5-15
5.6	Key elements of the R&D road map for sequestration of CO <sub>2</sub> in geologic formations .....	5-19
6.1	Typical leaf anatomy in a C3 plant.....	6-10
6.2	Typical leaf anatomy in a C4 plant.....	6-10
6.3	Carbon fixation as it occurs via the Hatch-Slack pathway in C4 plants .....	6-11
6.4	Key elements of the R&D road map for advanced biological processes .....	6-17
7.1	Mixtures of gas clathrates have been found near coasts around the world .....	7-7
7.2	Paths to utilize CO <sub>2</sub> in synthetic chemistry .....	7-8

7.3	A road map of needed research into advanced chemical approaches .....	7-11
8.1	The top-level diagram of a carbon capture and sequestration technology system showing the relationship to the fossil energy system .....	8-3
8.2	The structure of an emerging technology road map for carbon capture and sequestration .....	8-5
9.1	Emissions projection graph, and approaches a Texaco business unit may consider in managing greenhouse gas emissions .....	9-16
9.2	Example of methodology of displaying prioritization issues .....	9-19



**TABLES**

4.1	Global estimates of land area, net primary productivity (NPP), and carbon stocks in plant matter and soil for ecosystems of the world .....	4-4
4.2	The categorization of biomes used in this road-mapping exercise .....	4-6
5.1	Range of estimates for CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration in U.S. geologic formations .....	5-5
5.2	R&D priorities for CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration in oil and gas fields .....	5-9
5.3	R&D priorities for CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration in aqueous formations .....	5-12
5.4	R&D priorities for CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration in coal formations .....	5-14
6.1	Prioritization of advanced biological options .....	6-18
7.1	Thermodynamics of chemical/physical transformations involving CO <sub>2</sub> .....	7-4
7.2	Approaches to sequestration using chemical processes and examples of their use .....	7-13
8.1	System technology platforms .....	8-6
8.2	System component technologies .....	8-7
8.3	Science and technology capabilities .....	8-8
9.1	Sources of anthropogenic CO <sub>2</sub> emissions .....	9-18
9.2	Example of proposed reporting of CO <sub>2</sub> separation and capture costs (\$/ton) .....	9-18
9.3	Suggested program structure for geologic sequestration .....	9-29
9.4	Priority of cross-cutting technologies .....	9-29



## ABBREVIATIONS, ACRONYMS, AND INITIALISMS

BER	Office of Biological and Environmental Research (DOE)
BES	Office of Basic Energy Sciences (DOE)
CO	carbon monoxide
CO <sub>2</sub>	carbon dioxide
DEA	diethanolamine
DOE	U.S. Department of Energy
EOR	enhanced oil recovery
ESA	electrical swing adsorption
FACE	Free Air CO <sub>2</sub> Enrichment
GHG	Greenhouse Gas R&D Programme
GtC	billion tonnes of atmospheric carbon
H <sub>2</sub>	hydrogen gas
HNLC	high-nutrient, low-chlorophyll (ocean waters)
IEA	International Energy Agency
IGCC	integrated gasification combined cycle
IPCC	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
m	meter
MBARI	Monterey Bay Aquarium Research Institute
MDEA	methyldiethanolamine
MEA	monoethanolamine
MIT	Massachusetts Institute of Technology
MPa	million Pascal (a measure of pressure)
NASA	National Aeronautics and Space Administration
NEE	net ecosystem exchange
NGO	nongovernmental organization
nm	nanometer
NO <sub>x</sub>	oxides of nitrogen
NSF	National Science Foundation
OCMIP	Ocean Carbon-Cycle Model Intercomparison Project
OGCM	ocean general circulation model
PCAST	President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology
POC	particulate organic carbon
ppm	parts per million
PSA	pressure swing adsorption
R&D	research and development
ROV	remotely operated vehicle
SO <sub>x</sub>	oxides of sulfur
TSA	thermal swing adsorption
USDA	United States Department of Agriculture
USGS	United States Geological Survey



## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Predictions of global energy use in the next century suggest a continued increase in carbon emissions and rising concentrations of carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) in the atmosphere unless major changes are made in the way we produce and use energy—in particular, how we manage carbon. For example, the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) predicts in its 1995 “business as usual” energy scenario that future global emissions of CO<sub>2</sub> to the atmosphere will increase from 7.4 billion tonnes of carbon (GtC) per year in 1997 to approximately 26 GtC/year by 2100. IPCC also projects a doubling of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentration by the middle of next century and growing rates of increase beyond. Although the effects of increased CO<sub>2</sub> levels on global climate are uncertain, many scientists agree that a doubling of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations could have a variety of serious environmental consequences.

One way to manage carbon is to use energy more efficiently to reduce our need for a major energy and carbon source—fossil fuel combustion. Another way is to increase our use of low-carbon and carbon-free fuels and technologies (nuclear power and renewable sources such as solar energy, wind power, and biomass fuels). Both approaches are supported by the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE) and are not the focus of this report.

The third and newest way to manage carbon, capturing and securely storing carbon emitted from the global energy system (carbon sequestration), is truly radical in a technology context. The development of today’s fossil-energy-based system is rooted in the Industrial Revolution. For over 200 years, the development of energy technology has been focused on lowering costs through increased efficiency to support economic growth. Because of their abundance, availability, and high energy content, coal, oil, and natural gas have proved to be attractive energy sources to produce electricity, run industrial processes, propel transportation vehicles, and provide energy for residential and commercial applications. As fossil energy use increased and adverse environmental effects became apparent, energy technology also evolved to minimize them. However, all of this enormous technology development has assumed that the free venting of CO<sub>2</sub> to the atmosphere was environmentally harmless. Only recently has the increasing concentration of CO<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere been considered to represent a serious environmental problem. The consequence is that we have developed an intricate, tightly coupled energy system that has been optimized over 200 years for economy, efficiency, and environmental performance, but not for the capture and sequestration of its largest material effluent, CO<sub>2</sub>.

The goal of this report is to identify key areas for research and development (R&D) that could lead to an understanding of the potential for future use of carbon sequestration as a major tool for managing carbon emissions. Under the leadership of DOE, researchers from universities, industry, other government agencies, and DOE national laboratories were brought together to develop the technical basis for conceiving a science and technology road map. That effort has resulted in this report, which develops much of the information needed for the road map.

This report identifies the R&D topics necessary to understand and develop critical options for the capture, transport, conversion, and sequestration of carbon. It addresses known sources of carbon (industrial sources, power plant flue gases, preprocessed fossil fuels before combustion); carbon forms for sequestration (CO<sub>2</sub>, elemental carbon, and minerals that contain carbon); and options for sequestration sinks—oceans, geologic formations, soils and vegetation (see Chaps. 3 through 7).

## THE ROAD MAP VISION AND GOALS

The vision for the road map is to

***Possess the scientific understanding of carbon sequestration and develop to the point of deployment those options that ensure environmentally acceptable sequestration to reduce anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and/or atmospheric concentrations. The goal is to have the potential to sequester a significant fraction of 1 GtC/year in 2025 and 4 GtC/year in 2050.***

The purpose of carbon sequestration is to keep anthropogenic carbon emissions from reaching the atmosphere by capturing them, isolating them, and diverting them to secure storage and/or to remove CO<sub>2</sub> from the atmosphere by various means and store it. Any viable system for sequestering carbon must be safe, environmentally benign, effective, and economical. In addition, it must be acceptable to the public.

Why is carbon sequestration important? Given the magnitude of carbon reductions needed to stabilize the atmosphere, capture and sequestration could be a major tool for reducing carbon emissions to the atmosphere from fossil fuels; in fact, sequestration may be essential for the continued large-scale use of fossil fuels. It will allow greater flexibility in the future primary energy supply. In addition, it could offer other benefits such as the manufacture of commercial products (e.g., construction materials and plastics); improved agricultural practices that could reduce soil erosion, conserve water, and increase the sustainability of food production; the restoration of wetlands, which would help preserve wildlife and protect estuaries; increased biodiversity; enhanced recovery of oil and methane (from coal beds); and the development of exportable technologies to help the U.S. economy.

## THE GLOBAL CARBON CYCLE AND FOSSIL FUELS

Most anthropogenic (human-activity-related) emissions of carbon to the atmosphere result from combustion of fossil fuels for the economical production of energy. If the demand for energy continues to increase, it is possible that the only way that fossil fuels can be used for large-scale energy production is through the development and implementation of carbon capture and sequestration options.

Given the magnitude of carbon emission reductions needed to stabilize the atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentration, multiple approaches to carbon management

(i.e., improved energy efficiency and clean energy systems) will be needed. All potentially important technical options should be explored.

## SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL NEEDS FOR CARBON SEQUESTRATION

### STRATEGIC ISSUES

Following are the general recommendations of the report addressing strategic issues regarding a comprehensive carbon sequestration program.

- Sequestration R&D could expand the world's future options for dealing with greenhouse gases.
- Many carbon sequestration options are particularly amenable to improving existing activities—such as CO<sub>2</sub> injection during secondary oil recovery—and often provide important secondary benefits, such as improving ecosystems during reforestation.
- Some carbon sequestration options, such as improved agricultural practices, are available practically immediately. Examining ongoing, field-scale sequestration investigations in terrestrial, geological, and ocean systems can provide critical experience for designing the necessary environmental research programs.
- Some carbon sequestration options that have limited capacity or relatively short carbon residence times could nonetheless make important near-term contributions during a transition to other longer-term carbon management options. Other carbon sequestration options can provide significant long-term contributions.
- For carbon sequestration to be a viable option, it needs to be safe, predictable, reliable, measurable, and verifiable; and it needs to be competitive with other carbon management options, such as energy-efficient systems and decarbonized energy technologies.
- Carbon sequestration is an immature field, so multiple fundamental R&D approaches are warranted and significant breakthroughs can be expected. The federal government is an appropriate sponsor of carbon sequestration R&D.
- Integrated analyses of the carbon sequestration system should be periodically updated to evaluate the potential contributions, costs, and benefits of various carbon sequestration options.
- The information from the R&D program should be provided to policy makers to aid them in developing policy and selecting the most efficient and effective solutions to the issues of climate change.

### Separation and Capture of CO<sub>2</sub> from the Energy System

Several currently available technologies can be used to separate and capture CO<sub>2</sub> from fossil-fueled power plant flue gases; from the effluents of industrial processes such as iron, steel, and cement production; and from hydrogen production by reforming of natural gas. CO<sub>2</sub> can be absorbed from gas streams by contact with amine-based solvents or cold methanol. It can be removed by adsorption on activated carbon or other materials or by passing the gas stream through special membranes. Commercial hydrogen production via reforming of natural gas involves separating H<sub>2</sub> from the reformat gases (a mixture of unreacted methane

Geologic or ocean storage sequestration options that use a concentrated source of CO<sub>2</sub> require low-cost carbon separation and capture techniques to be viable options. The scale of the industrial system required to process gigatonnes of carbon warrants investigation into new solvents, adsorbents, and membrane separation devices for either pre- or post-combustion separation.

and other hydrocarbons, CO, CO<sub>2</sub>, and water) by adsorption processes such as pressure swing adsorption (PSA). Should fuels decarbonization (e.g., reforming of natural gas to produce H<sub>2</sub>) become part of a CO<sub>2</sub> mitigation strategy, the PSA

technology could logically be extended to CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture.

Advanced methods might include adsorbing CO<sub>2</sub> on zeolites or carbon-bonded activated carbon fibers and separating it from flue gases or process gases from industrial operations using inorganic membranes. The use of commercial CO<sub>2</sub>-removing processes that scrub gases with amine-based solvents is projected to raise the cost of producing electrical power from coal-fired power plants using existing technology. Capture and sequestration could increase the cost of electrical power generation from coal by as much as 20 to 30 mills/kWh. Thus although CO<sub>2</sub> is separated routinely, dramatic improvements are necessary to make the process economical (Chap. 2). Techniques are needed to transform the captured CO<sub>2</sub> into materials that (1) can be economically and safely transported and sequestered for a long time or (2) can be used to make commercial products (e.g., construction materials) that could offset the costs of separation and capture.

There are numerous options for the separation and capture of CO<sub>2</sub>, and many of these are commercially available. However, none has been applied at the scale required as part of a CO<sub>2</sub> emissions mitigation strategy, nor has any method been demonstrated for all the anthropogenic sources considered in this R&D map. Many issues remain regarding the ability to separate and capture CO<sub>2</sub> from anthropogenic sources on the scale required, and to meet the cost, safety, and environmental requirements for separation and capture. In our assessment of the scientific and technological gaps between the requirements for CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture and the capabilities to meet these requirements, many explicit and specific R&D needs were identified.

- A science-based and applications-oriented R&D program is needed to establish the efficacy of current and novel CO<sub>2</sub> separation processes as important contributors to carbon emissions mitigation. Important elements of such a program include the evaluation, improvement, and development of chemical and physical absorption solvents, chemical and physical adsorbents, membrane separation devices with selectivity and specificity for CO<sub>2</sub>-containing streams, molecular and kinetic modeling of the materials and processes, and laboratory-scale testing of the selected processes.
- Field tests are needed of promising new CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture options in small bypass streams at large point sources of CO<sub>2</sub>, such as natural gas wells and hydrogen production plants.

The ocean provides a large potential reservoir. Active experiments are already under way in iron fertilization and other tests of enhanced marine biological sequestration, as well as deep CO<sub>2</sub> injection. Improvements in understanding marine systems will be needed before implementation of major marine sequestration campaigns.

### Sequestration in the Oceans

The ocean represents a large potential sink for sequestration of anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> (Chap. 3). Two methods are proposed for the sequestration of carbon

in the ocean: (1) A relatively pure CO<sub>2</sub> stream that has been generated by a power plant, decarbonized fuel production system, or industrial facility could be injected directly into the ocean. The injected CO<sub>2</sub> may become trapped in ocean sediments or ice-like solids, called hydrates. (2) The net oceanic uptake from the atmosphere could be enhanced through a method such as iron fertilization. These approaches will require better understanding of marine ecosystems to enhance the effectiveness of applications and avoid undesirable consequences.

- Field experiments of CO<sub>2</sub> injection into the ocean are needed to study the physical/chemical behavior of the released CO<sub>2</sub> and its potential for ecological impact.
- Ocean general circulation models need to be improved and used to determine the best locations and depths for CO<sub>2</sub> injection and to determine the long-term fate of CO<sub>2</sub> injected into the ocean.
- The effect of fertilization of surface waters on the increase of carbon sequestered in the deep ocean needs to be determined, and the potential ecological consequences on the structure and function of marine ecosystems and on natural biogeochemical cycling in the ocean need to be studied.
- New innovative concepts for sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> in the ocean need to be identified and developed.

### Sequestration in Terrestrial Ecosystems

Terrestrial ecosystems, which are made up of vegetation and soils containing microbial and invertebrate communities, sequester CO<sub>2</sub> directly from the atmosphere (Chap. 4). The terrestrial ecosystem is essentially a huge

The terrestrial biosphere is a large and accessible reservoir for sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> that is already present in the atmosphere. Natural carbon fluxes are huge, so even small forced changes resulting from R&D advances would be very significant. It will be important to address the consequences of altering the natural flux.

natural biological scrubber for CO<sub>2</sub> from all fossil fuel emissions sources, such as automobiles, power plants, and industrial facilities. Computer models estimate that terrestrial ecosystems—forests, vegetation, soils, farm crops, pastures, tundras, and wetlands—have a net carbon accumulation of about one-fourth

(1.5 to 2 GtC) of the 7.4 GtC emitted annually into the atmosphere by fossil fuel combustion and land use changes. If there were an increased focus on practices to enhance the natural carbon cycle, the potential for terrestrial ecosystems to remove and sequester more carbon from the atmosphere could be increased by, for example, improving agricultural cultivation practices to reduce oxidation of soil carbon and enhancing soil texture to trap more carbon, and protecting wetlands.

- The terrestrial ecosystem is a major biological scrubber for atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> (present net carbon sequestration is ~2 GtC/year) that can be significantly increased by careful manipulation over the next 25 years to provide a critical “bridging technology” while other carbon management options are developed. Carbon sequestration could conceivably be increased by several gigatonnes per year beyond the natural rate of 2 GtC per year, but that may imply intensive management and/or manipulation of a significant fraction of the globe’s biomass. However, those potentials do not yet include a total accounting of economic and energy costs to achieve these levels. Ecosystem protection is important and may reduce or prevent loss of carbon currently stored in the terrestrial biosphere. The focus for research, however, should be on increasing the rate of long-term storage in soils in managed systems.
- Research on four key interrelated R&D topics is needed to meet goals for carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems:
  - Increase understanding of ecosystem structure and function directed toward carbon allocation and partitioning, nutrient cycling, plant and microbial biotechnology, molecular genetics, and functional genomics.
  - Improve measurement of gross carbon fluxes and dynamic carbon inventories through improvements to existing methods and through development of new instrumentation for in situ, nondestructive below-ground observation and remote sensing to allow aboveground biomass measurement, verification, and monitoring of carbon stocks.
  - Implement scientific principles into tools such as irrigation methods, efficient nutrient delivery systems, increased energy efficiency in agriculture and forestry, and increased byproduct use.
  - Assess ecosystem behavior in response to carbon sequestration strategies in an environment of a changing climate, using a suite of models (including life cycle analysis) to integrate across scales from physiological processes to regional ecosystem management practices.
- Field-scale experiments in large-scale ecosystems will be necessary to understanding both physiological and geochemical processes regulating carbon sequestration based upon integrative ecosystem models. Such carbon sequestration experiments are needed to provide proof-of-principle testing of new sequestration concepts and integration of sequestration science and engineering principles.

## Sequestration in Geologic Formations

Three principal types of geologic formations are widespread and have the potential for sequestering large amounts of CO<sub>2</sub>. They are active and uneconomical oil and gas reservoirs, aqueous formations, and deep and unmineable coal formations. About 70 oil fields worldwide use injected CO<sub>2</sub> for enhanced oil recovery. CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration is already being practiced in a sub-seabed reservoir in the North Sea of Norway. The United States has sufficient capacity, diversity, and broad geographic distribution of potential reservoirs to use geologic sequestration in the near term (Chap. 5). The primary uncertainty is the effectiveness of storing CO<sub>2</sub> in geological formations—how easily CO<sub>2</sub> can be injected and how long it will remain. Only through experience will enough knowledge be gained to assess the ultimate sequestration potential of geologic formations.

Limited geological sequestration is being practiced today, but it is not yet possible to predict with confidence storage volumes and integrity over long time periods. Many important issues must be addressed to reduce costs, ensure safety, and gain public acceptance.

- Fundamental and applied research is needed to improve the ability to understand, predict, and monitor the performance of sequestration in oil, gas, aqueous, and coal formations. Elements of such a program include multiphase flow in heterogeneous and deformable media; phase behavior; CO<sub>2</sub> dissolution and reaction kinetics, micromechanics and deformation modeling; coupled hydrologic-chemical-mechanical-thermal modeling; and high-resolution geophysical imaging. Advanced concepts should be included, such as enhancement of mineral trapping with catalysts or other chemical additives, sequestration in composite geologic formations, microbial conversion of CO<sub>2</sub> to methane, rejuvenation of depleted oil reservoirs, and CO<sub>2</sub>-enhanced methane hydrate production.
- A nationwide assessment is needed to determine the location and capacity of the geologic formations available for sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> from each of the major power-generating regions of the United States. Screening criteria for choosing suitable options and assessing capacity must be developed in partnership with industry, the scientific community, and public and regulatory oversight agencies.
- Pilot-scale field tests of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration should be initiated to develop cost and performance data and to help prioritize future R&D needs. The tests must be designed and conducted with sufficient monitoring, modeling, and performance assessment to enable quantitative evaluation of the processes responsible for geologic sequestration. Pilot testing will lay the groundwork for collaboration with industrial partners on full-scale demonstration projects.

## Advanced Biological Processes

Advanced biological processes (Chap. 6) could be developed and implemented to limit emissions and capture and sequester carbon both from relatively concentrated utility and industrial

Advanced biological techniques may produce options too radical to predict. Some biologic processes can sequester carbon products at low cost. New carbon sequestration options could become feasible and others could be improved using advanced biological techniques.

combustion gases, and from dispersed point sources. Bacteria and other organisms could be used to remove carbon from fuels and to recycle carbon from man-made waste streams. In addition, crop wastes and dedicated crops could be used as feedstocks for biological and chemical conversion processes to manufacture fuels and chemicals. Advanced crop species and cultivation practices could be designed to increase the uptake of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> by terrestrial and aquatic biomass and decrease CO<sub>2</sub> emissions to the atmosphere from soils and terrestrial and aquatic biomass.

The 21<sup>st</sup> Century has been referred to as the “Century for Biology.” Indeed, many new molecular tools have been developed that will aid in new discoveries and assist in providing solutions to key problems facing humankind and the planet. The difference that advanced biological techniques can make will be evident when they are integrated with land, subsurface, and ocean management practices. The following actions will promote cost-effective and stable biological approaches to carbon sequestration.

- Research should be initiated on the genetic and protein engineering of plants, animals, and microorganisms to address improved metabolic functions that can enhance, improve, or optimize carbon management via carbon capture technology, sequestration in reduced carbon compounds, use in alternative durable materials, and improved productivity.
- The objectives and goals of the advanced biological research should be linked to those specific problems and issues outlined for carbon sequestration in geological formations, oceans, and soils and vegetation so that an integrated research approach can elucidate carbon sequestration at the molecular, organism, and ecosystem levels.
- Short-, mid-, and long-term goals in advanced biological research should be instituted so that scale-up issues, genetic stability in natural settings, and efficacy in the field can be assessed.

## Advanced Concepts

Many of the sequestration technologies described in this document depend on chemistry. Improved methods of separation, transport, and storage of CO<sub>2</sub> will benefit from research on and development of advanced chemical

Most carbon sequestration options rely on chemical reactions to achieve benign, stable, and inert products. Studies to enhance the relevant chemistry almost certainly will reduce the costs or increase the effectiveness of these options. Results from R&D on advanced chemical topics also may make it possible to generate useful and marketable byproducts.

techniques to address sequestration via chemical transformations (Chap. 7). Any viable sequestration technique must store vast amounts of carbon-rich materials, so environmental chemistry will be valuable to determine whether these materials will be stable when sequestered. Many issues pertaining to aqueous carbonate/bicarbonate chemistry are relevant to sequestration of carbon in oceans, geological formations, and groundwater. Carbonate chemistry in very basic solutions may lead to a method for extracting CO<sub>2</sub> from air. Clathrates, compounds that can enclose molecules such as CO<sub>2</sub> within their crystal structure, may be used to separate CO<sub>2</sub> from high-pressure systems. Learning clathrate properties may be important to understanding chemical approaches to ocean storage of carbon, and subsurface arctic and marine hydrate formations may also be evaluated as geologic sequestration options.

- The proper focus of R&D into advanced chemical sciences and technologies is on transforming gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> or its constituent carbon into materials that either are benign, inert, long-lived and contained in the earth or water of our planet, or have commercial value.
  - Benign by-products for sequestration should be developed. This avenue may offer the potential to sequester large (gigatonne) amounts of anthropogenic carbon.
  - Commercial products need to be developed. This approach probably represents a lesser potential (millions of tonnes) but may result in collateral benefits.
- The chemical sciences can fill crucial gaps identified in the other focus areas. In particular, environmental chemistry is an essential link in determining the impact and consequences of these various approaches. Studies to address the specific gaps identified in Chap. 7 should be conducted to ensure that other focus areas meet their potential.

## DEVELOPING A CARBON SEQUESTRATION ROAD MAP

An emerging science and technology road map seeks to identify the scientific and technological developments needed to achieve a specific policy goal. The process of identifying the needed science and technology must be focused by developing a concept of the technological system (Chap. 8). This task is particularly difficult in the case of carbon capture and sequestration because the understanding necessary to design such a system is still immature.

Today, carbon is emitted to the atmosphere from many sources that were not designed to capture, let alone sequester, these emissions. There are many ideas for, and even demonstrations of, technology to capture and sequester carbon from fossil fuel combustion. Many of the requisite new energy production technologies are already under development at DOE. However, the current energy system probably must be modified significantly to make an economical capture and sequestration system possible. Thus, the emerging technology road map for carbon capture and sequestration cannot be constructed apart from consideration of current and emerging energy technologies. It will involve an iterative process to connect this road map with others being developed by DOE for various parts of the energy technology system.

This report is a significant first step toward the development of an emerging technology road map for carbon capture and sequestration. We start from a bold vision of having the scientific and technical knowledge to make carbon sequestration a major carbon management option by 2025. Guided by this vision, each of the technical focus chapters (2–7) identifies key areas for scientific and technical development, including new areas outside traditional energy technology development.

We have begun the process of exploring the mutual relationships and interdependencies of the scientific and technological developments in all these fields by building a series of road map linkages. This process has illuminated how progress in one area affects the total system. However, R&D priorities and performance requirements have not yet been defined. Nor has the phasing of potential R&D schedules been considered. Developing linkages has allowed us to eliminate overlaps to some extent, but gaps in the technology needs have not yet been examined. Before proceeding much further, much more work must be done on specifying the economic constraints and technology needs of the integrated carbon capture and sequestration system. The road map outline presented in this document, especially the research needs delineated in Chaps. 2–7, provides the sound basis for taking these next steps toward a fully realized program in carbon sequestration. This report should be used as a framework in organizing a wider examination by diverse stakeholders of the science and technology required for carbon capture and sequestration.

# Vision

*The vision for the road map is to possess the scientific understanding of carbon sequestration and develop to the point of deployment those options that ensure environmentally acceptable sequestration to reduce anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and/or atmospheric concentrations. The goal is to have the potential to sequester a significant fraction of 1 GtC/year in 2025 and of 4 GtC/year in 2050.*

## 1

# CARBON SEQUESTRATION: A THIRD APPROACH TO CARBON MANAGEMENT

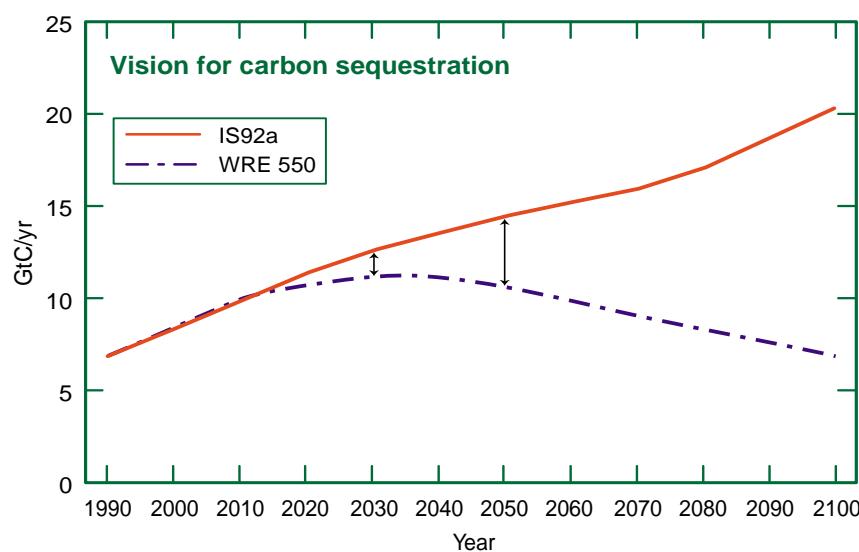
## 1.1 CARBON MANAGEMENT

### 1.1.1 The Challenge

In the past 60 years, the amount of anthropogenic carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) emitted to the atmosphere, primarily because of expanding use of fossil fuels for energy, has risen from preindustrial levels of 280 parts per million (ppm) to present levels of over 365 ppm (Keeling and Whorf 1998).

Predictions of global energy use in the next century suggest a continued increase in carbon emissions and rising concentrations of CO<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere unless major changes are made in the way we produce and use energy—in particular, how we manage carbon. For example, the widely cited IS92a (“business as usual”) energy scenario developed by the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC 1996) predicts that future global emissions of CO<sub>2</sub> to the atmosphere will increase from 7.4 billion tonnes of atmospheric carbon (GtC) per year in 1997 to approximately 26 GtC/year by 2100. Although the effects of increased CO<sub>2</sub> levels on global climate are uncertain, there is scientific consensus that a doubling of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations could have a variety of serious environmental consequences in the next century.

What would it take to stabilize the atmospheric concentrations of CO<sub>2</sub>? Two widely used scenarios, a “business as usual” and an atmospheric stabilization scenario, are compared in Fig. 1.1. The difference between the two scenarios, about 1 GtC per year in 2025 and about 4 GtC per year in 2050, represents one estimate of the CO<sub>2</sub> reductions required to reach atmospheric stabilization. This road map identifies a framework for research and development (R&D) that would



**Fig. 1.1. One representation of the reductions in CO<sub>2</sub> that would be necessary to reach atmospheric stabilization compares the IS92A (business as usual) scenario with a scenario (WRE550) that leads to stabilized atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations of 550 ppm (about twice preindustrial levels). The WRE550 scenario is commonly used by analysts of climate change. Source: Wigley, Richels, and Edmonds 1996.**

allow carbon sequestration to provide a significant fraction of that reduction.

### 1.1.2 The Vision

The vision for the road map is to possess the scientific understanding of carbon sequestration and develop to the point of deployment those options that ensure environmentally acceptable sequestration to reduce anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and/or atmospheric concentrations. The goal is to have the potential to sequester a significant fraction of 1 GtC/year in 2025 and of 4 GtC/year in 2050.

### 1.1.3 Three Approaches to Carbon Management

Carbon sequestration is distinguished from, but complements, two other approaches to carbon management that are supported by the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE) (National Laboratory Directors 1997).

The first approach is to increase the efficiency of primary energy conversion and end use so that fewer units of primary fossil energy are required to provide the same energy service. DOE is sponsoring a variety of R&D programs to develop more efficient supply- and demand-side technologies (e.g., more efficient fossil-fuel-fired power plants, buildings, appliances, and

transportation vehicles) and to find ways to produce and deliver electricity and fuels more efficiently. More efficient energy conversion and end use will result in lower CO<sub>2</sub> emissions per unit of energy service.

A second approach is to substitute lower-carbon or carbon-free energy sources for our current sources. For example, this strategy might involve substituting lower-carbon fossil fuels such as natural gas for coal or oil; using renewable energy supplies such as solar, wind, or biomass; or increasing the use of nuclear power. DOE has major R&D programs to develop more efficient fossil energy as well as renewable energy and nuclear energy technologies.

Carbon sequestration could represent a third approach in addition to efficiency improvements and evolution toward low-carbon fuels. However, it

has received much less attention to date than these other two approaches.

#### 1.1.4 What is Carbon Sequestration?

Carbon sequestration can be defined as the capture and secure storage of carbon that would otherwise be emitted to or remain in the atmosphere. The idea is (1) to keep carbon emissions produced by human activities from reaching the atmosphere by capturing and diverting them to secure storage, or (2) to remove carbon from the atmosphere by various means and store it.

One set of options involves capturing carbon from fossil fuel use before it reaches the atmosphere. For example,

$\text{CO}_2$  could be separated from power plant flue gases, from effluents of industrial processes (e.g., in oil refineries and iron, steel, and cement production plants), or during production of decarbonized fuels (such as hydrogen produced from hydrocarbons such as natural gas or coal). The captured  $\text{CO}_2$  could be concentrated into a liquid or gas stream that could be transported and injected into the ocean or deep underground geological formations such as oil and gas reservoirs, deep saline reservoirs, and deep coal seams and beds. Biological and chemical processes may convert captured  $\text{CO}_2$  directly into stable products.

Atmospheric carbon can also be

#### Why is Carbon Sequestration Important?

It is important to carry out research on carbon sequestration for several reasons:

- Carbon sequestration could be a major tool for reducing carbon emissions from fossil fuels. However, much work remains to be done to understand the science and engineering aspects and potential of carbon sequestration options.
- Given the magnitude of carbon emission reductions needed to stabilize the atmospheric  $\text{CO}_2$  concentration, multiple approaches to carbon management will be needed. Carbon sequestration should be researched in parallel with increased energy efficiency and decarbonization of fuel. (These efforts should be closely coordinated to exploit potential synergies.)
- Carbon sequestration is compatible with the continued large-scale use of fossil fuels, as well as greatly reduced emissions of  $\text{CO}_2$  to the atmosphere. Current estimates of fossil fuel resources—including conventional oil and gas, coal, and unconventional fossil fuels such as heavy oil and tar sands—imply sufficient resources to supply a very large fraction of the world's energy sources through the next century.
- The natural carbon cycle is balanced over the long term but dynamic over the short term; historically, acceleration of natural processes that emit  $\text{CO}_2$  is eventually balanced by an acceleration of processes that sequester carbon, and vice versa. The current increase in atmospheric carbon is the result of anthropogenic mining and burning of fossil carbon, resulting in carbon emissions into the atmosphere that are unopposed by anthropogenic sequestration. Developing new sequestration techniques and accelerating existing techniques would help diminish the net positive atmospheric carbon flux.

captured and sequestered by enhancing the ability of terrestrial or ocean ecosystems to absorb it naturally and store it in a stable form.

### 1.1.5 Necessary Characteristics for Carbon Sequestration Systems

Any viable system for sequestering carbon must have the following characteristics.

**Capacity and price.** The technologies and practices to sequester carbon should be effective and cost-competitive. This road map will focus on options that allow sequestration of a significant fraction of the goal.

**Environmentally benign fate.** The sheer scale and novelty of sequestration suggests a careful look at environmental side effects. For example, the long-term effects of sequestration on the soil or vegetation need to be understood. Until recently, dilution into the atmosphere was considered acceptable. Vast quantities of materials would be generated. The safety of the product and the storage scheme have to be addressed.

**Stability.** The carbon should reside in storage for a relatively long duration.

## 1.2 THE GLOBAL AND THE FOSSIL FUEL CARBON CYCLES

Carbon sequestration is intimately tied to two carbon cycles—the natural and the fossil fuel cycles. Understanding aspects of both cycles provides a context for developing carbon sequestration options.

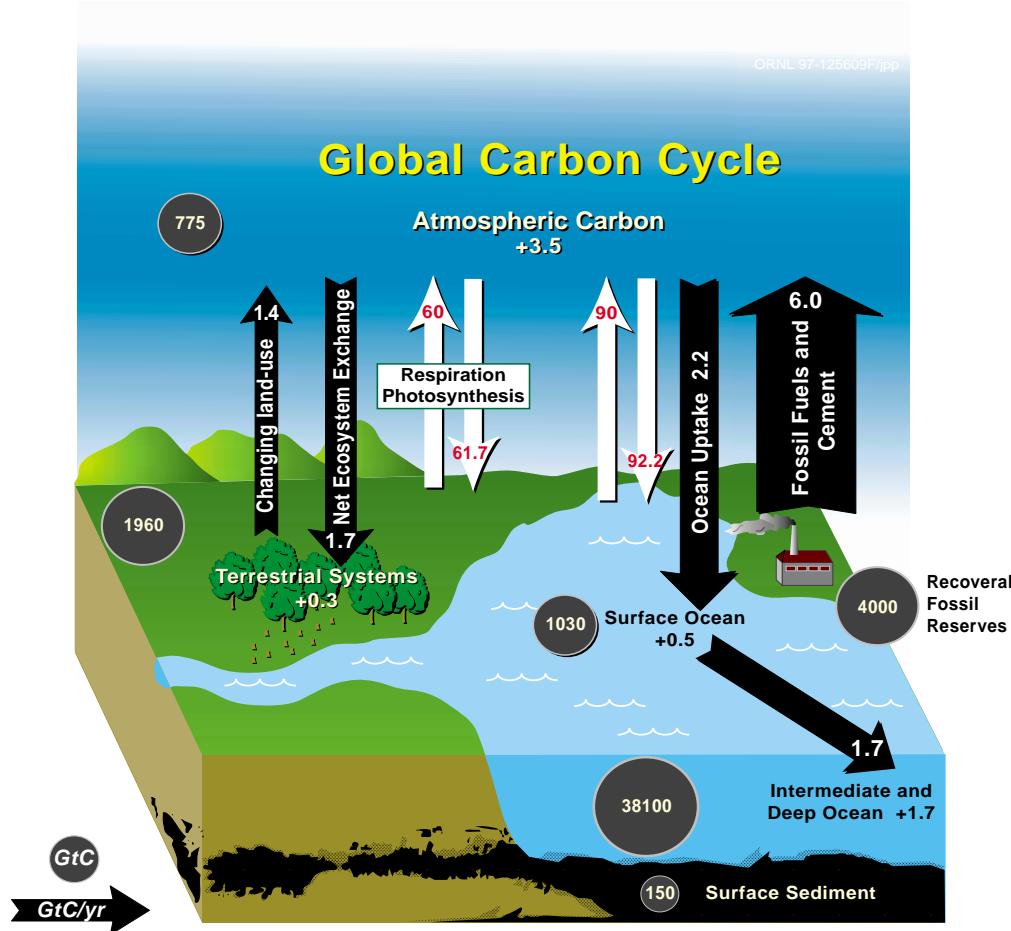
### 1.2.1 The Global Carbon Cycle

Improving our understanding of the global carbon cycle, its fluxes, and its reservoirs, is intimately tied to successful implementation of carbon sequestration technologies.

Decreasing atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations by reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions or by changing the magnitude of the fluxes between reservoirs is controlled by the carbon budget of a reservoir. From a carbon sequestration perspective, understanding the potential to alter carbon budgets through the intervention of carbon sequestration technologies to reduce future atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations is one of the principal challenges.

Human activities during the first half of the 1990s have contributed to an average annual emission of approximately 7.4 GtC into the atmosphere (Fig. 1.2). Most of these emissions were from fossil fuel combustion. The net result of these CO<sub>2</sub> emissions during the first part of the 1990s was an annual net emissions increment to the atmosphere of 3.5 GtC. Storage of carbon in terrestrial systems due to photosynthesis and plant growth was 1.7 GtC. Another 2.2 GtC per year was taken up by oceans.

Carbon fluxes between the atmosphere and ocean/terrestrial reservoirs are quite large (hundreds of GtC per year), while net carbon exchange is over an order of magnitude smaller. For example, the average net ecosystem accumulation of the terrestrial biosphere was 0.3 GtC per year (1.7 GtC per year net ecosystem production diminished by 1.4 GtC per year due to land clearing), while terrestrial



**Fig. 1.2. Human-induced changes in the global carbon cycle resulting from increases in the combustion of fossil fuels and changing land-use patterns.** Solid arrows indicate the average magnitude of perturbation in carbon fluxes and the fate of carbon resulting from these activities averaged for the first half of the 1990s. Net fluxes (black arrows) and gross fluxes (gray arrows) are in billions of tonnes of carbon per year. Annual net additions of carbon (shown as + numbers) to the atmosphere, ocean subsystems, and terrestrial systems from anthropogenic sources are in billions of tonnes of carbon per year. Pool sizes (circles) are shown in billions of tonnes of carbon. For more information, see Houghton 1995 and Marland et al. 1998. Source: *Technology Opportunities to Reduce U.S. Greenhouse Gas Emissions*, modified from IPCC 1996.

ecosystems photosynthetically fixed 61.7 GtC per year—the photosynthesis uptake being offset by 60 GtC per year due to plant/soil respiration. Similarly, the net ocean uptake of 2.2 GtC per year is the difference of ocean/atmosphere fluxes each exceeding 90 GtC per year. The significance of understanding these complicated carbon exchanges is that developing the ability to alter these gross annual carbon exchanges of the global carbon cycle by a small percentage through

carbon sequestration technologies would increase net storage of carbon in the major reservoirs and lessen atmospheric carbon concentrations.

### 1.2.2 The Fossil Fuel Cycle

About 75% of the world's commercial energy comes from fossil fuels, and about 84% of the energy used in the United States is derived from fossil fuels (EIA 1998a; PCAST 1997). Given the advantages inherent in fossil fuels,

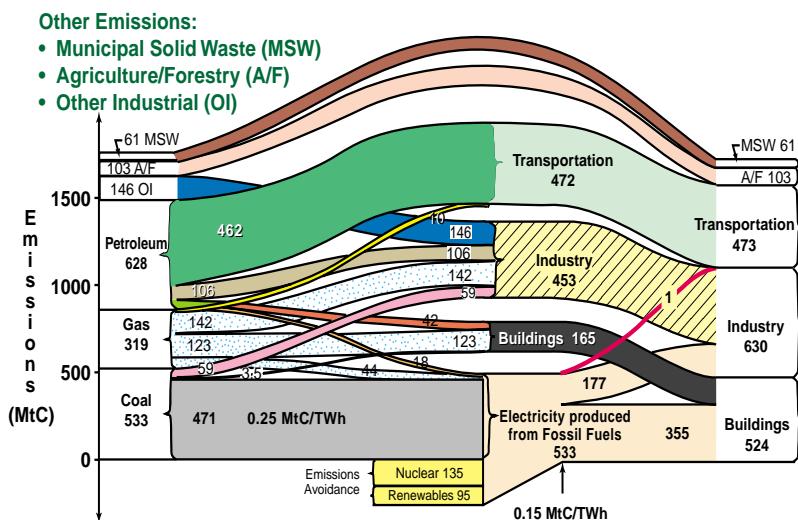
such as their cost-competitiveness, their availability, their ease of transport and storage, and the large fossil resources, fossil fuels are likely to remain a major player in global energy supply for at least the next century.

Figure 1.3 shows the energy flows through the U.S. economy from fossil and other fuels. This diagram helps to identify places where  $\text{CO}_2$  could be separated and captured, but there are energy and cost implications that must be considered (Hoffert et al. 1998). In the near term, most of the  $\text{CO}_2$  captured is likely to come from electricity generated from fossil fuels, because large quantities of it could be processed at fixed locations. However, other possibilities become more likely in the longer term. Fossil fuels, solid waste, or biomass can be “decarbonized” so that a higher-energy-content and environmentally benign fuel is separated from  $\text{CO}_2$ . For

example, either a fossil energy source or another carbon source such as solid waste or biomass could be pretreated to produce hydrogen and  $\text{CO}_2$ . These central pretreatment facilities could become other new sources of carbon for capture.

### 1.3 APPROACH AND SCOPE OF THIS REPORT

The goal of this report is to identify key areas for R&D that could lead to a better understanding of the potential use of carbon sequestration as a major tool for managing carbon emissions. Under the leadership of DOE, researchers from universities, industry, other government agencies, and DOE national laboratories were brought together to develop the technical basis for developing an R&D road map. This report develops much of the information needed for the road map.



**Fig. 1.3. Carbon flows in the energy system and sources of emissions in the United States in 1995 (in millions of metric tons equivalent).** Electricity produced by the combustion of fossil fuels is likely to remain a significant contributor to greenhouse gas emissions. Sources: EIA 1998a,b.

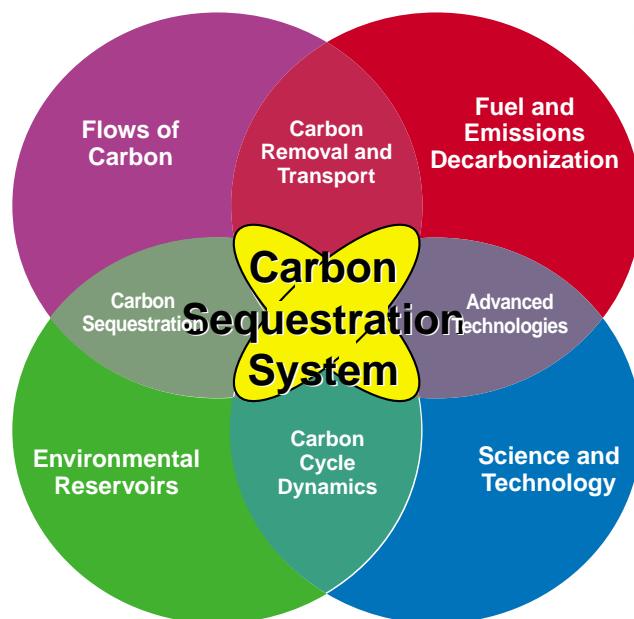
Six scientific/technical “focus areas” relevant to carbon sequestration were identified, and groups of experts in each area reported on the R&D issues. These focus areas are

1. Separation and Capture of CO<sub>2</sub>
2. Ocean Sequestration
3. Carbon Sequestration in Terrestrial Ecosystems (Soils and Vegetation)
4. Sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> in Geological Formations
5. Advanced Biological Processes for Sequestration
6. Advanced Chemical Approaches to Sequestration

These six focus areas represent one way to organize the scientific and engineering issues underlying carbon sequestration.

Our vision for a carbon sequestration road map is to conduct the appropriate R&D so that options will be available for significantly reducing anthropogenic carbon emissions in the time frame of 2025 and beyond.

This report describes the R&D necessary to understand and develop to the point of deployment all critical options bearing on the capture, transport, conversion, and sequestration of carbon (Fig. 1.4). It addresses known sources of carbon (industrial sources, power plant flue gases, carbon split away from fossil fuels before combustion); carbon forms for sequestration (CO<sub>2</sub>, elemental carbon, and minerals that contain carbon); and options for sequestration sinks (oceans, geologic formations, enhancing the natural carbon cycle).



**Fig. 1.4. Deploying an effective carbon sequestration system will require an integrated program of science, enabling technology, and advanced power systems—all dependent on better understanding of environmental carbon dynamics.**

## 1.4 TOWARD DEVELOPMENT OF A CARBON SEQUESTRATION ROAD MAP

An emerging technology road map provides—and encourages the use of—a structured R&D planning process. Emerging technology road maps furnish a framework for managing and reviewing the complex, dynamic R&D process needed to achieve important strategic goals by identifying how specific R&D activities can relate to integrated technical capabilities needed to achieve strategic objectives. The process of identifying the needed science and technology must be focused by developing a concept of the technological system that would enable achievement of that goal. This task is particularly difficult in the case of carbon capture and sequestration because there has been, heretofore, no paradigm for such a system (Victor 1998).

Our road map gives a top-level picture of a carbon capture and sequestration system and its linkages to the energy system. We have concentrated principally on the development of scientific understanding that is needed for specific capture and sequestration functions, including specific changes in components of the existing energy system that would simplify and/or lower the cost of capture and disposal. Many capture and sequestration technologies are discussed in detail in Chaps. 2–7. Each can be developed and improved individually. However, the economic cost and effectiveness of the overall carbon capture and sequestration system depend on the effective combination of many scientific advances. Their relative importance must finally be judged in the context of the integrated technology system.

After identifying the technology goals and the integrated technology system needed to satisfy those goals, our next step was to assess the alternative technological pathways that might lead to an integrated carbon sequestration technology system. The approach was to construct these pathways within a technological hierarchy. The highest level of the hierarchy is the integrated technology system—in this case, the carbon capture and sequestration system. The hierarchy base is supported by the science and technology capabilities that are needed to develop the technologies that make the system economical and effective.

### 1.4.1 Foundations for an Expanded National Program in Carbon Sequestration

Sequestration studies began in 1977 (see End Note 1), but an upsurge of interest in them has occurred only recently. In the past two years, several key government studies of carbon management and energy have highlighted carbon sequestration as an approach with high potential where much R&D is needed.

For example, the potential importance of carbon sequestration has been underscored by the President's Committee of Advisors on Science and Technology report titled *Federal Energy Research and Development Agenda for the Challenges of the 21<sup>st</sup> Century* (PCAST 1997). Specifically, the report recommends that a much larger science-based CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration program be developed with the budget increasing from the current \$1 million per year to the vicinity of tens of millions. The report further states that the R&D should be performed in a collaborative way between DOE's offices of Fossil Energy and Energy

Research (now Office of Science) and the U.S. Geological Survey. International collaboration is also strongly encouraged.

Although the current DOE carbon sequestration program is modest in scale, many of the foundations have already been built for significantly expanding this effort. The DOE Office of Science program on CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration includes both the Office of Basic Energy Sciences (BES) and the Office of Biological and Environmental Research (BER). The primary relevant goal for BES is to develop major new fundamental knowledge that crosscuts DOE's applied programs related to carbon management, including such disciplines as materials sciences, chemical sciences, geosciences, plant and microbial biosciences, and engineering sciences. BES has longstanding programs in fundamental research, such as improved materials synthesis and combustion engineering for more efficient energy technologies, improved catalysts for low-carbon industrial processes, improved understanding of biological mechanisms of carbon fixation, and improved understanding of fluid flow in the subsurface for geological sequestration ([www.er.doe.gov/production/bes/bes.html](http://www.er.doe.gov/production/bes/bes.html)).

In 1999, a new program in BES and BER will be initiated to conduct research in carbon management, including carbon sequestration, as a result of the climate change technology initiative. The subjects will include sequencing genomes of methane- and hydrogen-producing microorganisms; enhancing the natural terrestrial and oceanic fluxes of CO<sub>2</sub>; and improving the understanding of biological carbon fixation, materials, catalysts,

combustion chemistry, and physics and chemistry of geological reservoirs.

BER has a longstanding fundamental research program on the global carbon cycle. Current research focuses on atmospheric measurements of carbon fluxes and related processes, terrestrial carbon fluxes, and advanced biological investigations of carbon in terrestrial and ocean margin systems. A key element of terrestrial carbon research involves Ameriflux, which is a network of CO<sub>2</sub> flux measurements across North, Central, and South America to quantify net CO<sub>2</sub> exchange between the atmosphere and representative terrestrial ecosystems. Free Air CO<sub>2</sub> Enrichment (FACE) experiments provide information about changes in the carbon content of ecosystems under increased concentrations of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>, altered temperatures, and altered precipitation regimes. Relevant information can be found at <http://www.er.doe.gov/production/ober/gc/accc-fr.html> and <http://cdiac.esd.ornl.gov/programs/ameriflux>. Ocean research focuses on molecular biological approaches to understanding the coupling between carbon and nitrogen cycles (<http://www.er.doe.gov/production/ober/gc/accc-fr.html>). BER also sponsors a program, Integrated Assessment of Global Climate Change, that supports research in understanding carbon management frameworks for integrated assessment modeling activities.

DOE's Office of Fossil Energy has a program on CO<sub>2</sub> capture and sequestration to develop and demonstrate technically, economically, and ecologically sound methods to capture, reuse, and dispose of CO<sub>2</sub>. In 1998, DOE made awards for 12 "cutting-edge" research projects, ranging from the use of CO<sub>2</sub>-absorbing

algae growing on artificial reefs to deep-ocean or deep-saline-reservoir greenhouse gas disposal. Some of these projects may be selected for further development. (Details on this solicitation can be found at [www.fe.doe.gov](http://www.fe.doe.gov)).

The Office of Fossil Energy has recently undertaken an initiative to provide formal management direction to sequestration program activities and to establish program content and funding priorities. A team has been assembled to define a research strategy clearly and to ensure coordination with internal and external stakeholders. In making its recommendations, the team will draw heavily from this report. In FY 1999, the second phase of the Fossil Energy novel concept investigations will obtain the required engineering and economic data to proceed to proof-of-concept. In the areas of geological and ocean sequestration, international government/industry projects will continue.

In 1991 the International Energy Agency (IEA) established a Greenhouse Gas R&D Programme focused on analyzing technologies for capturing, using, and storing CO<sub>2</sub>. It has expanded to include methane, as well as forestation options. The program is currently in its third 3-year phase and has support from 16 countries (including the United States) and a growing number of industrial organizations. (Details on this program can be found at [www.ieagreen.org.uk](http://www.ieagreen.org.uk).)

In addition to government studies, industry is moving ahead with development of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration technologies:

- The World Resources Institute formed a consortium with General Motors, Monsanto, and British

Petroleum to address the fundamental issues of global energy supply, climate change, and economic growth—paths to stabilizing CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations at levels reducing risks of climate change (WRI 1998).

- Since October 1996, Statoil, a Norwegian energy company, has been separating CO<sub>2</sub> from natural gas and injecting it, at a rate of 1 million tonnes per year, into a deep saline reservoir 800–1000 meters below the ocean floor in the North Sea (see Chap. 5).
- About 70 oil fields use CO<sub>2</sub> injection to recover additional crude oil.
- Various oil companies have proposed to sequester CO<sub>2</sub> at the rate of 30 million tonnes of carbon per year in the deep aquifers adjacent to the Natuna gas field, in the South China Sea, when that field comes into production.
- Many domestic and international forest preservation and management projects sequester carbon by reducing deforestation and harvest impacts. Forest management can also enhance existing carbon sinks.

These industrial efforts are very important, but the amounts of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestered are very small compared with overall emissions. Considerable R&D investment by government and industry is needed to enable sequestration of sufficient quantities of CO<sub>2</sub> to mitigate any adverse effects resulting from CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

#### **1.4.2 The Need for a National R&D Plan for Carbon Sequestration**

Carbon sequestration is promising as a carbon management strategy, but its potential cannot be evaluated and realized without a broad program of

research, development, and demonstration. The specific components of such a plan are the subjects of Chaps. 2–7. The framework for an integrated carbon sequestration system is presented in Chap. 8.

There are many ways to move ahead on sequestration. Some technologies are already sufficiently developed to be tested in field research experiments (e.g., injecting CO<sub>2</sub> into a geological formation and monitoring its form, location, and stability). As technologies progress, their implications for global climate change policy should be evaluated (Parson and Keith 1998).

Many sequestration technologies and practices will require further fundamental scientific and engineering studies before field testing. For example, there are known agricultural practices for increasing storage of carbon in plant roots and soil, but much research needs to be done to design effective methods for enhancing carbon storage in ecosystems and determine their impacts.

## 1.5 END NOTES

1. Avoidance of CO<sub>2</sub> emissions through physical capture of CO<sub>2</sub> from power plants and disposal of CO<sub>2</sub> in the deep ocean was first proposed by Marchetti (1977). In the United States, preliminary studies were conducted at Brookhaven National Laboratory (Steinberg 1984).

However, it was not until 1990 that planning research efforts were undertaken in this field. Since then, many conferences and studies have been conducted on options for the capture and disposal

or reuse of CO<sub>2</sub> from large stationary sources. Much of this work has been done under the auspices of IEA's Greenhouse Gas R&D Programme and the successful conference series on CO<sub>2</sub> removal and disposal. It should also be noted that the Offices of Fossil Energy and Science jointly sponsored a research needs assessment (Herzog 1993) and a white paper (Herzog 1997) on this subject. Both of these reports were completed at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

In the past two years, four important government documents have appeared that highlight the potential for carbon sequestration and the need for further work. There are recent reports by the President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology; *the Federal Energy R&D Report*; the study by 11 DOE laboratories called *Technology Opportunities to Reduce U.S. Greenhouse Gas Emissions* (National Laboratory Directors 1997); and *Carbon Management: Assessment of Fundamental Research Needs*, a product of a series of DOE workshops (DOE 1997). Important conferences and workshops that have addressed carbon sequestration have been four international conferences on CO<sub>2</sub> removal, the International Conference on Greenhouse Gas Control Technologies in Interlaken, Switzerland in August 1998; the Fuels, Decarbonization, and Carbon Sequestration Workshop (Socolow 1997); the Stakeholders' Workshop on Carbon Sequestration (Herzog 1998); and "Carbon Sequestration in Soils: Science, Monitoring, and Beyond" held December 1998 in St. Michaels, Maryland, and organized by Pacific

Northwest and Oak Ridge National Laboratories. These reports and others indicate that the potential for sequestration is quite high but largely unexamined.

2. Several road-mapping activities under way at DOE are related to the development of this carbon sequestration road map. For example, the Office of Industrial Technologies is carrying out the Industries of the Future program that involves the development and implementation of technology road maps for the most energy-intensive industries, including aluminum, steel, chemicals, glass, and forest products. Among these activities is a joint effort under way with the chemicals, forest products, and agricultural industries to plan for the future of plant/crop-based resources, which includes the development of new bioenergy technologies for the coproduction of fuels, power, and industrial feedstocks.

There is also a road map under development for power generation technologies by the offices of Fossil Energy, Nuclear Energy, and Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy in collaboration with the heat and power generation industries. The Electric Power Research Institute is developing technology road maps for electric power generation, transmission, distribution, storage, and end use. These efforts all involve the joint development and deployment by government and industry of advanced technologies, many of which will result in lower carbon emissions, thus affecting the source and amount of man-made carbon emissions to be sequestered in the future.

## 1.6 REFERENCES

DOE (Department of Energy) 1997. *Carbon Management: Assessment of Fundamental Research Needs*, USDOE/ER-0724, Washington, D.C.

EIA (Energy Information Administration) 1998a. *Annual Energy Review 1997*, DOE/EIA-0384(97), U.S. Department of Energy, Washington, D.C.

EIA (Energy Information Administration) 1998b. *Emissions of Greenhouse Gases in the United States 1997*, DOE/EIA-0573(97), U.S. Department of Energy, Washington, D.C.

Herzog, H. J., E. M. Drake, J. Tester, and R. Rosenthal 1993. *A Research Needs Assessment for the Capture, Utilization, and Disposal of Carbon Dioxide from Fossil Fuel-Fired Power Plants*, DOE/ER-30194, U.S. Department of Energy, Washington, D.C.

Herzog, H., E. Drake, and E. Adams 1997. *CO<sub>2</sub> Capture, Reuse, and Storage Technologies for Mitigating Global Climate Change: A White Paper*, Massachusetts Institute of Technology Energy Laboratory.

Herzog, H. J., ed. 1998. *Proceedings of the Stakeholder's Workshop on Carbon Sequestration*, MIT EL 98-002, Massachusetts Institute of Technology Energy Laboratory, June.

Hoffert, M. I., K. Caldeira, A. K. Jain, E. F. Haites, L. D. D. Harvey, S. D. Potter, M. E. Schlesinger, S. H. Schneider, R. G. Watts, T. M. L. Wigley, and D. J. Wuebbles 1998. "Energy Implications of Future Stabilization of Atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> Content," *Nature* (395): 881-4.

Houghton, R. A. 1995. "Land-Use Change and the Carbon Cycle," *Global Change Biology* 1: 275-87.

IPCC (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change) 1996. *Climate Change 1995: The Science of Climate Change*, J. T. Houghton, L. G. Meira Filho, B. A. Callander, N. Harris, A. Kattenberg, and K. Maskell, eds., Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Keeling, C. D., and T. P. Whorf 1998. "Atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> Records from Sites in the SIO Air Sampling Network," in *Trends: A Compendium of Data on Global Change*, Carbon Dioxide Information Analysis Center, Oak Ridge National Laboratory.

Marchetti, E. 1977. "On Geoengineering and the CO<sub>2</sub> Problem," *Climate Change* 1(1): 59-68.

Marland, G. H., R. J. Andres, T. A. Boden, C. Johnston, and A. Brenkert 1998. *Global, Regional, and National CO<sub>2</sub> Emission Estimates from Fossil Fuel Burning, Cement Production, and Gas Flaring: 1751-1995* (rev. January 1998), available at <http://cdiac.esd.ornl.gov/ndps/ndp030.html> (accessed 1/6/99).

National Laboratory Directors 1997. *Technology Opportunities to Reduce U.S. Greenhouse Gas Emissions*, Oak Ridge National Laboratory.

Parson, E. A., and D. W. Keith 1998. "Fossil Fuels Without CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions," *Science* 282 (Nov. 6).

PCAST (President's Committee of Advisors on Science and Technology)

1997. *Federal Energy Research and Development Agenda for the Challenges of the Twenty-First Century*, U.S. Department of Energy, Washington, D.C., November.

Socolow, R., ed. 1997. *Fuels Decarbonization and Carbon Sequestration: Report of a Workshop*, Report 302, Princeton University / Center for Energy and Environmental Studies, September.

Steinberg, M. 1984. *An Analysis of Concepts for Controlling Atmospheric Carbon Dioxide*, DOE/CH/00016-1, Brookhaven National Laboratory.

Victor, D. C. 1998. "Strategies for Cutting Carbon," *Nature* (395): 837-38.

Wigley, T. M. L., R. Richels, and J. A. Edmonds 1996. "Economic and Environmental Choices in the Stabilization of Atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> Concentrations," *Nature* 379 (January 18): 240-3.

WRI (World Resources Institute) British Petroleum, General Motors, and Monsanto 1998. *Climate Protection Initiative: Building a Safe Climate, Sound Business Future*. Washington, D.C.

## 1.7 ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Special appreciation is due to Michael P. Farrell for providing the discussion of the global carbon cycle in Sect. 1.2.1 and to Marilyn A. Brown for translation of the Energy Information Administration (EIA) U.S. energy flow data into carbon equivalents in Fig. 1.3.



# 7

## *vision*

*By 2020, possess the scientific understanding of CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture techniques and have developed to the point of deployment readiness those techniques that ensure the delivery of a stream of CO<sub>2</sub>, or other carbon form, at acceptable costs and of acceptable purity at the requisite conditions of pressure and temperature for the respective sequestration options discussed in subsequent chapters.*

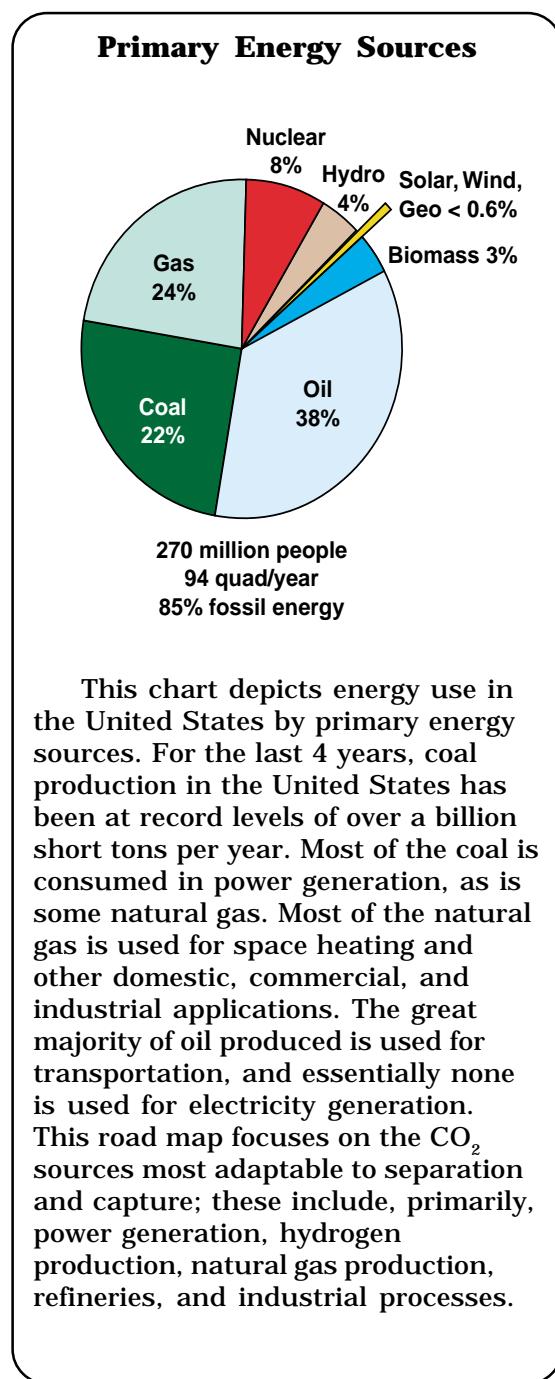
## 2 SEPARATION AND CAPTURE OF CARBON DIOXIDE

### 2.1 CHARACTERIZATION OF CARBON FLOWS (SOURCE TERMS)

This chapter and road map address the separation and capture of anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> only. Separation and capture have been identified as a high-priority topic in other reports (Socolow 1997; Herzog 1998; FETC 1998). The costs of separation and capture, including compression to the required pressure for the sequestration option used, are generally estimated to make up about three-fourths of the total costs of ocean or geologic sequestration (Herzog 1998). A study conducted for the IEA Greenhouse Gas R&D Programme suggests that significantly increased power generation costs will result from CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture (IEA 1998). Using a base case pulverized coal plant with flue gas desulfurization for comparison, the cost of eliminating CO<sub>2</sub> emissions from advanced power generation plants ranged from \$35 to \$264 per tonne of CO<sub>2</sub>, and power cost increases ranged from 25 to 215 mills/kWh.

The wide range of costs is indicative of the peculiarities of the advanced power generation plants and the wide range of separation and capture possibilities. Although some of the more expensive methods may be used in certain production enterprises with high-value-added products, the less expensive approaches will likely be used in conventional and advanced power plants. These less expensive approaches are appropriate for power generation, and an independent analysis (Herzog 1998) suggests these separation and capture approaches would increase power generation costs by about 20 to 30 mills/kWh.

The scope of this element of the road map includes all anthropogenic emissions of CO<sub>2</sub>, with a focus on those sources most amenable to various



This chart depicts energy use in the United States by primary energy sources. For the last 4 years, coal production in the United States has been at record levels of over a billion short tons per year. Most of the coal is consumed in power generation, as is some natural gas. Most of the natural gas is used for space heating and other domestic, commercial, and industrial applications. The great majority of oil produced is used for transportation, and essentially none is used for electricity generation. This road map focuses on the CO<sub>2</sub> sources most adaptable to separation and capture; these include, primarily, power generation, hydrogen production, natural gas production, refineries, and industrial processes.

separation and capture methods. Sources that appear to lend themselves best to separation and capture technologies include large-point sources of CO<sub>2</sub> such as conventional pulverized-coal steam power plants; natural-gas-fired combined cycle plants; and advanced power generation systems, including coal or natural gas combustion plants employing enriched

air or oxygen to support combustion with CO<sub>2</sub> recycling, integrated coal gasification (especially oxygen-based) combined cycles, hydrogen turbines, and fuel cells. Many of the advanced systems will use enriched air or oxygen to support the combustion process. The reduction or elimination of the large volume of diluent nitrogen in process and flue gases dramatically improves the opportunity for the separation and capture of CO<sub>2</sub> from these systems. The equipment used for combustion and processing will range from existing technology (e.g., coal-fired steam plants and gas turbines) to advanced technology (e.g., production of hydrogen from fossil fuels).

In addition to power plants, numerous other high-CO<sub>2</sub>-emitting industrial sources are being considered for application of capture and sequestration technologies. In natural gas production, CO<sub>2</sub> is often generated as a by-product. Natural gas may contain significant amounts of CO<sub>2</sub> (20% or more by volume), most of which must be removed to produce pipeline-quality gas. Therefore, sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> from natural gas operations is a logical first step in applying CO<sub>2</sub> capture technology, as demonstrated by the Sleipner West project in Norway, the proposed Natuna project in Indonesia, and the proposed Gorgon project in Australia. Other significant industrial sources of CO<sub>2</sub> include oil refineries, iron and steel plants, and cement and lime producers. Although these sources contribute only a small fraction of total CO<sub>2</sub> emissions, separation and capture of these emissions are feasible and would contribute significantly to overall CO<sub>2</sub> emission reduction goals.

Dispersed sources of CO<sub>2</sub> emissions, particularly residential buildings and mobile spark ignition and diesel

### Advanced Power Plants



Advanced coal-fired power plants, such as this 800-ton-per-day coal gasification pilot/demonstration plant, will have energy conversion efficiencies 20 to 35% higher than those of conventional pulverized coal steam plants. These advanced plants are also much more amenable to carbon management than are conventional plants. (Photo courtesy of Tom Lynch of Dynegy)

engines, are especially challenging sources for applying cost-effective separation and capture methods. Although these sources are collectively large, they are not a primary focus of our road map. However, the introduction of fuel cells for vehicular propulsion and power generation may occur within the time frame of this road map, and depending on the extent of their deployment, the need to use fossil fuels to produce hydrogen ( $H_2$ ) for fuel cells could have a significant impact on  $CO_2$  separation and capture. For example, if buses and vehicle fleets move toward on-board  $H_2$  storage, central  $H_2$  production facilities may be built that would allow  $CO_2$  separation and capture. Such central  $H_2$  production facilities are considered in this road map. Other advanced power systems, such as hydrogen turbines that would use  $H_2$  as fuel, also have

important implications with respect to the need for central  $H_2$  production facilities and the opportunity for  $CO_2$  separation and capture. Electric vehicles may also come into widespread use during the time frame of this road map. Should that occur, separation and capture of  $CO_2$  at the central power stations that produce the electricity for recharging electric vehicle batteries would indirectly reduce  $CO_2$  emissions from the transportation sector. However, one of the consequences of the deregulation of the electric power industry may be the introduction of a significant distributed power supply. Depending on the size and nature of these power generation plants, such a change might have a negative impact on the ability to separate and capture  $CO_2$ .

Carbon dioxide concentrations in effluent streams will range from ~5% for current power generation plants to almost 100% for some advanced technologies. All separation and capture feed streams are likely to contain small amounts of impurities such as oxygen, sulfur oxides, and nitrogen oxides from combustion of natural gas or advanced processing of fossil fuels to yield hydrogen. For some current and emerging technologies involving combustion of coal, the feed streams will contain large amounts of nitrogen, oxygen, water vapor, particulates, and volatile and semivolatile chemical species as well. The feed stream may also be contaminated with chemicals used to remove other constituents (e.g., sulfur or nitrogen oxides). Feed-stream pressures will range from essentially ambient for current technologies to tens of atmospheres for some advanced processes. Feed-stream temperatures will range from very warm (~50°C) to hot (hundreds of degrees).

## 2.2 CURRENT AND POTENTIAL SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY REQUIREMENTS

The goal of CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture is to isolate carbon from its many sources in a form suitable for transport and sequestration. The technology required to perform this function depends on the nature of the carbon source and carbon form(s) that are suitable for subsequent steps leading to sequestration. Many forms are possible, including gaseous and supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> and even clathrates. High levels of purity (99+) are possible, but at significant cost.

The impurities in the product must be of sufficiently low concentrations that transportation and sequestration operations are not compromised. The purity requirements imposed by sequestration operations are not known because sequestration technology is being developed concurrently. Some initial investigation to develop provisional purity requirements will be necessary and will be reviewed and modified as the requirements of various sequestration options become clear. End-state specifications may be for the final product of separation and capture or for an intermediate product that is converted to another form (e.g., a carbonate) before transport. Separation and capture processes that operate on effluent streams, as well as those that are integral elements of optimized advanced processing flow sheets, will be considered.

## 2.3 CURRENT AND POTENTIAL SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY CAPABILITIES

Categorized in this section are what are believed to be conventional

separation and capture options that are applicable for anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> emissions. It is not presumed that the categories or methods within the categories are exhaustive; certainly, little-known or as-yet-unknown techniques could ultimately become preferred options. For those CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture methods identified, performance characteristics, including CO<sub>2</sub> product purity and operating conditions, differ because of operational or technical considerations. These characteristics of CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture technologies are the basis for matching them with the technologies that are the anthropogenic sources of CO<sub>2</sub>.

The most likely options currently identifiable for CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture include

- chemical and physical absorption
- physical and chemical adsorption
- low-temperature distillation
- gas-separation membranes
- mineralization and biomineralization
- vegetation

These were identified and included as probable options because of process simplicity, environmental impact, and economics. Currently, several CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture plants use one or more of these methods to produce CO<sub>2</sub> for commercial markets. The vegetation separation and some mineralization methods are also sequestration methods and are discussed in the appropriate focus area chapters.

### 2.3.1 Chemical and Physical Absorption

Carbon dioxide can be removed from gas streams by physical or chemical absorption. Physical absorption

processes are governed by Henry's law (i.e., they are temperature and pressure dependent with absorption occurring at high pressures and low temperatures). Typically, these processes are used when the concentration (i.e., partial pressure of CO<sub>2</sub>) is high (>525 kPa). The removal of 0.1 to 6% CO<sub>2</sub> from natural gas production wells by chemical absorption using amines can be deployed conveniently in remote fields. Currently, this approach represents the most widely deployed commercial technology for capture. However, in other commercial applications, the typical solvents for physically absorbing CO<sub>2</sub> include glycol-based compounds (e.g., the dimethylether of polyethylene glycol) and cold methanol.

Chemical absorption is preferred for low to moderate CO<sub>2</sub> partial pressures. Because CO<sub>2</sub> is an acid gas, chemical absorption of CO<sub>2</sub> from gaseous streams such as flue gases depends on acid-base neutralization reactions using basic solvents. Most common among the solvents in commercial use for neutralizing CO<sub>2</sub> are alkanolamines such as monoethanolamine (MEA), diethanolamine (DEA), and methyldiethanolamine (MDEA). Other chemical solvents in use are ammonia and hot potassium carbonate. Flue gases are typically at atmospheric pressure. Depending on the CO<sub>2</sub> content of the flue gas, the partial pressure of CO<sub>2</sub> can vary from 3.5 to 21.0 kPa. At such low partial pressures, alkanolamines are the best chemical solvents to enable good CO<sub>2</sub> recovery levels; however, use of these solvents must be balanced against the high energy penalty of regenerating them using steam-stripping.

Flue gases typically contain contaminants such as SO<sub>x</sub>, NO<sub>x</sub>, O<sub>2</sub>,

### Sleipner T Platform



The Sleipner T (T = treatment) platform in the North Sea is used by Statoil, the Norwegian state oil company, to remove CO<sub>2</sub> from sub-quality natural gas. An amine absorption process is used to remove the CO<sub>2</sub>, which is then compressed and piped to the adjacent Sleipner A platform for injection into the Utsira formation 1000 m below the seabed (see Chap. 5). Sleipner T is representative of the absorption technology that could be used for separation and capture of CO<sub>2</sub>, and it is used specifically as a CO<sub>2</sub> mitigation strategy. This is the largest CO<sub>2</sub> separation, capture, and sequestration operation in the world, sequestering about a million tonnes of CO<sub>2</sub> per year. (Photo courtesy of Olav Kaarstad of Statoil.)

### CO<sub>2</sub> Separation in Hydrogen Production



Separation of CO<sub>2</sub> and other contaminant gases using adsorption systems is a commercial practice in the production and purification of hydrogen. The reformer hydrogen plant shown produces 35 million standard cubic feet of hydrogen and about 9 million standard cubic feet of CO<sub>2</sub> per day. These plants are not usually operated in a mode that results in complete conversion of methane to hydrogen and CO<sub>2</sub>. However, operational modifications could be made in which essentially pure hydrogen and CO<sub>2</sub> would be produced. Numerous plants such as this one are in use worldwide, but the CO<sub>2</sub> is typically vented to the atmosphere. (Photo courtesy of Joe Abrardo of Air Products and Chemicals)

hydrocarbons, and particulates. The presence of these impurities can reduce the absorption capacity of amines as well as create operational difficulties such as corrosion. To avoid such problems, these contaminants are often reduced to acceptable levels through the use of suitable pretreatment techniques. Some commercial processes handle these difficulties through pretreatment and/or the use of chemical inhibitors in the absorption process. However, these processes tend to be more expensive than conventional alkanolamine-based absorption processes.

Some of the typical operating problems encountered in using conventional trayed or packed columns for gas-liquid contact are foaming, vapor entrainment of the solvent, and the need to replenish the solvent in low quantities. However, these problems have a relatively small effect on the total system costs of the alkanolamine-based absorption process. Membrane contactors that typically use polymeric membranes can offer some advantages over conventional contactors, which are expected to be most advantageous where system size and weight need to be minimized (e.g., on ocean platforms). Potential benefits include the elimination of foaming and vapor entrainment, as well as the ability to maintain liquid and gas flow rates independently.

#### 2.3.2 Physical and Chemical Adsorption

Selective separation of CO<sub>2</sub> may be achieved by the physical adsorption of the gas on high-surface-area solids in which the large surface area results from the creation of very fine surface porosity through surface activation methods using, for example, steam, oxygen, or CO<sub>2</sub>. Some naturally

occurring materials (e.g., zeolites) have high surface areas and efficiently adsorb some gases. Adsorption capacities and kinetics are governed by numerous factors including adsorbent pore size, pore volume, surface area, and affinity of the adsorbed gas for the adsorbent.

An IEA study (1998) evaluated physical adsorption systems based on zeolites operated in pressure swing adsorption (PSA) and thermal, or temperature, swing adsorption (TSA) modes. In PSA operation, gases are adsorbed at high pressures, isolated, and then desorbed by reducing the pressure. A variant of PSA, called vacuum swing adsorption, uses a vacuum desorption cycle. In TSA operation, gases are adsorbed at lower temperatures, isolated, and then desorbed by heating. These processes are somewhat energy-intensive and expensive. The IEA report concludes that PSA and TSA technologies are not attractive to the gas- and coal-fueled power systems included in that study. Nevertheless, PSA and TSA are commercially practiced methods of gas separation and capture and are used to some extent in hydrogen production and in removal of CO<sub>2</sub> from subquality natural gas. Therefore, these methods clearly are applicable for separation and capture of CO<sub>2</sub> from some relatively large-point sources.

### 2.3.3 Low-Temperature Distillation

Low-temperature distillation is widely used commercially for the liquefaction and purification of CO<sub>2</sub> from high-purity sources (typically a stream with >90% CO<sub>2</sub>). In low-temperature distillation, a low-boiling-temperature liquid is purified by evaporating and subsequently condensing it. However, such processes are not used for separating CO<sub>2</sub> from significantly leaner CO<sub>2</sub> streams. The application of

distillation to the purification of lean CO<sub>2</sub> streams necessitates low-temperature refrigeration (<0°C) and solids processing below the triple point of CO<sub>2</sub> (-57°C). A patented process to separate CO<sub>2</sub> from natural gas, providing liquid CO<sub>2</sub>, is an example of such a low-temperature process (Valencia and Denton 1985; Victory and Valencia 1987).

Distillation generally has good economies of scale, as it is cost-effective for large-scale plants, and it can generally produce a relatively pure product. Distillation is most cost-effective when feed gases contain components with widely separated boiling points, and when the feed gas is available at high pressure and most of the products are also required at high pressure. Low-temperature distillation enables direct production of liquid CO<sub>2</sub> that can be stored or sequestered at high pressure via liquid pumping. The major disadvantage of this process is that, if other components are present that have freezing points above normal operating temperatures, they must be removed before the gas stream is cooled to avoid freezing and eventual blockage of process equipment. Another disadvantage is the amount of energy required to provide the refrigeration necessary for the process.

Most CO<sub>2</sub> emissions being considered for CO<sub>2</sub> capture are produced in combustion processes. Such streams contain water and other trace combustion by-products such as NO<sub>x</sub> and SO<sub>x</sub>, several of which must be removed before the stream is introduced into the low-temperature process. These by-products are usually generated near atmospheric pressure. These attributes, coupled with the energy intensity of low-temperature refrigeration, tend to make distillation

less economical than other routes. The application of low-temperature distillation, therefore, is expected to be confined to feed sources at high pressure and with high CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations (e.g., gas wells).

### 2.3.4 Gas-Separation Membranes

Gas-separation membranes are of many different types, and although the efficacy of only a few of these types in separating and capturing CO<sub>2</sub> has been demonstrated, their potential is generally viewed as very good. Diffusion mechanisms in membranes are numerous and differ greatly depending on the type of membrane used. Generally, gas separation is accomplished via some interaction between the membrane and the gas being separated. For example, polymeric membranes transport gases by a solution-diffusion mechanism (i.e., the gas is dissolved in the membrane and transported through the membrane by a diffusion process). Polymeric membranes, although effective, typically achieve low gas transport flux and are subject to degradation. However, polymer membranes are inexpensive and can achieve large ratios of membrane area to module volume.

Palladium membranes are effective in separating H<sub>2</sub> from CO<sub>2</sub>, but gas fluxes are typically very low, and palladium is subject to degradation in sulfur-containing environments. Porous inorganic membranes, metallic or ceramic, are particularly attractive because of the many transport mechanisms that can be used to maximize the separation factor for various gas separations. Porous inorganic membranes can be 100 to 10,000 times more permeable than polymeric membranes. (Permeance is the volume of gas transported through

a membrane per unit of surface area per unit of time per unit of differential pressure.) However, the cost for inorganic membranes is high, and the ratio of membrane area to module volume is 100 to 1000 times smaller than that for polymer membranes. These factors tend to equalize the cost per membrane module. The inorganic membrane life cycle is generally expected to be much longer. Inorganic membranes can be operated at high pressures and temperatures and in corrosive environments, yet still have very long life cycles. They are also less prone to fouling and can be used in applications where polymer membranes cannot.

Considerable interest and R&D are being focused on zeolite-type materials to achieve a membrane with molecular sieving characteristics. However, the permeance of such membranes tends to be substantially lower than desired. These are high-cost membranes because the methods for fabricating them are expensive.

Inorganic membranes can be made with effective pore diameters as small as 0.5 nm and as large as desired. Membranes can be made with a wide range of materials, and pore size and material can be changed to improve permeance and separation factor. Large separation factors are essential to achieve desired results in a single stage. Inorganic membranes can be made to separate small molecules from larger molecules (molecular sieves) or to separate certain large molecules from smaller molecules (enhanced surface flow). This latter effect is important because it allows separation that will keep the desired gas either on the high-pressure or the low-pressure side of the membrane. Note that the operating conditions play an important role in determining the change in

mole fraction across a membrane and the amount of the desired gas that can be recovered (captured). There must be a partial pressure gradient of the desired gas across the membrane to achieve a flow of that gas through the membrane.

With all the design parameters available, it is likely that an inorganic membrane can be made that will be useful for separating CO<sub>2</sub> from almost any other gas if appropriate operating conditions can be achieved. However, for multiple gas mixtures, several membranes with different characteristics may be required to separate and capture high-purity CO<sub>2</sub>.

## 2.4 SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY GAPS

We present here our views on the gaps in science and technology and the R&D required to fill or span these gaps in order that our vision may be achieved. As a result in large measure of the state of separation and capture technology, the R&D projects required to address these needs will be of the type that has been described as “Pasteur’s Quadrant” research. This type of research seeks to extend the frontiers of understanding but is also inspired by considerations of use. We extend that description somewhat in that our R&D recommendations refer to a science-based technology development approach.

### 2.4.1 Chemical and Physical Absorption

The issue of the recovery of volatile trace elements, such as mercury, in fossil fuel is a factor in the regulatory process and must be considered in the context of this road map. The optimal recovery strategy for trace elements

may not be consistent with an optimal strategy for CO<sub>2</sub> capture. Also, using current technologies, minimizing energy costs for CO<sub>2</sub> capture will probably not be compatible with a 100% CO<sub>2</sub> capture strategy. Better options must be developed to reduce total system costs for CO<sub>2</sub> recovery. Specific needs are listed below.

- Significant development work on membrane contactors is needed to improve their chemical compatibility with alkanolamines and high-temperature resistance, as well as to lower costs.
- Commercially available alkanolamines such as MEA, DEA, and MDEA have different costs, rates of reaction with CO<sub>2</sub>, absorptive capacities, and corrosion rates. Researchers have an opportunity to optimize existing solvents or develop new solvents to reduce total capital and operating costs. Some development of chemical and physical solvents and systems will be required to achieve the vision of this road map.
- It is likely that novel solvents and system components will reduce the capital and energy costs for flue gas treatment to separate and capture CO<sub>2</sub>. Prudent courses of action include investment in R&D on novel solvents, particularly those amenable to use in advanced systems, and investment in system studies to identify the best possible configurations of processes and equipment, particularly as they relate to cost and process simplicity.
- Considerable interest has been shown in the concept of retrofitting conventional pulverized-coal boilers for CO<sub>2</sub> recycling to increase the CO<sub>2</sub> concentration to the point where recovery becomes economically feasible.

- Molecular modeling of the absorption process is indicated to aid in the selection of absorbents.
- Kinetic modeling is needed to establish or confirm rate-limiting steps in the absorption process.
- Synthesis of absorbents based in part on molecular and kinetic models is an appropriate R&D investment.
- Systems that use air to support combustion present difficulties in separation and capture of CO<sub>2</sub> because of the large amount (~80%) of nitrogen diluent in the process stream. Integrated gasification combined cycle (IGCC) power plants could provide an ideal opportunity for CO<sub>2</sub> capture when oxygen rather than air is used to support the gasification process. (In combined cycles, which include gas turbines and steam turbines, the hot exhaust gases from the gas turbines are used to generate steam to drive the steam turbines.) Coal-derived gas for gas turbines is produced in a highly concentrated, pressurized form that allows for the use of a variety of solvents that can capture CO<sub>2</sub> from the gas stream before combustion, which may also be in oxygen rather than air. As a baseline case, the cost and energy benefits of chemical absorption processes integrated into an IGCC or other advanced power system must be demonstrated in a commercial setting as a real-case option.
- Novel gas/liquid contactors must be developed to minimize mass- and heat-transfer effects in gas scrubbing. The contactors might take advantage of so-called “structured packing” or even “microchannel reactors.” Using microchannel hardware, highly compact and efficient absorption

systems could be developed that consist of an absorber/heat exchanger and desorber. Because the dimensions of the channels are measured in micrometers, heat- and mass-transfer effects are limited. Isothermal operation could produce higher absorption capacity. The technical challenges for microchannel reactors will be cost containment, prevention of plugging, and high throughput. Other potential problems include scale-up, corrosion, and solvent carryover.

## 2.4.2 Physical and Chemical Adsorption

H<sub>2</sub> production plants that use PSA produce an impure CO<sub>2</sub> stream containing unrecovered hydrogen, methane, CO, and nitrogen. This stream is recycled to the reformer as fuel, becoming the flue gas from the reformer. Physical adsorbents suffer from low selectivity and low capacity, and they are limited to operation at low temperatures.

- Adsorbents that can operate at higher temperatures in the presence of steam must be developed and are already under consideration.
- Indicated programs include R&D aimed at the synthesis of adsorbents with increased adsorptive capacity and improved kinetics and capable of producing a pure CO<sub>2</sub> product, as well as R&D directed to improving methods for effecting the adsorption-desorption process.
- Molecular modeling of adsorbents is needed to aid in the identification of adsorbents selective to CO<sub>2</sub>.

- Kinetic modeling to identify rate-limiting steps and to provide a focus for adsorbent development is needed.
- New steam-tolerant, high-temperature sorbent materials need to be developed and coupled with novel process concepts. Unlike zeolites and other inorganic sorbents, these sorbent materials would be capable of adsorbing CO<sub>2</sub> in the presence of steam. The sorbent would be regenerated in a low-energy-intensive manner. Regenerability would eliminate material-handling problems when nonregenerable natural minerals are used. Stability of the sorbent over thousands of cycles needs to be demonstrated.
- Other novel adsorption concepts for CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture are likely, and R&D on novel concepts should be pursued. If adsorbents can be developed that are capable of adsorption at high temperature and desorption using novel processes, they could significantly improve the ability to control CO<sub>2</sub> emissions from fossil-fueled power systems.

#### 2.4.3 Low-Temperature Distillation

To extend the viability of low-temperature distillation processes, several development activities would be required.

- Process cycle development and process integration studies for specific applications are needed.
- Integration with sequestration processes and development of efficient and novel refrigeration cycles may enable competitive low-temperature distillation processes. Comparison with other technology options will ultimately depend on the specific application and opportunity.

#### 2.4.4 Gas-Separation Membranes

Considerable R&D is required to realize the potential of membranes for separation and capture of CO<sub>2</sub>, particularly at higher temperatures and pressures.

- R&D on polymeric membranes is essentially restricted to changing the composition of the polymer to increase the dissolution and diffusion rates for the desired gas components.
- Experience has shown an apparent limit to the effectiveness of polymeric membranes. The polymer composition can be changed to increase the membrane permeance, which invariably decreases the separation factor. The converse is also true: changing the composition to increase the separation factor reduces the membrane permeance. Although there is not nearly so extensive an accumulation of data for inorganic membranes, the available data do not indicate a corresponding relationship for inorganic membranes.
- R&D in molecular modeling is needed to indicate the potential of membranes to separate CO<sub>2</sub>.
- Kinetic modeling should be used to establish the potential flux of gases in membrane systems.
- Novel membrane synthesis methods should be developed.
- Inorganic, palladium-based membrane devices could be developed that reform hydrocarbon fuels to mixtures of hydrogen and CO<sub>2</sub> and that, at the same time, separate the high-value hydrogen. The remaining gas, predominantly CO<sub>2</sub>, would be recovered in a compressed form. The hydrogen could be used in future fuel cell systems or advanced turbine power systems. Pure hydrogen, when

burned to generate power, produces water vapor as the only product of combustion. Daunting issues include capital costs and stabilization of the membrane in highly corrosive gases if coal is used.

#### 2.4.5 Product Treatment and Conversion

As noted previously, the product of the separation and capture function will be CO<sub>2</sub>. However, the attributes of the CO<sub>2</sub>, such as its concentration, impurities, pressure, and temperature, will differ for the respective combinations of sources and separation and capture methods employed. Absorption processes, for example, may be manipulated to yield CO<sub>2</sub> streams of very high purity, and those CO<sub>2</sub> streams will generally be at source pressures. For those options that will sequester carbon as CO<sub>2</sub>, it is assumed that the CO<sub>2</sub> will be subjected to the purification treatment and pressurization required for transportation and for sequestration. The CO<sub>2</sub> product may be provided at 90 to 99+% purity, at temperatures ranging from cryogenic to a few hundred degrees Celsius, and at pressures from atmospheric to more than 3.5 MPa. Different carbon forms (other than CO<sub>2</sub>) may also be required for some of the sequestration options. R&D should address

- full-cycle analysis of product treatment and conversion to meet the requirements of transportation and sequestration
- conversion of CO<sub>2</sub> to the required form for the particular sequestration option
- the disposition of the variety of by-products that may be produced during conversion of the CO<sub>2</sub> to other products

#### 2.4.6 Transportation

In some scenarios, the separation and capture process will be remote from the sequestration process. Any R&D program must include carbon transport to the sequestration site and should address primarily systems aspects such as optimization and integration of the carbon sources, separation and capture, transportation, and sequestration. The cost to build a CO<sub>2</sub> pipeline today is estimated to be in the range of \$1–10 per tonne of CO<sub>2</sub> per 100 miles. All costs associated with the pipeline, such as right of ways and repairing crop damage, are included. However, this estimate assumes that the pipeline does not have any river crossings and avoids urban areas (Fox 1999).

#### 2.4.7 Advanced Concepts

This section addresses advanced concepts that have been identified and/or advocated as having significant potential for CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture. In one advanced concept, CO<sub>2</sub>-containing gases are dissolved in water, followed by the formation of CO<sub>2</sub> hydrates in which CO<sub>2</sub> is trapped in a crystalline ice-like solid. The process requires gases at about 0°C and 1 to 7 MPa, depending on the other gases present and on the partial pressure of CO<sub>2</sub> in the gas stream. The formation of CO<sub>2</sub> hydrates may be especially amenable to removal of CO<sub>2</sub> from pressurized gas streams with minimal energy losses.

An advanced approach, called electrical swing adsorption (ESA), that addresses many of the issues of PSA and TSA systems uses a novel carbon-bonded activated carbon fiber as the adsorption medium (Burchell et al. 1997). Activation conditions for these adsorbents may be varied to increase

or decrease pore size, pore volume, and surface area to improve the effectiveness of the carbon fiber as a CO<sub>2</sub> adsorbent. This material is also highly conductive electrically, so adsorbed gases can be rapidly, effectively, and efficiently desorbed by passing a low-voltage electrical current through the material. This adsorption-desorption process may be used with no variation of system pressure and with minimal variation in system temperature. The electrical energy required for desorption is approximately equal to the heat of adsorption of the adsorbed gas; thus the ESA process is promising as an energy-efficient, economical gas separation and capture method.

Another novel technology is referred to as “chemical-looping combustion,” or more recently as “sorbent energy

transfer.” In this process, the fossil fuel (gasified coal or natural gas) transfers its energy to reduce a metal oxide, producing steam and high-pressure CO<sub>2</sub> that can be sequestered with little additional compression energy. The steam is used in a steam turbine to produce electricity. The metal is then reoxidized in air, producing heat to raise the temperature of a high-pressure stream of air or nitrogen to drive a gas turbine to generate more electricity. The oxidized metal is sent to the reducing vessel to repeat the cycle. The barriers to any new combustion system are legion; this is also true even of conventional coal combustion using oxygen instead of air with CO<sub>2</sub> recycling.

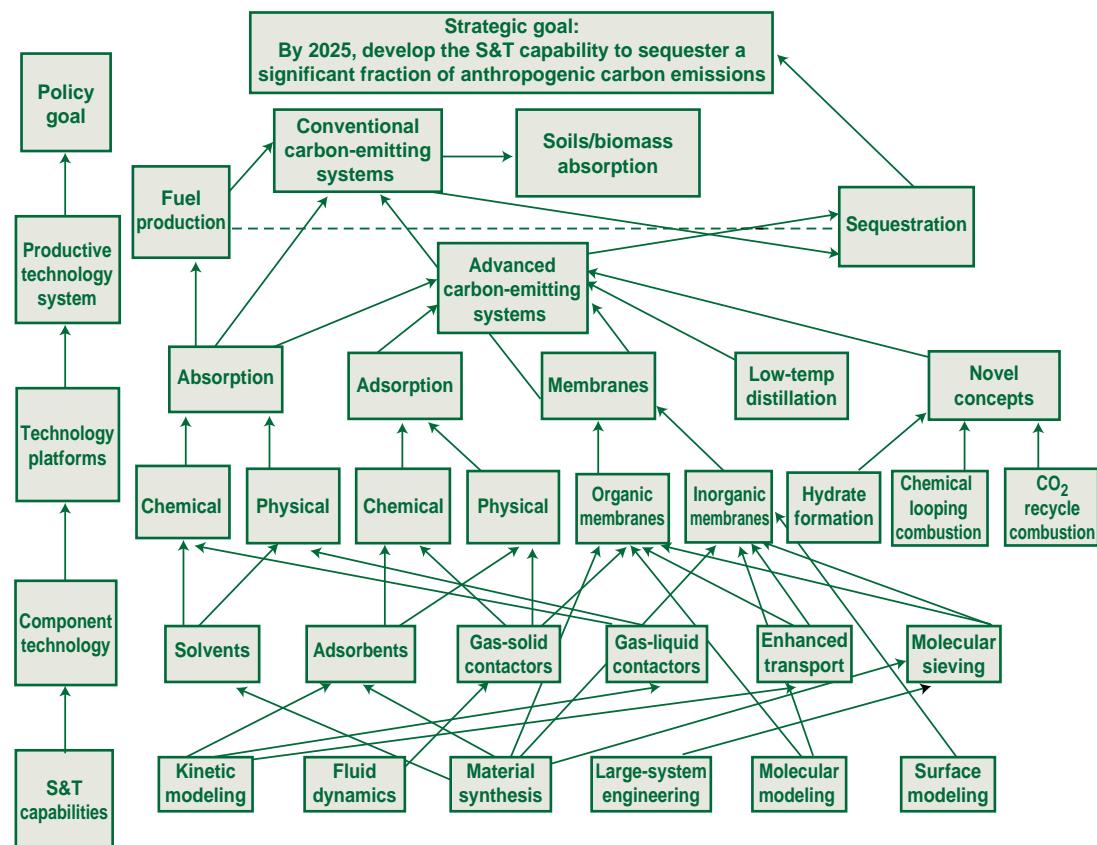


Fig. 2.1. Separation and capture R&D road map.

## 2.5 ALIGNMENT OF REQUIREMENTS TO CAPABILITIES (R&D ROAD MAP)

As indicated in the preceding section, numerous R&D needs and opportunities exist for improvements and innovations related to CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture. Figure 2.1 presents an R&D road map for pursuing the stated goal. Based on the analysis presented here, as well as analyses presented in the references to this chapter, separation and capture of CO<sub>2</sub> from anthropogenic sources for sequestration via any of several options appear to be possible. Notwithstanding this possibility, a disciplined R&D program directed to improvements in currently available technology, extension of current developments, and pursuit of innovative and novel approaches is critical to ensuring the ability to effectively and efficiently capture CO<sub>2</sub> at costs that are not prohibitive.

## 2.6 REFERENCES

Burchell, T. D., R. R. Judkins, M. R. Rogers, and A. M. Williams 1998. "A Novel Process and Material for the Separation of Carbon Dioxide and Hydrogen Sulfide Gas Mixtures," *Carbon*, 35(9): 1279-94.

FETC (Federal Energy Technology Center) 1998. *Proceedings of the Government Workshop on Carbon Sequestration*, Morgantown, West Virginia, July 23-24, 1998 (forthcoming).

Fox, C. E. 1999. Personal communication from C. E. Fox, Vice-President of Operations and Technology, Shell CO<sub>2</sub> Co. Ltd., to H. J. Herzog, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, October 18, 1999.

Herzog, H. J. 1998. "The Economics of CO<sub>2</sub> Capture," presented at the Fourth International Conference on Greenhouse Gas Control Technologies, Interlaken Switzerland, August 30-September 2.

Herzog, H. J., ed., 1998. *Proceedings of the Stakeholders' Workshop on Carbon Sequestration*, MIT EL 98-002, Massachusetts Institute of Technology Energy Laboratory, June.

IEA (International Energy Agency) 1998. *Carbon Dioxide Capture from Power Stations*, available at [www.ieagreen.org.uk/sr2p.htm](http://www.ieagreen.org.uk/sr2p.htm).

Socolow, R., ed. 1997. *Fuels Decarbonization and Carbon Sequestration: Report of a Workshop*, Report 302, Princeton University/Center for Energy and Environmental Studies, September.

Valencia, J. A., and R. D. Denton 1985. "Method and Apparatus for Separating Carbon Dioxide and Other Acid Gases from Methane by the Use of Distillation and a Controlled Freezing Zone," U.S. Patent 4,533,372, August 6.

Victory, D. J., and J. A. Valencia 1987. "The CFZ Process: Direct Methane-Carbon Dioxide Fractionation," presented at the 66<sup>th</sup> annual Gas Processors Association Convention, Denver, Colo., March.

# 7 Vision

By 2025, develop (1) the technology to implement ocean sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>, (2) the knowledge to understand its effects on marine ecosystems and on the ocean's biogeochemical cycles, and (3) the modeling tools to determine the long-term fate of sequestered CO<sub>2</sub>.

## 3

## OCEAN SEQUESTRATION

The ocean represents a large potential sink for sequestration of anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> emissions. Although the long-term effectiveness and potential side effects of using the oceans in this way are unknown, two methods of enhancing sequestration have been proposed:

- the direct injection of a relatively pure CO<sub>2</sub> stream that has been generated, for example, at a power plant or from an industrial process (see Sect. 3.1)
- the enhancement of the net oceanic uptake from the atmosphere, for example, through iron fertilization (see Sect. 3.2)

Other pathways are also possible but may require longer time frames to be developed (see Sect. 3.3). For a given pathway, our goal is to analyze the tradeoffs among cost, long-term effectiveness, and changes to the ocean ecosystem.

On average, the ocean is about 4000 m deep and contains 40,000 GtC (IPCC 1996). It is made up of a surface layer (nominally 100 m thick, but the depth varies), a thermocline (down to about 1000 m deep) that is stably stratified, and the deep ocean below 1000 m. Its waters circulate between surface and deep layers on varying time scales from 250 years in the Atlantic Ocean to 1000 years for parts of the Pacific Ocean. The amount of carbon that would cause a doubling of the atmospheric concentration would change the deep ocean concentration by less than 2%.

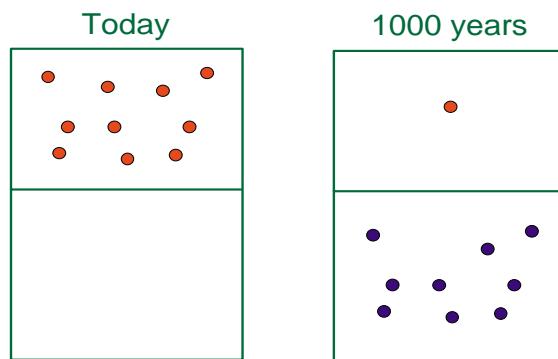
Currently, net oceanic uptake of  $2 \pm 0.8$  GtC/year<sup>1</sup> results from the increase in

<sup>1</sup>This number for net ocean uptake is from IPCC and is based on data for the mid-1980s. Changes in sea-air forcing since then should have increased this flux slightly.

anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere. On a time scale of 1000 years, about 85% of today's anthropogenic emissions of CO<sub>2</sub> will be transferred to the ocean (see Fig. 3.1). Ocean sequestration strategies attempt to speed up this process to reduce both peak atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations and their rate of increase.

Although the ocean's biomass represents about 0.05% of the terrestrial ecosystem, it converts about as much inorganic carbon to organic matter (about 50 GtC/year) as do processes on land. The photosynthetic fixation of CO<sub>2</sub> by ocean organisms, followed by the sinking and slow remineralization (conversion to CO<sub>2</sub>) of organic carbon, is a natural process for sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> in the deep sea. This process is often referred to as the "biological pump" (see Fig. 3.2).

The question is whether we can use the deep sea as a site for sequestration of additional anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub>. Many people are wary of ocean sequestration, including some authors of this chapter, because it is known that small changes in biogeochemical cycles may have large consequences, many of which are secondary and difficult to predict. Nevertheless, ocean carbon sequestration is occurring on a large scale today, and entrepreneurs are already trying to commercialize these technologies. Therefore, it is imperative to conduct research to better understand the risks as well as the opportunities. The ocean plays an important role in sustaining the biosphere, so any change in ocean

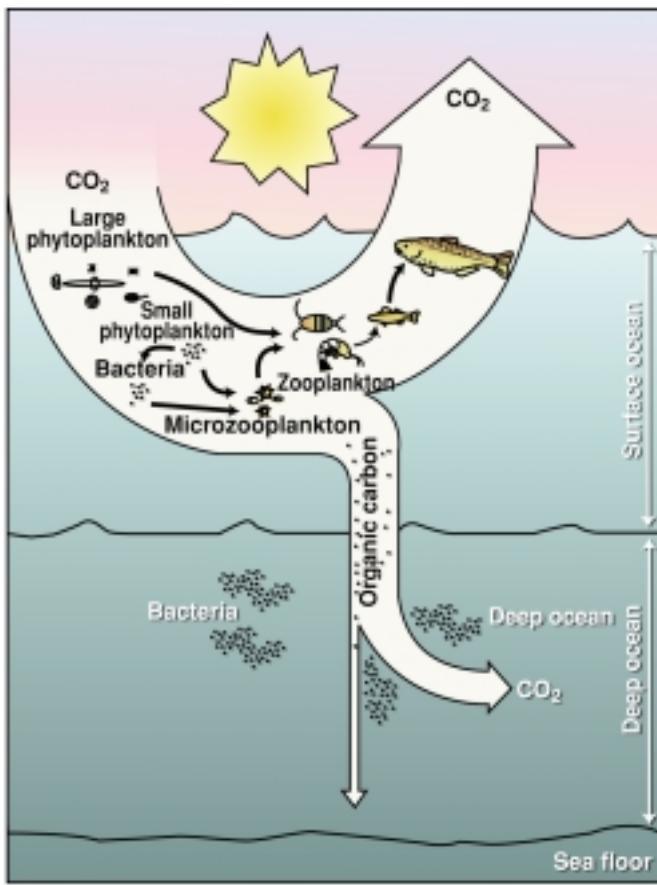


**Fig. 3.1. Every year the ocean actively takes up one-third of our anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.** Eventually (over 1000 years), about 85% of today's anthropogenic emissions of CO<sub>2</sub> will be transferred to the ocean. Ocean sequestration strategies attempt to speed up this ongoing process to reduce both peak atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations and their rate of increase.

ecosystem function must be viewed with extreme caution.

How much carbon can the ocean sequester? Because of high pressures prevailing in deep ocean environments, a large quantity of CO<sub>2</sub> (exceeding the estimated available fossil fuel resources of 5,000 to 10,000 GtC) may be dissolved in deep ocean waters. However, a more realistic criterion needs to be based on an understanding of the biogeochemistry of the oceans. At present, we do not have enough information to estimate how much carbon can be sequestered without perturbing marine ecosystem structure and function; obtaining this information is one of the goals of the proposed research (Takahashi et al. 1981; Sarmiento and Bender 1994).<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup>As an example calculation with no implications as to what an environmentally acceptable amount is, adding about 1300 GtC to the ocean would result in a pH decrease of 0.3. This pH change is similar to the change that will occur in the surface ocean as a result of doubling the preindustrial amount of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>. The change in surface seawater pH today, from that of preindustrial times, is already 0.1.



**Fig. 3.2. A schematic diagram of the biological pump.** In this generalized pelagic food web,  $\text{CO}_2$  is being fixed by phytoplankton through photosynthesis. Phytoplankton are consumed by zooplankton that may, in turn, be consumed by higher trophic organisms, such as fish. Organic carbon in the form of detritus (e.g., fecal pellets, decaying organisms) sinks to the ocean depths, where it is remineralized to  $\text{CO}_2$  by bacteria en route.

### 3.1 DIRECT INJECTION OF $\text{CO}_2$

The direct injection of  $\text{CO}_2$  into the ocean requires starting with a fairly concentrated stream of  $\text{CO}_2$  and delivering it to locations in the ocean where it will be effectively sequestered for hundreds of years, if not longer. To accomplish this,  $\text{CO}_2$  would likely be injected as a liquid below the thermocline at depths greater than 1000 m (Herzog 1998). One limitation of this approach is that it is best suited to large, stationary  $\text{CO}_2$  sources with

access to deep-sea sequestration sites—sources that may account for about 15 to 20% of our anthropogenic  $\text{CO}_2$  emissions.

We have the technology to proceed with this option. However, we do not have the knowledge to adequately optimize the costs, determine the effectiveness of the sequestration (i.e., its impact in mitigating climate change), and understand the resulting changes in the biogeochemical cycles of the oceans. This section addresses how we may gain this knowledge.

#### 3.1.1 Science and Technology Requirements

There are many technical options for sequestration by direct injection of  $\text{CO}_2$ . For example, injections may occur at moderate depths (1000–2000 m), at deep depths (>3000 m), in depressions on the ocean floor, or even into the suboceanic crust of the earth. The  $\text{CO}_2$  may be sequestered by dissolution in the water column or by the formation of  $\text{CO}_2$  hydrates, which are solid, ice-like compounds. The delivery of the  $\text{CO}_2$  may be by pipeline or tanker. In all cases, on the scale of kilometers around the injection point, near-field computer models are needed to understand the physical and chemical interactions between  $\text{CO}_2$  and seawater and the interaction between  $\text{CO}_2$ -enriched seawater and stratified surrounding water. One challenge is to determine how to use the buffering effect of bottom sediments (e.g., the ability of calcium carbonate to react with the  $\text{CO}_2$ ) to increase the capacity

and effectiveness of ocean sequestration (Archer 1996). Another challenge is to understand the kinetics associated with the formation of CO<sub>2</sub> hydrates and to try to take advantage of their properties (e.g., increased density, lower mass transfer coefficient) for carbon sequestration. Finally, engineering analysis is required to estimate the costs of the various injection pathways.

Sequestration effectiveness will depend on the exact depth and location of the injection. In general, the deeper the CO<sub>2</sub> is injected, the more effectively it is sequestered; but injecting deeper requires more advanced technologies and may increase costs. Regional and global ocean general circulation models (OGCMs) are required to quantify sequestration effectiveness by calculating the reduction in atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> as a function of time as a result of various ocean sequestration strategies. However, OGCMs must be improved to reduce the uncertainty associated with their results.

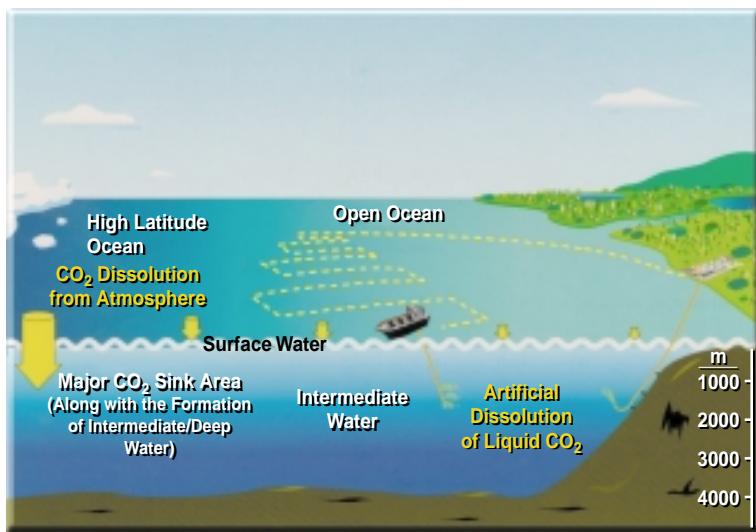
Environmental impacts near the injection point must be detailed, and the long-term, broad-scale impacts on the function of the ocean ecosystem must be understood. The most significant environmental impact is expected to be associated with lowered pH as a result of the reaction of CO<sub>2</sub> with seawater, although there could also be direct impact from the CO<sub>2</sub> itself. Non-swimming marine organisms residing at depths of about 1000 m or greater are most likely to be affected adversely by more acidic seawater; the magnitude of the impact will depend on both the level of pH change and the duration of exposure. The microbial community would also be affected, causing unknown impacts

on biogeochemical processes that play a crucial role in the ocean carbon cycle. Local environmental impacts may be minimized by designing the injection system to disperse the CO<sub>2</sub>. Specific needs for R&D include gathering baseline data and implementing cost-effective monitoring. Robust, predictive models could help reduce the costs of monitoring by focusing sampling on areas of greatest potential impact.

### **3.1.2 Current Scientific and Technological Capabilities**

Led by offshore exploration and production activities of the oil and gas industry, great strides have been made in the development of undersea offshore technology. It is becoming routine to work in depths approaching 2000 m. Work at much deeper depths, even approaching 10,000 m, is possible at reduced scales and/or time horizons, as has been shown in deep drilling and other scientific programs. However, many technical challenges still exist in going deep at large scales for extended times. Therefore, as a first step, it appears that the best strategy is to discharge the CO<sub>2</sub> below the thermocline at moderate depths of 1000 to 2000 m.

To implement that strategy, several methods of injection have been proposed (Fig. 3.3). One method is to transport the liquid CO<sub>2</sub> from shore in a pipeline and to discharge it from a manifold lying on the ocean bottom, forming a rising droplet plume. Another method is to transport the liquid CO<sub>2</sub> by tanker and then discharge it from a pipe towed by the moving ship. Although the means of delivery are different, the plumes resulting from these two options would be quite similar and, therefore, research on these two injection



**Fig. 3.3. For injection of CO<sub>2</sub> at depths of 1000 to 2000 m, it has been suggested that liquid CO<sub>2</sub> be transported from shore through a pipeline for discharge from a manifold lying on the ocean bottom.** Another proposal is to transport the liquid CO<sub>2</sub> by tanker and then discharge it from a pipe towed by the moving ship.

methods should be considered complementary.

Once the CO<sub>2</sub> leaves the pipe, our current capabilities are much more limited. Models do exist to characterize the near-field plume, but they have not been validated with experimental data. We know that CO<sub>2</sub> hydrates may be formed from the injected CO<sub>2</sub> (see the sidebar on formation of CO<sub>2</sub> hydrates). The thermodynamic behavior of hydrates is well understood and their kinetics have been extensively investigated. However, we do not fully understand the kinetics that will control the formation and dissolution of hydrates in seawater, especially under the dynamic conditions in the plume.

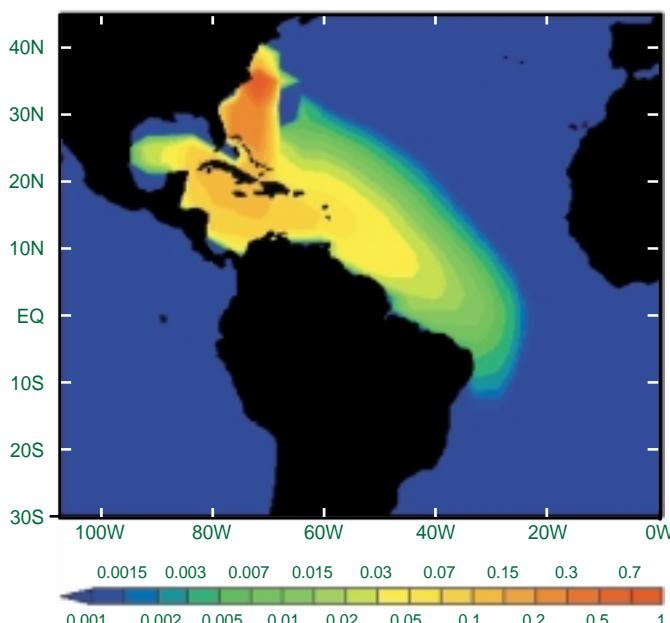
Regional and global OGCMs are available to describe the ultimate fate of the injected CO<sub>2</sub> by modeling its behavior in the mid-field (tens to hundreds of kilometers from the injection point) and in the far field

(hundreds of kilometers and greater from the injection point) (Fig. 3.4). These models can simulate broad characteristics of observed transient tracer fields (e.g., chlorofluorocarbons, carbon-14, and tritium), whose movements can be detected in the open ocean. However, for modeling the fate of a point source such as injected CO<sub>2</sub>, the uncertainties are large and the results will not be definitive.

Perhaps the area we are least capable of understanding is the environmental consequences of CO<sub>2</sub> injection. We do understand the ocean's capacity to neutralize the water that is acidified by injected CO<sub>2</sub>. We have models to predict pH changes to tens of kilometers around the injection point. However, we have very little knowledge of how the pH change or other impacts due to CO<sub>2</sub> injection would affect the biogeochemistry and ecosystems in the deep ocean.

These are selected research activities now under way to evaluate the ocean sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>.

**International Field Experiment.** Is ocean sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> technically feasible? What are its environmental impacts? Can these impacts be minimized economically? An international research project is addressing these questions. Japan, Norway, and the United States signed a Project Agreement for International Collaboration on CO<sub>2</sub> Ocean Sequestration in December 1997; since that time, Canada, Australia, and



**Fig. 3.4. Simulated distribution of carbon injected into the ocean at a depth of 1720 m off the coast of Cape Hatteras, North Carolina, after 20 years of continuous injection, as computed by the three-dimensional ocean model of Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory.** At this depth, the model predicts that the carbon would be swept south with an undercurrent that flows beneath the Gulf Stream. This kind of simulation is necessary to determine the most effective depths and locations for deep-sea CO<sub>2</sub> injection.

ABB (Switzerland) have joined the project, which will continue through March 31, 2002. A field experiment will be performed in the summer of 2001 off the Kona Coast of Hawaii. The implementing research organizations are the Research Institute of Innovative Technology for the Earth (Japan), the Norwegian Institute for Water Research (Norway), the Institute of Ocean Sciences (Canada), and the Massachusetts Institute of Technology [(MIT) United States]. The general contractor for the project is the Pacific International Center for High-Technology Research in Hawaii. To investigate longer-term acute and chronic biological impacts, a phase 2 project may be conducted in an enclosure or at a semi-enclosed site

such as a fjord (Adams et al. 1998).

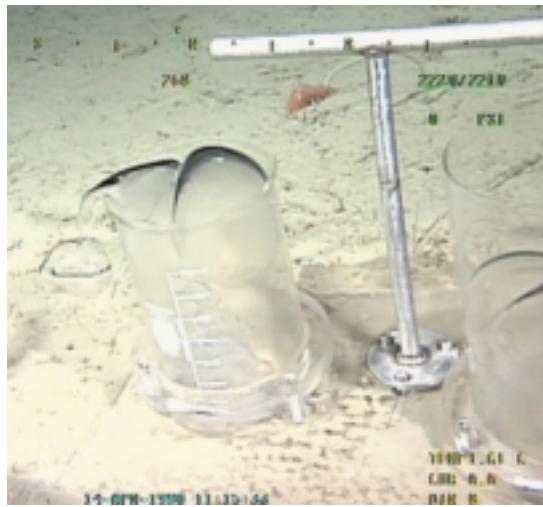
**Experiments at the Monterey Bay Aquarium Research Institute (MBARI).** In April 1998, MBARI scientists successfully carried out a controlled experiment with a 9-L liquid CO<sub>2</sub> release at a depth of 3650 m (in situ temperature about 1.6°C) from *Tiburon*, an unmanned, remotely operated vehicle (ROV) tethered to a ship. For several hours they observed the transformation of liquid CO<sub>2</sub> into solid hydrate (see sidebar).

### Comparison of Ocean Carbon Cycle Models.

The International Geosphere-Biosphere Programme initiated the Ocean Carbon-Cycle Model Intercomparison Project (OCMIP) in 1995 through the Global Analysis, Interpretation, and Modeling task force. OCMIP is an

international project devoted to improving marine carbon cycle models by comparing them with each other and by evaluating them using observational data sets. Thanks in part to some additional funding provided by the IEA Greenhouse Gas R&D Programme, the European research program on Global Ocean Storage and Anthropogenic Carbon will also look at global scientific aspects of the deep-ocean CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration issue. Specifically, the researchers will compare models of dispersion of CO<sub>2</sub> from seven hypothetical point sources to get a better understanding of sequestration efficiency. The U.S. component of OCMIP (funded by the National Science Foundation and the National Aeronautics and Space

## Formation of CO<sub>2</sub> Hydrates in the Deep Sea



The accompanying photo from the MBARI experiment shows the overflow of liquid CO<sub>2</sub> onto the sea floor.

One suggested strategy for ocean sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> by direct injection is to create a long-lived “CO<sub>2</sub> lake” on the ocean floor. To investigate this concept, a group of scientists at MBARI performed a series of deep ocean experiments for the disposal of fossil fuel CO<sub>2</sub> in the form of solid hydrate (CO<sub>2</sub> 5.75 H<sub>2</sub>O). One recent experiment was carried out with the MBARI remotely operated vehicle (ROV) *Tiburon* off the central California coast. The ROV carried about 9 L of liquid CO<sub>2</sub> to a depth of 3650 m, where the pressure is

~36 MPa and the temperature is 1.6°C. The CO<sub>2</sub> was in a steel accumulator in which a piston continually adjusted to ambient pressure. The CO<sub>2</sub> was expelled by applying pressure on the piston from a water pump powered by vehicle hydraulics. Partly because CO<sub>2</sub> is denser than seawater at this depth, hydrate formation there dramatically differs from that observed at shallower depths.

MBARI scientists observed a rapid increase in the volume of the contained experiments as the CO<sub>2</sub>-water interface rose, causing overflow of the liquid onto the sea floor about 100 min after the experiment started. They attributed this effect to the formation of a hydrate, readily seen as an accumulating mass at the bottom of the containers. This incorporation of large amounts of water in the solid phase resulted in an expansion of system volume by a factor of 4 to 7, causing the remaining liquid CO<sub>2</sub> to spill over. High interfacial tension maintained a strong barrier, preventing the released liquid CO<sub>2</sub> from interacting with the sediments (Brewer et al. 1999).

Administration and involving MIT, Pennsylvania State University, the National Center for Atmospheric Research, Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory, and Princeton University) is positioned to perform the same set of analyses with U.S. models, but no funding is available yet for this activity.

**The CO<sub>2</sub> Ocean Sequestration Project in Japan.** In April 1997, a 5-year national program looking at ocean sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> began in Japan. Annual funding is in excess of \$10 million per year. The lead research institutes for this program are the

Research Institute of Innovative Technology for the Earth and the Kansai Environmental Engineering Center. This project encompasses joint research activities involving national institutes, private companies, and universities. The R&D agenda includes studying the behavior of liquid CO<sub>2</sub> released into the ocean, developing an engineering system for CO<sub>2</sub> injection, assessing the impacts of CO<sub>2</sub> on marine organisms, developing a near-field environmental impact assessment model, predicting the long-term fate of sequestered CO<sub>2</sub>, and participating in the international field experiment (Masuda 1998).

### 3.1.3 Science and Technology Gaps

By comparing our technical capabilities with the technical requirements for developing effective, economical, and environmentally acceptable ocean sequestration technologies, we identified the following gaps:

- Insufficient information is available to optimize an injection strategy. For example, we must obtain answers to these questions:
  - Should dilute CO<sub>2</sub> streams be injected to try to avoid any environmental impacts? Will this strategy affect cost?
  - Should CO<sub>2</sub> streams be injected deep in the ocean to maximize retention time? Will it be worth the extra cost? Will the technical capability to do so be available by 2025?
- On the engineering side, these specific research gaps must be addressed:
  - Develop injection technology. Even though CO<sub>2</sub> can be injected now, we need a technology that is low in cost and maintenance and that can be used at greater ocean depths, if necessary.
  - Experimentally demonstrate the behavior of CO<sub>2</sub> near the injection point. This understanding may lead to injection strategies that can minimize any environmental impacts.
  - Better understand the dynamic response (i.e., kinetic behavior) corresponding to hydrate formation and dissolution. This is a first step in developing strategies that could use hydrate formation to our advantage for sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> (see Chap. 7).
  - Assuming no environmental constraints, develop strategies that maximize the neutralization of the acidified water by deep-ocean calcium carbonate sediments. This approach would have two positive effects: reducing pH changes in the water column and increasing the sequestration capacity of the ocean.
- Develop monitoring technology to observe changes in the ocean's biogeochemical processes and ecosystems.
- Concerning the effectiveness of injection technologies, some specific research gaps can be closed if researchers accomplish the following:
  - Address weaknesses in OGCMs, specifically western boundary currents, ocean bottom currents, and sub-grid scale processes (e.g., eddies); and test the models using natural and, perhaps, experimentally released tracers.
  - Couple near-field with far-field effects of CO<sub>2</sub> injection through a hierarchy of models (or nonuniform grids). Specifically, plume modeling should be coupled with basin- and global-scale ocean circulation models.
- Related to the environmental impacts of direct injection, some specific research gaps can be filled if researchers accomplish the following:
  - Understand the effects of the current oceanic uptake of CO<sub>2</sub>. CO<sub>2</sub> goes into the ocean naturally, even with no enhancement or direct injection. These effects need to be understood.
  - Determine parameters for direct injection of CO<sub>2</sub> that will minimize environmental impacts.
  - Understand the effect of the sustained release of elevated levels of CO<sub>2</sub> on ocean biogeochemistry, ecosystems, and organisms. Are there any other

impacts that are important beyond the lowering of pH?

- Find answers to these questions: Should the injected CO<sub>2</sub> stream be pure (i.e., >99%)? Can ocean ecosystems tolerate other gases such as nitrogen, oxygen, hydrogen, CO, carbon oxysulfide, argon, hydrogen sulfide, NO<sub>x</sub>, SO<sub>2</sub>, and trace metals? To what levels? What effects would these gases have on ocean ecosystems?
- Investigate the impact of CO<sub>2</sub> on bioturbation of sediments. (Bioturbation is the disruption of marine sedimentary structures by the activities of benthic organisms.) Bioturbation makes skeletal calcium carbonate buried in the upper 10 or more centimeters of sediments available for the neutralization reaction of sequestered CO<sub>2</sub>.

### 3.1.4 Research and Development Plan

To close the gaps, these specific line items are recommended for an R&D plan:

- Increase understanding of the behavior of CO<sub>2</sub> released in the ocean through laboratory studies, small-scale field experiments (e.g., the international field experiment and MBARI experiments) as well as near-field modeling efforts.
- Perform laboratory experiments to measure the effects of changes in pH and in CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations on organisms from mid-water and deep-sea habitats.
- Determine the environmental impacts of alternate scenarios (i.e., natural CO<sub>2</sub> uptake by the ocean).
- Improve global/regional modeling to quantify benefits and identify sites.

- Conduct an OGCM intercomparison exercise on point sources of CO<sub>2</sub> in the deep ocean with the goal of answering two questions: How good are the models? How can the models be improved?
- Support measurement programs that can provide validation data, including the results of better analyses of natural tracers.
- Conduct a pilot experiment to determine the feasibility of CO<sub>2</sub> injection, monitor its ecological impact, and characterize its far-field effects by collecting time-series data.
- Integrate the results of the previous efforts into specific injection scenarios (including recommended sites and modes of discharge) that optimize the tradeoffs among cost, environmental impacts, and effectiveness.

## 3.2 ENHANCEMENT OF NATURAL CARBON SEQUESTRATION IN THE OCEAN

The natural process of carbon fixation by phytoplankton (primary production) occurs at a rate of 50 Pg Cy<sup>-1</sup> and results in sequestration of carbon in the deep ocean via the biological pump (see Fig. 3.2). The biological pump involves the gravitational settling, slow remineralization, and burial of biogenic debris formed in the upper levels of the ocean. Phytoplankton in surface waters are rapidly grazed by zooplankton, which in turn may be consumed by larger animals such as fish. While it is estimated that 70–80% of the fixed carbon is recycled in surface waters (Sarmiento 1993), the rest is exported as particulate organic carbon (POC) to the deep ocean, where it is slowly mineralized by bacteria.

Fertilization of the oceans with micronutrients (such as iron) and macronutrients (such as nitrogen and phosphorus) is a strategy that is being considered to enhance drawdown of CO<sub>2</sub> from the atmosphere and thus accelerate the biological pump.

Because certain areas of the ocean have low levels of phytoplankton yet a high concentration of nitrogen and phosphorus, it was realized that a lack of iron might limit phytoplankton growth (see the IRONEX sidebar) (Chisholm 1992). Initial short-term studies of iron fertilization in high-nutrient, low-chlorophyll (HNLC) waters have demonstrated that in situ fertilization of surface waters with iron to promote growth of phytoplankton is feasible at scales of tens of square kilometers (Coale et al. 1996).

Some commercial ventures are trying to capitalize on ocean fertilization for increasing their fish harvest. While

these ventures have a primary goal other than carbon sequestration, the strategies of fertilization and potential for environmental impact are similar, and all activities using fertilization to enhance fish production also claim carbon sequestration as a secondary benefit. For example, Ocean Farming, Inc., has planned a large-scale fertilization of the coastal waters of the Marshall Islands with iron, silicon, and phosphorus to increase the yield of tuna. This enterprise claims carbon sequestration as a secondary goal. Similarly, MARICULT, a European consortium of government and industry, is currently exploring the commercial feasibility of fertilizing coastal waters to increase the fish harvest. These commercial ventures are proceeding even though the potential ecological consequences of ocean fertilization are not yet known. Such consequences could range from changes in species diversity to

### IRONEX: Iron Fertilization Experiments

The equatorial Pacific and Southern Oceans have excess macronutrients, nitrogen and phosphorus, in their surface waters. The late John Martin of Moss Landing Laboratories hypothesized that these nutrients are abundant in these regions because the micronutrient iron is very scarce, thus limiting phytoplankton growth. To test this hypothesis, two unenclosed transient iron fertilization experiments (IRONEX I and II) were conducted in the equatorial Pacific in 1993 and 1995, and a third experiment is being planned for the Southern Ocean. The results from IRONEX II, in which 500 kg iron was added to a 72 km<sup>2</sup> patch of surface water, were particularly dramatic. Quantum yield of photosynthesis increased significantly within 2 hours, nitrogen and phosphorus were drawn down, and chlorophyll concentrations increased 30-fold within a week, approaching levels typical of coastal waters. The species composition of the phytoplankton community shifted dramatically, with larger cells dominating by the end of the experiment. The bloom caused a decrease in the partial pressure of CO<sub>2</sub> in the middle of the patch and a three-fold increase in dimethyl sulfide production, both of which have implications for climate regulation. The duration of the experiment was 18 days—not long enough for significant changes at higher trophic levels—and the bloom dissipated shortly after the last injection of iron. It is not at all clear how sustained fertilization would affect ecosystem structure, export of carbon to the deep sea, and fluxes of greenhouse gases. These effects cannot be predicted from a transient experiment, so longer-term fertilization experiments are needed.

induction of anoxia and significant adverse effects on community structure and function. The fundamental question that should be answered is whether any alterations in the ocean ecosystem are justified relative to the benefits to society.

### 3.2.1 Science and Technology Requirements

An urgent need exists to determine the potential ecological consequences of large-scale ocean fertilization on the biosphere and on biogeochemical cycling. We need to be able to predict accurately how ecosystems will change in response to either short-term or sustained fertilization of the oceans. We also need to understand overall natural carbon sequestration efficiency in the oceans. Moreover, the feasibility of ocean fertilization will depend on optimization of fertilizer design, delivery, and ecological monitoring. Long-term ecological monitoring may prove extremely costly, so robust, dynamic models that predict ecosystem response will be the key to designing an economical and effective monitoring strategy.

### 3.2.2 Current Science and Technology Capabilities

Small-scale ocean fertilization is feasible from both an engineering and an economic perspective. The technology for fertilizing surface waters is fairly straightforward; it involves releasing microalgal nutrients such as iron, phosphorus, or nitrogen from platforms such as boats or airplanes. Recent iron fertilization experiments (IRONEX I and II) demonstrated that a deficiency of iron limits primary production (photosynthesis) in HNLC areas of the ocean where nitrogen and phosphorus are abundant (see the IRONEX

sidebar). The application of 500 kg of iron to 72 km<sup>2</sup> in the equatorial Pacific resulted in a 30-fold increase in phytoplankton biomass, a dramatic shift in species composition and elevated carbon fixation rates.

A number of technologies are available for monitoring ecosystem response to fertilization (or deliberate CO<sub>2</sub> injection), including assays for primary and secondary production using radiotracer techniques. Determining ecosystem response below the euphotic zone (the zone where the net rate of photosynthesis is positive) could use in situ filtration techniques that determine size distributions and chemistry of POC with minimal disturbance to the samples (Bishop et al. 1987; Bishop 1999) (see Fig. 3.5). To verify the effectiveness of sequestration, an ocean carbon inventory survey will use improved technologies to characterize the dissolved and particulate organic and inorganic carbon pools, rates of



**Fig. 3.5. The multiple unit large-volume in situ filtration system (MULVFS) allows the precise determination of properties of particulate matter that is needed for a systematic survey of ocean carbon inventory and for the evaluation of ecosystem function.** MULVFS samples are large enough to meet the diverse needs of multiple research groups.

transfer between carbon pools, and ecosystem function. More efficient shipboard sampling technologies for many key parameters have been developed or are under development. A growing suite of autonomously operating carbon and nutrient sensors is under development for deployment on moored, floating, or autonomous profiling platforms. The use of optical approaches for remote sensing of water column primary productivity and carbon biomass is rapidly progressing.

To simulate the effectiveness of ocean fertilization as a CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration strategy, two challenges must be met. First, we must be able to predict the change in biological carbon export from the surface ocean to the deep ocean as a result of ocean fertilization. Second, we must be able to predict the fate of this carbon after it reaches the deep ocean.

The problem of predicting changes in carbon export from the surface ocean resulting from fertilization is a difficult one, because it depends on hard-to-predict changes in ecosystem structure. Surface ocean biology models have simulated biological carbon export at specific locations reasonably well, but these models have generally been “tuned” to match some observations at these locations. Work is under way to try to develop a single model that can be applied across the global ocean to predict carbon export from physical and nutrient conditions alone. Although much progress has been made in this area, this goal has not yet been attained. It will be important to monitor closely any ocean fertilization experiments to develop solid data sets for use in evaluating ocean biology and ecosystem models.

Predicting the fate of biogenic carbon after it is transported to the deep ocean

is also a thorny problem. An important component of this prediction is the estimation of the depth at which the organic carbon will be oxidized, and this depth will depend on whether the organic carbon is particulate or dissolved, the size of the particles, and other factors. Once the organic carbon has oxidized in the deep ocean, the problem is largely equivalent to the deep-ocean CO<sub>2</sub> injection problem—predicting ocean transport, CO<sub>2</sub> degassing (returning to the atmosphere), and sediment interactions. Several simulations of this aspect of the problem have already been made using assumptions about the change in ocean biological carbon export and the depth of its oxidation. These studies have concluded that the effectiveness of ocean fertilization as a CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration strategy is very sensitive to the rate of ocean mixing between the ocean’s surface layers and its deep layers. If carbon in the deep layers is brought to the surface through mixing, then it could return to the atmosphere through degassing.

### 3.2.3 Science and Technology Gaps

A number of critical gaps exist in our understanding of ocean fertilization as a strategy for enhanced carbon sequestration.

- The impact of long-term ocean fertilization on the structure and function of marine ecosystems is unknown. Changes in phytoplankton structure are an inevitable consequence of fertilization, and this would lead to changes in ocean food web structure and dynamics. Such changes could have long-term (both positive and negative) impacts on fisheries, many of which are already declining primarily because of over-fishing. Fertilization with iron

and phosphorus in lake ecosystems selects for the growth of cyanobacteria over other types of phytoplankton; this proliferation could be a problem because certain species of cyanobacteria produce powerful toxins. While common marine cyanobacteria are non-toxic, further study is needed.

- The impact of sustained fertilization on the natural biogeochemical cycles in the ocean is completely unknown. The biogeochemical cycles of carbon, nitrogen, phosphorus, silicon, sulfur, cobalt, zinc, and perhaps selenium in marine environments are highly complex and intertwined, and recent evidence suggests that they are regulated by the availability of iron on a global scale. A perturbation of one elemental cycle can have repercussions that are unanticipated.
- The potential risk of fertilization leading to eutrophication must be determined. Eutrophication causes oxygen depletion, which could kill species that require oxygen; in some cases, it can lead to the production of methane by microorganisms. On the other hand, lack of oxygen in the sediments of the ocean floor could lead to an increase in the preservation of buried carbon due to slow rates of mineralization. The impact of fertilization on sediment-dwelling (benthic) organisms is unknown.
- At present, we do not have a good understanding of the effectiveness of ocean fertilization at a large scale. Will enhanced carbon fixation in surface waters result in an increase in carbon sequestered in the deep ocean? Some preliminary modeling work has been done, but these models are

based on simplified biological assumptions and have not been validated against real-world data.

### 3.2.4 Research and Development Plan

Sustained longer-term fertilization experiments are vitally important to assess the ecological consequences of in situ fertilization. Such experiments will also yield information that is vital to understanding the mechanisms that have triggered past climate changes such as glacial-interglacial transitions. We need to know how marine food webs change in response to nutrient enrichment. At a minimum, such research should seek to accomplish the following:

- Increase understanding of the existing “biological pump” and identify the nutrients (and micronutrients Fe, Zn, Co) that regulate it on a global scale. Naturally occurring fertilization by upwelling, wind-driven dust deposition, or iron-rich coastal runoff may provide insights into the role of nutrients in ocean sequestration of carbon.
- Determine to what extent increased primary production in surface waters enhances the biological pumping of carbon to deeper waters. This determination will require an inventory of ocean carbon, including export of POC and particulate inorganic carbon to the deep sea and the mineralization (oxidation) or dissolution of all carbon at depth. Development of technologies for autonomous determination of all forms of carbon is needed.
- Determine the impact of sequestration on biogeochemical cycling. For example, if carbon is sequestered, the available nitrogen

and phosphorus in surface waters will be reduced. How long will it take for natural nitrogen and phosphorus to be replenished to support ongoing primary production?

- Determine the relationship between iron and nitrogen fixation. Would fertilization with iron and phosphorus in the ocean cause cyanobacterial blooms that would increase the oceans' nitrogen inventory? Would an increase in nitrogen lead to an increase in carbon export?
- Monitor the effects of fertilization on phytoplankton community structure and trophic dynamics. Can nutrient ratios be "designed" to increase productivity without changing the community structure, thus minimizing environmental impacts?
- Validate models of sustained fertilization with improved biological parameterization. We need to couple physical, chemical, and biological models to predict the effectiveness of ocean sequestration. We especially need to know how long anthropogenic carbon will remain sequestered in the ocean.

### 3.3 LONGER-TERM, INNOVATIVE CONCEPTS FOR OCEAN CO<sub>2</sub> SEQUESTRATION

Whereas most of the research in ocean CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration has been in the areas of deep-sea CO<sub>2</sub> injection and ocean fertilization, both of these concepts are less than 25 years old, and a plan written 25 years ago might have missed these strategies.

Therefore, we should encourage the development of innovative concepts for sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> in the oceans that may be the basis for advanced

technologies in the coming years and decades. A few concepts are described below for illustrative purposes only—at present we do not have enough information to judge their feasibility.

- **Converting concentrated CO<sub>2</sub> at a power plant to relatively strong carbonic acid, using the acid to dissolve carbonate minerals, and then releasing the dissolved carbonate and dissolved fossil-fuel CO<sub>2</sub> into the ocean.** This technique would greatly enhance ocean storage capacity and would eliminate concerns about changes in pH because the dissolved carbonate mineral would neutralize much of the acidity of the carbonic acid. This approach would greatly diminish eventual degassing back to the atmosphere, circumventing the need for pumping CO<sub>2</sub> to great distances and depths. Limitations of the concept include the need for large amounts of water and the need to transport more carbonate mineral than coal to the power plant.
- **Burial of organic carbon in the ocean.** Organic waste could be stored as a thick layer on the ocean bottom. Sources of this organic carbon could include farm waste, carbon-black from decarbonized fuel, or organic-rich dredged sediments. Biomass from fast-growing sea grasses, kelp forests, or terrestrial plants could be harvested for burial in the ocean. Transportation of large volumes of biomass to the ocean depths, however, may prove too costly. Moreover, anoxia and the production of methane may present a serious problem with this approach.

- **Mining hydroxides and bicarbonates (e.g., sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium bicarbonate) and dissolving them in the ocean.** These minerals, when dissolved, will neutralize the acidity produced by anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> and will effectively sequester that CO<sub>2</sub> in the oceans. The limited availability of these materials in nature may preclude this approach.

### 3.4 CONCLUSION

Because the ocean already is a large repository for carbon on the planet, it is not unreasonable to consider direct injection of CO<sub>2</sub> or enhancement of CO<sub>2</sub> fixation through fertilization as possible options for carbon sequestration. Technologies exist for direct injection of CO<sub>2</sub> at depth and for fertilization of the oceans with microalgal nutrients. However, we lack sufficient knowledge of the consequences of ocean sequestration on the biosphere and on natural biogeochemical cycling. Such knowledge is critical to responsible use of oceans as a carbon sequestration option. Long-

term studies on the impact of ocean sequestration on ecosystem dynamics and global biogeochemical cycling are needed (Fig. 3.6). The ocean plays an important role in sustaining the biosphere, so any change in ocean ecosystem function must be viewed with extreme caution.

Public perception of ocean sequestration will undoubtedly be an issue for its broader acceptability. Much of the public, as well as ocean advocacy groups, believe that the oceans must remain as pristine as possible. The fisheries industry will also be concerned about possible economic impacts resulting from ocean sequestration activities. Legal issues will undoubtedly be complicated. With the exception of the coastal economic zones, the ocean is international in domain and is protected by international treaties or agreements such as MARPOL or the Law of the Sea. Ultimately, both scientific understanding and public acceptability will determine whether ocean sequestration of carbon is a viable option.

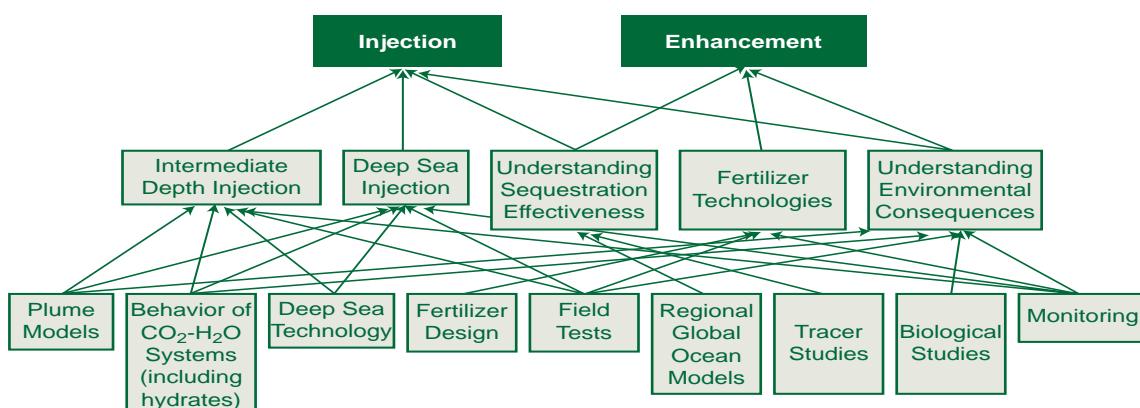


Fig. 3.6. R&D road map for ocean sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>.

### 3.5 ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors express their appreciation to the following reviewers:

Makoto Akai  
Edith Allison  
Kenneth Coale  
Thomas Grahame  
Richard Jahnke  
Shigeo Masuda  
Rolf Mehlhorn  
Dwain Spencer  
Gilbert Stegen  
Robert Warzinski  
C. S. Wong

### 3.6 REFERENCES

Adams, E., M. Akai, L. Gomen, P. Haugan, H. Herzog, S. Masuda, S. Masutani, T. Ohsumi, and C. S. Wong 1998. "An International Experiment on CO<sub>2</sub> Ocean Sequestration," presented at the Fourth International Conference on Greenhouse Gas Control Technologies, Interlaken, Switzerland, August 30–September 2, 1998.

Archer, D. 1996. "An Atlas of the Distribution of Calcium Carbonate in Sediments of the Deep Sea," *Global Biogeochemical Cycles* 10:159–174

Bishop, J. K. B. 1999. "Transmissometer Measurement of POC," *Deep-Sea Research I* 46 (2):355–71.

Bishop, J. K. B., J. C. Stepien, and P. H. Wiebe 1987. "Particulate Matter Distributions, Chemistry and Flux in the Panama Basin Response to Environmental Forcing," *Progress in Oceanography* 17:1–59.

Brewer, P. G., G. Friederich, E. T. Peltzer, and F. M. Orr, Jr. 1999. "Direct Experiments on the Ocean Disposal of Fossil Fuel CO<sub>2</sub>," *Science* 284, 943–5.

Chisholm, S. W. 1992. "What Limits Phytoplankton Growth?" *Oceanus* 35 (3):36–46.

Coale, K. H., et al. 1996. "A Massive Phytoplankton Bloom Induced by an Ecosystem-scale Iron Fertilization Experiment in the Equatorial Pacific Ocean," *Nature* 383:495–501.

Herzog, H. 1998. "Ocean Sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>: An Overview," presented at the Fourth International Conference on Greenhouse Gas Control Technologies, Interlaken, Switzerland, August 30–September 2, 1998.

IPCC (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change) 1996. *Climate Change 1995: The Science of Climate Change*, J. T. Houghton, L. G. Meira Filho, B. A. Callander, N. Harris, A. Kattenberg, and K. Maskell, eds., Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Masuda S. 1998. "The CO<sub>2</sub> Ocean Sequestration Project in Japan," presented at the Fourth International Conference on Greenhouse Gas Control Technologies, Interlaken, Switzerland, August 30–September 2, 1998.

Sarmiento, J. L. 1993. "Ocean Carbon Cycle," *C&E News*, 71 (May 31):30–43.

Sarmiento, J. L., and M. Bender 1994. "Carbon Biogeochemistry and Climate Change," *Photosynthesis Research* 39:209–34.

Takahashi, T., W. S. Broecker, and A. E. Bainbridge 1981. "The Alkalinity and Total Carbon Dioxide Concentration in the World Oceans," in *Carbon Cycle Modelling*, SCOPE, Vol. 16, B. Bolind, ed., J. Wiley & Sons, New York, pp. 271–86.

# Vision

*Research and development accomplishments by the year 2025 will lead to an ability to understand, predict, assess, measure, and implement substantially increased sequestration of carbon in soil and vegetation systems.*

## 4 CARBON SEQUESTRATION IN TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEMS

This chapter addresses the scope of the potential for sequestering carbon in the terrestrial biosphere. The aim of developing enhanced carbon sequestration in the biosphere is to enable a rapid gain in withdrawal of CO<sub>2</sub> from the atmosphere over the next 50 years in order to allow time for implementation of other technological advances that will help mitigate CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

Carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems is either the net removal of CO<sub>2</sub> from the atmosphere or the prevention of CO<sub>2</sub> net emissions from terrestrial ecosystems into the atmosphere. Carbon sequestration may be accomplished by increasing photosynthetic carbon fixation, reducing decomposition of organic matter, reversing land use changes that contribute to global emissions, and creating energy offsets through the use of biomass for fuels or beneficial products. The latter two methods may be viewed more appropriately as carbon management strategies. However, because of the need to integrate R&D issues related to ecosystem dynamics, we include information on these but focus primarily on sequestration.

The terrestrial biosphere is estimated to sequester large amounts of carbon (~2 GtC/year). Our vision is that we will increase this rate while properly considering all the ecological, social, and economic implications. There are two fundamental approaches to sequestering carbon in terrestrial ecosystems: (1) protection of ecosystems that store carbon so that sequestration can be maintained or increased and (2) manipulation of ecosystems to increase carbon sequestration beyond current conditions. We emphasize manipulative strategies and the R&D necessary to understand, measure, implement, and assess these strategies.

### Soil—The Earth's Living Membrane

Soil, which has been described as a living membrane between bedrock and the atmosphere (CNIE 1998), is actually a diverse ecosystem containing microorganisms and many types of invertebrates and vertebrates as residents. Soils are critical to plant production, but they also are essential for carbon sequestration (soils currently contain ~75% of the terrestrial carbon). Soils in which high levels of carbon are present as soil organic matter (SOM) exhibit improved nutrient absorption, water retention, texture, and resistance to erosion, making them particularly useful for both plant productivity and sequestration. R&D is needed to better manage soils to increase carbon sequestration.

Storage of carbon in belowground systems is the best long-term option for carbon storage in terrestrial systems because most SOM has a longer residence time than most plant biomass. SOM is a complex mixture of compounds with different residence times. The more stable compounds are the most important for carbon sequestration because they have turnover times of hundreds to thousands of years. R&D can determine ways to increase the presence of the most stable compounds in SOM.

Prevention of erosion can be a major contributor to carbon sequestration. The Food and Agricultural Organization (FAO 1992) estimates that 25 billion tons of soils are lost through erosion each year. The Committee for the National Institute for the Environment (CNIE 1998) provides a dramatic description for this lost soil: "If dropped on Washington, D.C., this amount of soil would cover the city under more than 100 meters, burying the Capitol dome." If this soil contained an average of 4% soil organic carbon, that would be equivalent to emissions of roughly 1 GtC/year (CNIE 1998). Even though erosion cannot be completely prevented, research may identify possible strategies to enhance the capture and longevity of SOM released by erosion and transported by rivers into wetlands and coastal areas.

Land-use management and agricultural practices have great potential to sequester carbon by protecting soils. About one-third of the current 1.5 billion tonnes of carbon emitted to the atmosphere because of changes in tropical land use is from oxidation of soil carbon. It is estimated that 40 to 60 billion tonnes of carbon may have been lost from soils as the result of forest clearing and cultivation since the great agricultural expansions of the 1800s. When land is converted from natural perennial vegetation and cultivated, SOM generally declines by 50% in the top 20 cm of soil and 20 to 30% in the top meter of soil. Because less organic matter is introduced to the soil and because soil aggregates are destroyed (causing the loss of physical protection mechanisms that trap soil carbon), SOM declines significantly. In addition, cultivated soil is exposed to the air, so, during decomposition by soil organisms, the SOM is oxidized and the carbon carried off as CO<sub>2</sub>. With good management to protect soils and the development of methods to improve texture of soils so they trap more carbon, it may be possible to exceed the original native SOM content of many soils.

In this chapter, we review the inventories of carbon in terrestrial ecosystems and the roles of the biosphere in the global sequestration process and then estimate the potential for carbon sequestration in each of them (Sects. 4.1 and 4.2). We next

summarize the current capabilities in carbon sequestration (Sect. 4.3). The gap between the potential for carbon sequestration and the current capabilities establishes the drivers for R&D needs. Section 4.4 begins the actual road map. It starts at the system

level with our vision for carbon sequestration in the terrestrial ecosystem. From this, we establish three objectives (Sect. 4.4.1) and then propose strategies that will help in meeting those objectives (Sect. 4.4.2). The final leg of the road map is to identify the R&D that is required to realize the strategies (Sect. 4.4.3).

The world's terrestrial environment comprises a wide diversity of ecosystem types that can be categorized into several biomes to address unique aspects of their carbon sequestration potential. A single, realistic set of R&D needs covering all issues in these highly variable systems cannot be stated. Therefore, we developed a primary set of R&D needs that represent cross-cutting topics. These R&D needs, which are broadly applicable to several of the major ecosystems, are discussed in the main body of this chapter. Appendix B contains information specific to each of the ecosystems.

#### 4.1 TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEMS: NATURAL BIOLOGICAL SCRUBBERS

The total amount of carbon "stored" in terrestrial ecosystems is large ( $\sim 2000 \pm 500$  GtC). Table 4.1 shows estimates of the distribution of this carbon among the major ecosystems of the world. Carbon sequestration in these terrestrial ecosystems will be enhanced by increasing the amounts of carbon stored in living plant matter, roots, and soil carbon (inorganic and organic) and in long-lived materials that contain woody matter, or by processing wood into long-lived carbon products. Net removal of CO<sub>2</sub> from the atmosphere by terrestrial ecosystems ( $\sim 2$  GtC/year) occurs when plant photosynthesis exceeds all processes of

#### Multiple Benefits of Terrestrial Sequestration of Carbon

Increasing the storage of carbon in vegetation and soils could offer significant accompanying benefits: improved soil and water quality, decreased nutrient loss, reduced soil erosion, better wildlife habitats, increased water conservation, and more biomass products. Restoring wetlands to sequester larger quantities of carbon in sediment will also preserve wildlife and protect estuaries. Understanding how to increase soil carbon stocks in agricultural lands is critical to increasing sustainability of food production. Finally, creating conditions for higher plant productivity and accumulation of soil carbon to increase carbon sequestration will have the side benefit of restoring degraded ecosystems worldwide.

Increases in soil carbon sequestration alone can provide significant benefits by delaying the need for more technically complex solutions. Edmonds et al. (1996, 1997) estimated that, for agricultural soil carbon only, 35 years of time might be "bought" (potentially saving at least \$100 million) before major adjustments in the world's energy production system would be required to meet a goal of 550 ppmv atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>. As a result, over the next quarter century, other carbon management options could be evaluated and implemented.

consumption and respiration, resulting in above-ground plant growth and increases in root and microbial biomass in the soil. Plant matter is consumed when it is eaten, dead or alive, by an animal. In addition, plants return stored carbon to the atmosphere through respiration, as do animals

**Table 4.1. Global estimates of land area, net primary productivity (NPP), and carbon stocks in plant matter and soil for ecosystems of the world**

Ecosystem	Area (10 <sup>12</sup> m <sup>2</sup> )	NPP (gC/m <sup>2</sup> /year)	NPP (Pg C/year)	Plant C (g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Plant C (Pg)	Soil C <sup>a</sup> (g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Soil (Pg)	Total (Pg)
Forest, tropical	14.8	925	13.7	16500	244.2	8300	123	367
Forest, temperate and plantation	7.5	670	5.0	12270	92.0	12000	90	182
Forest, boreal	9.0	355	3.2	2445	22.0	15000	135	157
Woodland, temperate	2.0	700	1.4	8000	16.0	12000	24	40
Chaparral	2.5	360	0.9	3200	8.0	12000	30	38
Savanna, tropical	22.5	790	17.8	2930	65.9	11700	263	329
Grassland, temperate	12.5	350	4.4	720	9.0	23600	295	304
Tundra, arctic and alpine	9.5	105	1.0	630	6.0	12750	121	127
Desert and semi-desert, scrub	21.0	67	1.4	330	6.9	8000	168	175
Desert, extreme	9.0	11	0.1	35	0.3	2500	23	23
Perpetual ice	15.5	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0	0
Lake and stream	2.0	200	0.4	10	0.0	0	0	0
Wetland	2.8	1180	3.3	4300	12.0	72000	202	214
Peatland, northern	3.4	0	0.0	0	0.0	133800	455	455
Cultivated and permanent crop	14.8	425	6.3	200	3.0	7900	117	120
Human area	2.0	100	0.2	500	1.0	5000	10	11
<b>Total</b>	<b>150.8</b>		<b>59.1</b>		<b>486.4</b>		<b>2056</b>	<b>2542</b>

<sup>a</sup>Soil C values are for the top 1 m of soil only, except for peatlands, in which case they account for the total depth of peat.

Source: Amthor et al. 1998.

through their waste or death and decay. When a plant sheds leaves and roots die, this organic material decays, adding carbon to the soil. Soil carbon is lost to the atmosphere through decomposition by soil organisms (e.g., fungi and bacteria). This process also mineralizes organic matter, making available the nutrients needed for plant growth. The total amount of carbon stored in an ecosystem reflects the long-term balance between plant production (inputs) and all respiration and decomposition (losses).

Biological transformation of carbon has been, and quite likely will continue to be, a primary mechanism for removing CO<sub>2</sub> from the atmosphere. This is reflected in the standing stock of vegetation and the accumulation of soil organic matter. Methods that rely on biological transformation can play a central role in the management of carbon sequestration in the future. This biospheric carbon sequestration is essentially a huge natural biological scrubber for all emission sources (e.g., fossil fuel plants, cement plants, automobiles). The estimated value of 2 GtC/year removed from the atmosphere each year by the earth's mantle of vegetation is the net ecosystem production. This value is uncertain because it is an estimated difference between photosynthesis and respiration—both very large fluxes and highly uncertain (Chap. 1). We can “observe” the contemporary, worldwide *net difference* between global carbon uptake by photosynthesis (P) and releases by respiration (R) through measuring annual changes in atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> and accounting for oceanic carbon dynamics. However, we cannot use this information to assess how the biosphere will regulate atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> in the future. This is because the P:R ratio is highly sensitive to environmental variables

such as temperature, moisture, and nutrient availability and differs among ecosystems. If atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> increases enough to cause climate change, the global P:R ratio may change in ways that we cannot now predict accurately. Small changes in these large numbers could dwarf any carbon management strategy imposed by humans.

## 4.2 POTENTIAL FOR CARBON SEQUESTRATION

The biomes that make up the terrestrial ecosystem are categorized in Table 4.2. The estimates of potential carbon sequestration include the current natural rate of carbon sequestration, which totals about 2 GtC/year. Note that achieving the potential indicated in the table, particularly the higher numbers, may imply an intensive management and/or manipulation of a significant fraction of the globe's biomes. The table also does not reflect estimates of economic, energy, social, or environmental costs to achieve such a rate, which could be unacceptably large for higher numbers. The values in Table 4.2 are large and exceed most other estimates. It is important to remember that these assume R&D advances will occur to allow us to optimize carbon sequestration beyond what is thought to be achievable with current best management practices.

Estimating the potential for increasing carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems is difficult because the biogeochemical dynamics that control the flow of carbon among plants, soils, and the atmosphere are poorly understood. Additionally, there will be socioeconomic issues, energy costs (such as possible hydrocarbon feedstock for fertilizers), and potential ecological consequences that would

**Table 4.2. The categorization of biomes used in this road-mapping exercise**

Global potential carbon sequestration rates were estimated that might be sustained over a period of 25 to 50 years

Biomes	Potential CS (GtC/year) <sup>a</sup>
Agricultural lands	0.85-0.90 <sup>b</sup>
Biomass croplands	0.5-0.8 <sup>c</sup>
Grasslands	0.5 <sup>d</sup>
Rangelands	1.2 <sup>e</sup>
Forests	1-3 <sup>f</sup>
Urban forest and grasslands	<sup>g</sup>
Deserts and degraded lands	0.8-1.3 <sup>h</sup>
Terrestrial sediments	0.7-1.7 <sup>i</sup>
Boreal peatlands and other wetlands	0.1-0.7 <sup>j</sup>
<b>Total</b>	<b>5.65-10.1</b>

**Assumptions**

<sup>a</sup>R&D allows improvements in carbon sequestration implementation; no reallocation of land use from Table 4.1 except for 10-15% of agricultural land to biomass crop lands. The totals include the current natural rates.

<sup>b</sup>Soil carbon only; recovery of an amount equivalent to what was lost from native soils prior to agricultural use; implementation of best available management (e.g., no-till, intensified production and residue inputs, intensified rotations with crop rotation, double cropping, greater use of perennials) and new technologies such as discussed in the chapter with some CO<sub>2</sub> fertilization.

<sup>c</sup>An average annual aboveground productivity level of 13.2 Mgdw/ha/year (6t/ac). Belowground storage of carbon is 1.75 MgC/ha/year and is assumed to be "permanent" and not to provide any negative feedback on further storage. Short rotation woody crop and perennial grass production are assumed to provide equivalent carbon storage benefits. The energetic costs of producing and harvesting switchgrass result in a biomass energy return ratio (energy in harvested biomass divided by production energy costs) of 12.3 and an energy gain of 343% for ethanol production. The carbon gain from substitution of ethanol for gasoline (2.48 MgC/ha/year) after subtracting carbon costs of production (0.60 MgC/ha/year) and adding an average belowground sequestration rate of 1.75 MgC/ha/year provides an annual carbon savings of (2.48 + 1.75 - 0.60) = 3.60 MgC/ha/year. Trees and grasses are assumed to be equally efficient at net carbon production and sequestration, and it is assumed that production of ethanol and electricity provide equivalent net benefits in terms of carbon savings. A conversion of 10% of current crop to biomass crops for energy represents a realistic target; under more favorable conditions a 15% conversion might be achievable on a world basis.

<sup>d</sup>Intensification of management with fertilization, controlled grazing, and species improvements; 25% increase in belowground carbon stocks; linear increases through 2050.

<sup>e</sup>Total increase of 27 GtC through 2050; rehabilitation of degraded rangeland and fertilization by increasing CO<sub>2</sub>.

<sup>f</sup>Watson et al. (1996) estimate 1-1.6 GtC/year (their Table 14) and include above- and belowground vegetation, soil carbon, and litter. Their estimate does not include R&D to increase carbon sequestration. Trexler (1998) suggests a rate of 2 GtC/year may be plausible. With focused R&D, both these values may be exceeded.

<sup>g</sup>No estimate available.

<sup>h</sup>From Table 23 of Lal, Hassan, and Dumanski (1998). Soil carbon emphasis; erosion, desertification, and global warming effects are controlled; includes restoration of lands; reclamation of salt-affected soils; agricultural intensification on nondegraded lands (~0.015 GtC/year); and fossil fuel carbon offset of ~0.2 GtCg/year; includes accretion of inorganic carbonates.

<sup>i</sup>Estimate from Stallard (1998), which is for current sequestration, increased by 15% to account for benefits from R&D on approaches to better sequester carbon in sediments. We do not imply increasing erosion, but better management of existing and future sediments. Although they are not truly an ecosystem, we categorize sediments because of the large potential to store carbon and the recent acknowledgement that they may be a key part of the carbon inventory.

<sup>j</sup>Assumes the impact of recent global warming on net carbon balance can be reversed (Oechel et al. 1993) and the future warming can be controlled (Goulden et al. 1998); sequestration of plant carbon will be increased by management of soil carbon and perhaps limited conversion to forest or grassland vegetation where ecologically acceptable.

need to be compared with the benefits of sequestration or other carbon management options. However, the upper limit on terrestrial sequestration could be large should extraordinary measures be needed at some time in the future.

Using the estimated distribution of carbon stored in the major ecosystems of the world (Table 4.1), we projected possible rates of carbon sequestration, assuming advances from R&D and a global emphasis on carbon sequestration. These are presented for each of the nine biomes in Table 4.2. Although land-use changes, such as growing new forests and decreasing deforestation, have great potential to mitigate increasing carbon emissions, the carbon sequestration potential for such optimization across global systems requires a more comprehensive and systematic analysis than was possible during this effort. The major land-use change incorporated into the present analysis was an assumption that the results of R&D would allow 10 to 15% of agricultural crop land to be converted to biomass energy crop production. The estimate for deserts and degraded lands also contains several assumptions with respect to land-use change (Lal, Hassan, and Dumanski 1998). With the caveat of the assumptions noted above, and in Table 4.2, it is possible that ~5 to 10 GtC/year could be sequestered globally when all ecosystems are considered, compared with current rates of ~2 GtC/year. One of the key research questions is how long these rates of carbon sequestration in these biomes could be maintained. Also, there clearly will be some maximum capacity for sequestration, but that capacity is far from certain. Refining such estimates should be one of the R&D tasks undertaken. In refining

estimates of sequestration potential, one could envision a two-dimensional matrix of “intensity of carbon sequestration effect” plotted against “management intensity.” With this approach, many ecosystems would be represented more than once. For example, protection of wetlands would be low-management-intensity and high-potential, while creation of new wetlands would be high-management-intensity and high-potential.

Although perhaps surprisingly large, these relatively high ranges of potential carbon sequestration may not be unreasonable. For example, a 5% increase in the total carbon contained in global terrestrial ecosystems over a 25-year period would sequester >100 GtC. Sequestering 100 GtC over 25 years requires increasing the rate of carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems (~2000 GtC) by an average of only 0.2% per year—roughly half what our provocative estimates project as possible.

Strategies for sequestration a few decades from now will be implemented in a world different from today's. Human responses to climatic change and other environmental issues, population growth, economic development, and technological change may well lead to changes in patterns of land use, settlement, and resource management. It seems unlikely that carbon sequestration will be the highest-priority use for any land; instead, sequestration will have to be compatible with a host of other demands on ecosystem goods and services.

There are some limitations and uncertainties related to carbon sequestration potential in terrestrial ecosystems. First, it is critical at the outset to take a whole ecosystem

approach. Having the capability to assess potential impacts on a particular ecosystem from an emphasis on sequestering carbon is a major need. For example, the dynamics of carbon storage and allocation are at present not well known under temperature, moisture, and nutrient conditions of a changing climate. Second, carbon sequestration strategies may have consequences beyond simply increasing carbon storage. Increasing organic matter in wetlands could result in higher emissions of methane, a greenhouse gas with a 20 times higher contribution to global warming than CO<sub>2</sub>, although hydrologic controls or increases in the fraction of recalcitrant organic matter could offset this process. Converting croplands to grasslands may increase emissions of nitrous oxide (N<sub>2</sub>O), another greenhouse gas, to the atmosphere (Marland et al. 1998).

Third, land use and sequestration actions also could alter the flow of micronutrients. For example, as a result of controls on erosion, might the fluxes of phosphorous and nitrate in aquatic systems increase or decrease to levels that cause ecological impacts? Strategies to "improve" carbon sequestration in deserts through increases in drought-tolerant vegetation could lead to decreased fluxes of wind-blown nutrients such as iron, with possible adverse impacts on the ability of the ocean to sequester carbon through iron-fertilized phytoplankton (Chap. 3). Thus research should support the development of effective yet flexible strategies for carbon sequestration and seek understanding of the interplay of these strategies with other human activities and goals.

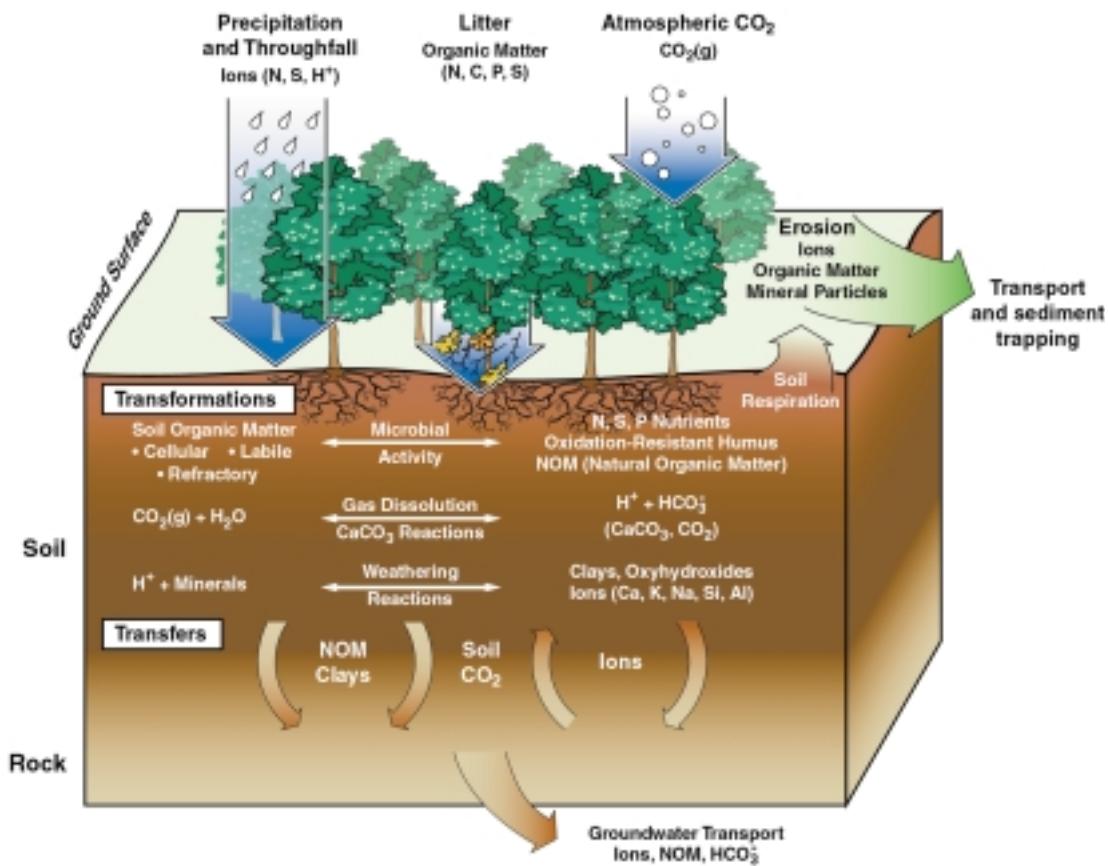
### 4.3 CURRENT CAPABILITIES

Historically, little emphasis was given to developing strategies for carbon sequestration. Rather, other priorities and practices actually promoted carbon release. For example, in the United States, 50% of the original wetlands have been lost. Fortunately, the trend now is to protect or even increase wetland acreage to preserve ecosystems and maintain biodiversity. Globally, losses of wetlands are not well documented but probably are as great as they are in the United States on a percentage basis. Changes in forest stocks and land clearing are continuing throughout most of the world.

Implementation of no-till practices, return of residues to soil, and the activities of the Conservation Reserve Program are increasing the amount of carbon in agricultural systems. (The main reason: the soil is less exposed to air, so less soil carbon is oxidized and carried off as CO<sub>2</sub>.) Estimates suggest that the potential for soil carbon sequestration may be 8 to 10 teragrams per year (Tg/year, or 10<sup>12</sup> g/year), offsetting a third of the 28 TgC/year of fossil carbon emissions from agricultural production (Lal et al. 1995; Lal, Kimble, and Follett et al. 1998). The concomitant increase in below-ground carbon can be substantial; there is some evidence that levels of soil organic carbon have doubled over the past 20 years in the upper 18 cm of soil placed in the Conservation Reserve Program (Gutknecht 1998).

The cutting of forests of eastern North America in the previous century is now being replaced by forest regrowth, and North America might even be a sink for carbon at this time (Fan 1998). Forests in the United States are being

### Soil Processes that Influence Carbon Fate and Transport



The dynamics of carbon transformations and transport in soil are complex and can result in either carbon sequestration or even increased emissions of CO<sub>2</sub>. Bicarbonate (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>) ions dissolved in water could be sequestered if the dissolved carbonate enters a deep groundwater system that has a residence time of hundreds to thousands of years. Natural organic matter is another type of soil carbon that could be transported to deep groundwater systems. Natural organic matter can be mobilized during intense precipitation following prolonged dry periods, based on observations at Walker Branch Watershed in Oak Ridge. This carbon-rich material may be sequestered if it is transported to deeper groundwater systems or deposited deeper in soil. Thus there may be opportunities to encourage geohydrologic systems to promote the deep transport of carbon into groundwater systems.

managed to maintain cover, increase water storage, and retain litter. Globally, however, there are still major challenges to slowing the rate of deforestation. The challenge is to reverse deforestation to gain 1.4 GtC/year and go beyond that to perhaps >2 GtC/year. Trexler (1998) and Sohngen et al. (1998) summarize modeling studies that suggest forests could sequester from 200 to 500 GtC by 2090.

Although the use of biomass as an alternative fuel supply is not implemented yet on a large scale, the R&D program is succeeding in showing the promise of this renewable energy technology. Perhaps sequestration of 0.5 to 0.8 GtC/year from crop-to-biofuel conversion could be achieved by converting 10 to 15% of agricultural cropland to energy crops. It is important to point out that the use of biomass products can have additional benefits beyond sequestration in carbon management. For example, they may replace a product that is energy-intensive to manufacture (e.g., cotton can replace fiberglass as insulation), or they may be more energy-efficient in performance (e.g., plastic car panels manufactured from biomass feedstock are lighter than steel).

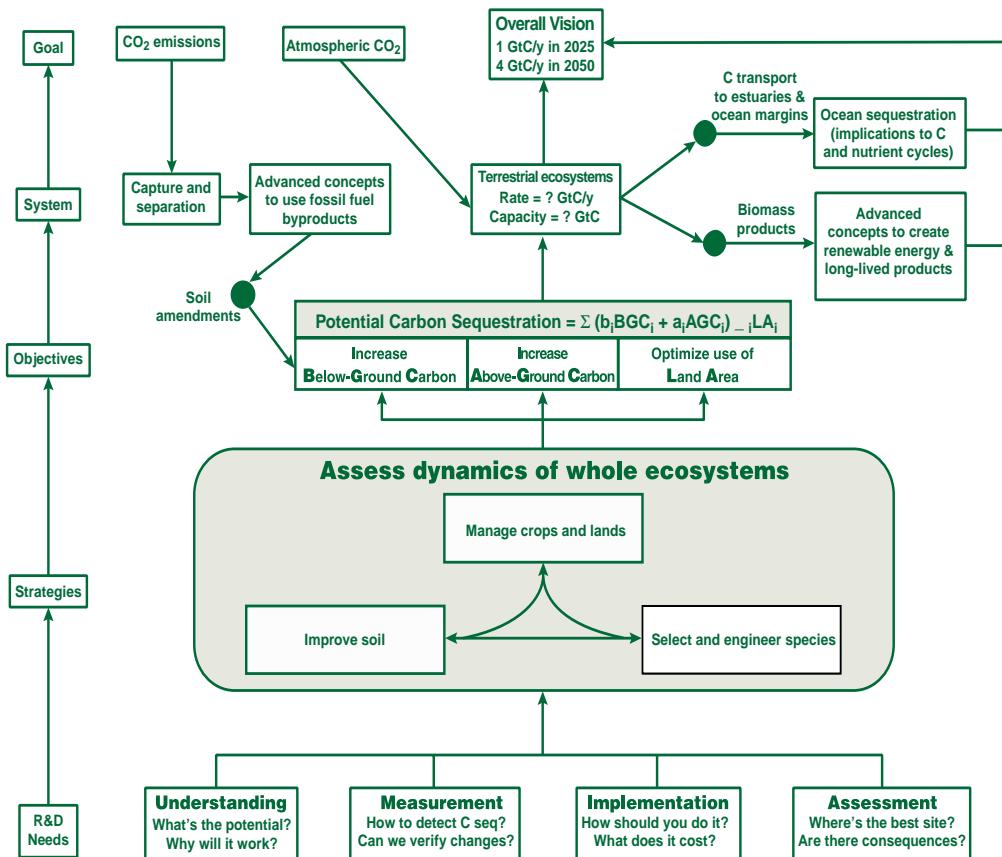
For tundra and taiga, unfortunately, the trend is in the wrong direction. These areas are being impacted so as to become carbon sources rather than sinks. Desertification and land degradation are still increasing globally, and little emphasis is being placed on how to use these areas for carbon sequestration. Lal, Hassan, and Dumanski (1998) and Lal, Kimble, and Follett et al. (1998) show that soil carbon sequestration can be a major benefit in these systems. Urbanization eliminated 10 million hectares (ha) of

agricultural and forested land in the United States between 1960 and 1980. These highly impacted environments offer interesting opportunities. The density of carbon under these “intensively managed” systems (e.g., lawns with trees) is high—attributable to the high rates of fertilization and irrigation, with nitrogen oxide pollutants perhaps playing a minor role. Ancillary benefits from urban forestation might include local cooling effects and water retention that would reduce emissions from fossil fuel use.

Batjes (1999) discusses management options to optimize soil carbon sequestration. He discusses many of the biomes listed in Table 4.2 and the strategies available to increase carbon sequestration, as well as the intensity of management options to achieve sequestration. It is clear that there are near-term beneficial practices that can be followed to recover some of the carbon lost from past practices and to protect important ecosystems. These should be implemented as much as is feasible. However, these alone cannot meet the vision for carbon sequestration. More specific and focused efforts will be required. The purpose of this road map is to lay out possible R&D options that may allow us to go beyond recovery and protection. R&D should be initiated to create options that will beneficially optimize carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems.

#### 4.4 TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY ROAD MAP

Figure 4.1 summarizes the entire science and technology road map for terrestrial ecosystems. The system goals for terrestrial ecosystems are left unknown. One of the first R&D needs



**Fig. 4.1. Overall system view of the science and technology road map for the terrestrial ecosystems.**

is to refine these targets and assess the feasibility of reaching the goals (i.e., the limits on sequestration rate and capacity). As research is accomplished over the 20–50-year time period, these estimates can be refined.

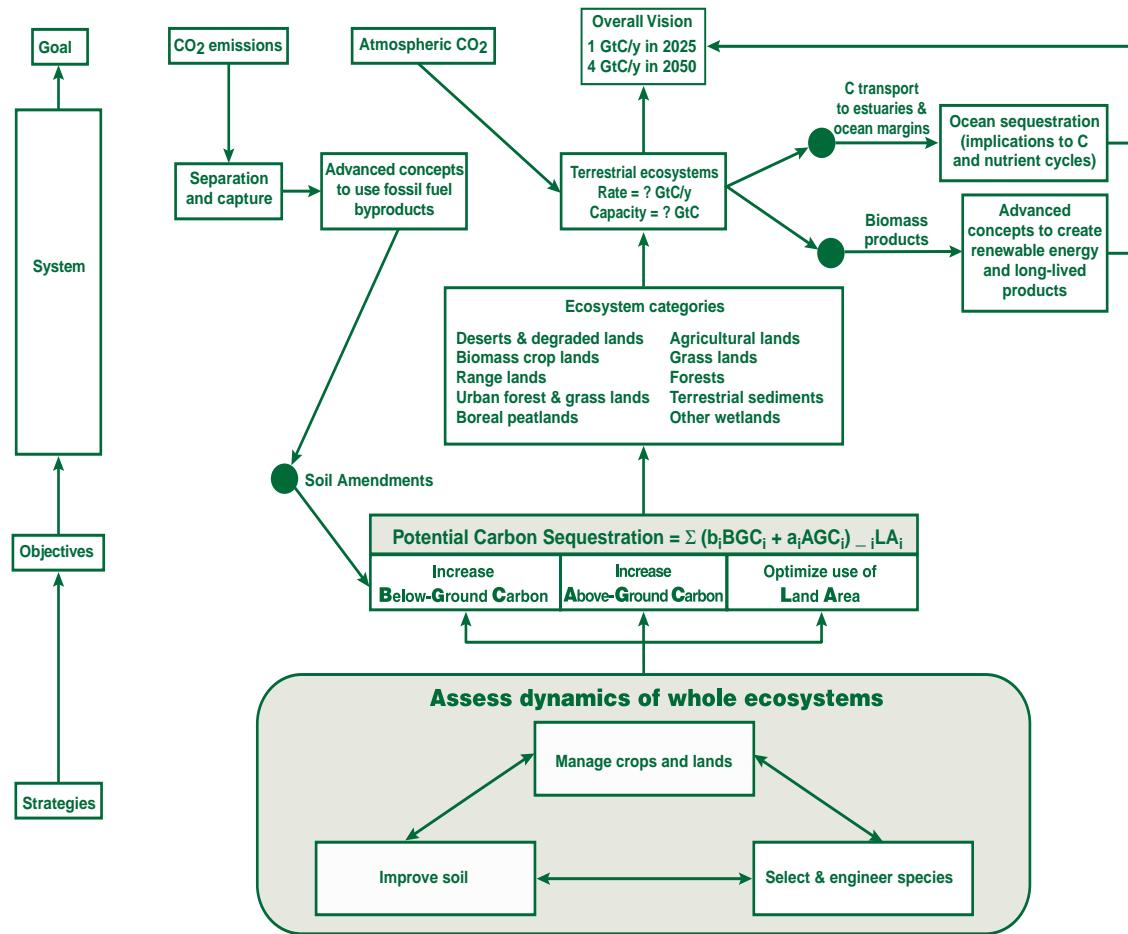
Figure 4.1 illustrates some of the key linkages among terrestrial sequestration and other options at the Goal & System Levels:

- $\text{CO}_2$  emissions could be captured and converted into byproducts that could be used as amendments to improve ecosystems (e.g., land reclamation or forest fertilization).
- Changing terrestrial ecosystem carbon cycles impact carbon

transport to estuaries and ocean margins. Increasing or decreasing nutrient inputs to these systems has significant implications.

- Using biomass to create long-lived products or fuel is a critical part of any overall carbon management strategy.

Recall the importance of looking at the major ecosystems of the world, as was discussed earlier. The system level is expanded in Fig. 4.2 to illustrate a detailed view of the road map that includes the major ecosystems. In this figure and following road map figures, the level of the road map being discussed in detail is expanded at the far left of the figure.



**Fig. 4.2. Detailed view of the system level showing the ecosystem categories that are part of the overall system.**

After establishing a vision, objectives are defined to meet that goal.

Sect. 4.4.1 and Fig. 4.3 present the three technology objectives that, if met, would allow the vision to be achieved. After objectives have been established, a variety of strategies can be developed that would focus on meeting the objectives (see Sect. 4.4.2 and Fig. 4.4). The final step is to identify R&D to support implementation of the strategies (see Sect. 4.4.3 and Fig. 4.5).

#### 4.4.1 Objectives

Our carbon sequestration system has three objectives (Fig. 4.3): increase the amount of carbon in below-ground

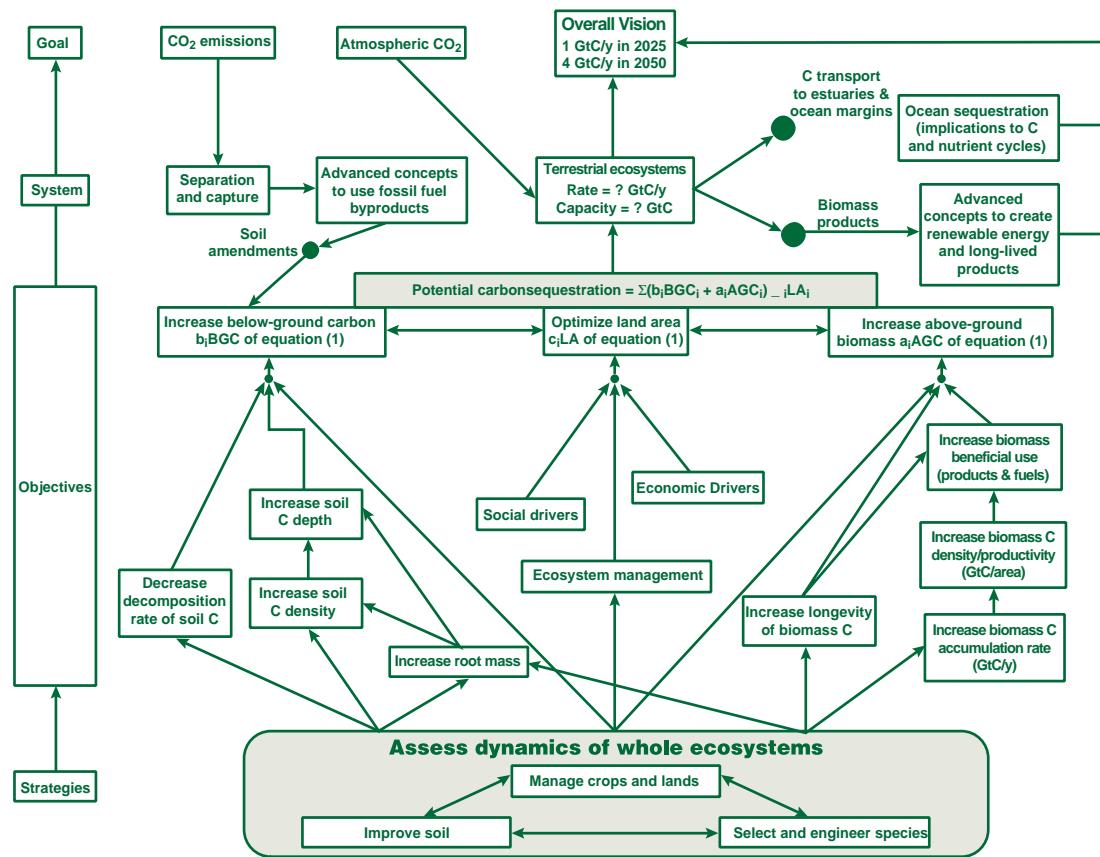
systems (soil or sediment), increase the carbon in above-ground biomass, and/or manage land area with an emphasis toward carbon sequestration. A simplified representation of how one might quantify the potential carbon sequestration (PCS) is

$$PCS = \sum (b_i BGC_i + a_i AGC_i) \times c_i LA_i \quad (1)$$

where

$a_i$  = potential increase in above-ground carbon in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  ecosystem;

$b_i$  = potential increase in below-ground carbon in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  ecosystem;



**Fig. 4.3. Detailed view of the objectives level showing the various components that feed into the three primary objectives that are described in equation (1).**

$c_i$  = potential change in land area due to management for carbon sequestration in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  ecosystem;

$AGC_i$  = above-ground carbon; biomass of the  $i^{\text{th}}$  ecosystem in the index year;

$BGC_i$  = below-ground carbon; root biomass + soil carbon (organic and inorganic) in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  ecosystem in the index year;

$LA$  = land area of each ecosystem in the index year.

To arrive at a global total for potential carbon sequestration, we must obtain the above- and below-ground carbon inventory for each ecosystem in the

index year, multiply that number by the potential change coefficient, assume an optimization of land use to maximize carbon storage potential, and sum across all ecosystems.

Although represented as independent variables, the three terms (above-ground carbon, below-ground carbon, and land area) are obviously tightly coupled. There is great synergism among plant biomass and soil organic carbon. Changes in the allocation of land area between different ecosystem types (e.g., conversion of annual cropland to biomass plantations) can increase above-ground carbon, which can lead to increases in below-ground

carbon. The rate of increase in above-ground carbon will initially be much faster than increases in below-ground carbon, but the rates of change will depend on the type of land use reallocation. In addition, major changes in both rates are possible within ecosystem types (independent of land reallocation) through various types of management interventions. We use the equation simply as a means to highlight objectives for carbon sequestration and to drive the development of R&D needs.

Using potential carbon sequestration (Eq. 1) to define sequestration options, we discuss each of the variables separately. The detailed view of the objectives in Fig. 4.3 illustrates four ways to increase below-ground carbon:

- increase the depth of soil carbon
- increase the density of carbon (organic and/or inorganic) in the soil
- increase the mass and/or depth of roots
- decrease the decomposition rate of soil carbon

One key link to another technology system is the possible use of byproducts created by advanced chemical or biological methods as soil additions to increase organic content, water retention, and protection of organic matter, and to improve the texture of the soil so that it can hold more carbon. An example might be creation of “smart fertilizers” or the use of mixtures of minerals (e.g., carbonates, silicates, and oxides) formed at fossil fuel power plants (Chap. 7) blended with biosolids such as sewage sludge. See the “Soil Amendments” link between advanced concepts to below-ground carbon in Fig. 4.1.

For the above-ground system, there are also four ways to increase carbon sequestration (Fig 4.3):

- increase the rate of accumulation of above-ground biomass
- increase the density of total biomass per area and/or the density of carbon in the above-ground biomass
- increase the longevity of biomass carbon (decrease decomposition rate)
- increase beneficial use of biomass carbon in long-lived products

An important component from the above-ground carbon term is the use of biomass products. Increasing the density of total biomass or the accumulation rate offers high carbon sequestration potential. However, storage due to increased plant productivity is most efficient if the carbon is moved to a long-term pool, such as long-lived woody biomass or soils. Another alternative is to substitute products manufactured from biomass for products that are made using fossil fuels, addressing both sequestration and management. Obvious examples that address both carbon management and sequestration include biofuels and wood products. Less obvious but perhaps important examples that are focused on carbon sequestration might include the use of biomass products in structural materials (e.g., cement) or combined with other materials to create new soils. These are illustrated by the “Biomass Product” link to “Advanced Chemical and Biological” at the system level (Fig. 4.2).

The land area term is the large multiplier. As seen by the large areas in Table 4.1, in some ecosystems, a small change in carbon content could result in large increases in total

carbon sequestered. Although the total land area of the world cannot be increased, R&D might allow the land area term to increase total carbon sequestration by optimization across the following:

- social drivers
- economic drivers
- ecosystem management drivers

Optimization among ecosystems for carbon sequestration will be a complex function. Research in this area should include issues such as transforming land from low carbon sequestration uses to high carbon sequestration uses, as well as reversing land use changes that have made land areas into sources of CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

#### 4.4.2 Strategies

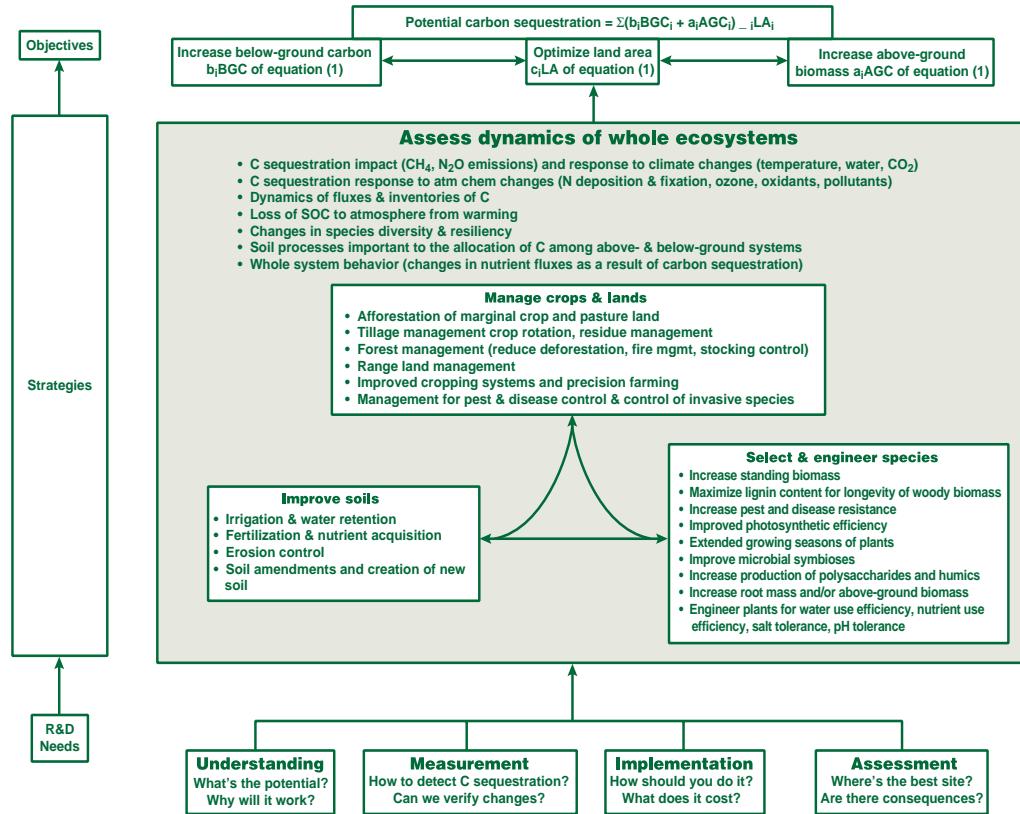
The next level of the road map addresses strategies (Fig. 4.4) that support the objectives. The overriding objective for terrestrial ecosystem carbon sequestration is to optimize net ecosystem exchange and ensure that the increased carbon is stored in long-lived vegetation, soil, or products. Therefore, strategies must be considered at the ecosystem and regional scales, because it is at these scales that management practices will be implemented.

There are three specific strategies that support the objectives (Fig. 4.4): (1) manage crops and lands, (2) improve soil, and (3) select and engineer species. These are closely coupled, and they must be implemented and assessed at the scale of whole ecosystems.

A rational strategy to sequester carbon must consider all the components of the terrestrial ecosystem. Single tree species cannot be considered in

isolation from other plant species or from soil because of the interactions and interdependencies among species in an ecosystem. Likewise, soil management cannot be separated from plant productivity. This integrative strategy element—ecosystem dynamics—is driven by four basic needs:

- Balance decomposition of biomass and soil organic matter as a source of carbon loss to the atmosphere against decomposition as a source of nutrients essential to plant growth. Sequestration strategies that attempt to decrease decomposition rates may inadvertently result in lower ecosystem carbon storage because, without decomposition, insufficient nutrients are available for plant growth. Plants, soil, and nutrient cycling must be considered together.
- Balance instantaneous or optimum plant productivity with the desire for long-term, predictable/stable productivity. An ecosystem that is managed for a single species likely will not maintain productivity under a wide range of conditions, such as climatic anomalies or disease outbreaks, without intensive management inputs. Target species, species diversity, and ecosystem resilience must be considered together.
- Design strategies that are compatible with other human demands on land and natural resources. It is necessary to understand both the impacts of carbon management on other ecosystem services and ways to design carbon management strategies that work in concert with other goals for terrestrial ecosystems, such as production of food, fuel, and fiber; clean water;



**Fig. 4.4. Detailed view of the strategies level illustrating the options for which R&D will be required for effective implementation.**

climate moderation; or aesthetic or cultural value.

- Determine the potential feedback from carbon sequestration actions. What is the impact of carbon sequestration on the production or consumption of trace gases that affect radiative forcing ( $N_2O$  and  $CH_4$ ) or that otherwise have significant roles in atmospheric chemistry (CO and NO)? For example, increased organic matter content in wetlands might increase net methane emission. Will increased reservoirs of organic matter in soils significantly affect weathering and subsequent transport in rivers of iron, silica, and other micronutrients? If so, in what direction might changes occur, and what are the potential

impacts? What consequences would an emphasis on desert carbon sequestration have on a eolian transport of iron and other metals or nutrients to the oceans or other terrestrial ecosystems?

R&D related to sequestering carbon in soils and vegetation will be diverse and must include integrated assessment to address several features that will influence, or be influenced by, other carbon sequestration strategies. Key features of these assessments will be (1) land use inventories, (2) assessments at scales from watersheds to global, and (3) life-cycle analysis, which is the estimation of all costs (real dollars and carbon costs) to perform R&D and implement carbon sequestration options. Many dynamic

parameters and processes must be measured and assessed over time, including

- Carbon sequestration impacts to the atmosphere (e.g., increased  $\text{CH}_4$ ,  $\text{CO}_2$ , or  $\text{N}_2\text{O}$  emissions) and responses to climate changes (temperature, water,  $\text{CO}_2$ ), in addition to  $\text{CO}_2$  withdrawal by carbon sequestration
- Loss of sequestered soil carbon to the atmosphere as a result of global warming
- Carbon sequestration responses to atmospheric chemistry changes (nitrogen deposition and fixation, ozone, oxidants, other pollutants)
- Dynamics of fluxes and inventories of carbon at all scales as they change with response to carbon sequestration
- Changes in species diversity and resiliency (e.g., if you design a plant species for early rapid growth, you may limit its long-term growth and/or life expectancy) as a response to carbon sequestration
- Soil processes important to the allocation of carbon among above- and below-ground systems (transformations, transport, and fate)
- Whole ecosystem behavior as a response to carbon sequestration (e.g., alteration of nutrient fluxes as a result of a sequestration emphasis, including soils, wind transport of iron and silica to oceans, and transport of organic matter to aquatic systems)

#### 4.4.2.1 Improve soil

A variety of detailed strategies could be implemented or developed to increase the carbon content of soil, increasing below-ground carbon directly and above-ground carbon indirectly. One of the key questions is whether soil

texture, topographic position, and climate ultimately determine the carbon content of a soil or whether it can be changed by manipulation. We know little about the processes of humification (formation of humus, which consists of decayed organic matter that provides nutrients for plants and increases the soil's retention of water) or stabilization of decomposable organic carbon in soils. However, our current level of understanding is adequate to begin to address the questions: To what degree can these processes of stabilization be managed? What would be the consequences for plant productivity and ecosystem functions?

Figure 4.4 offers a detailed view of components of the soil improvement strategy. Opportunities for innovation exist in the following areas if R&D can address these key questions:

- **Irrigation and water retention.** How can we minimize the amount of water required, or perhaps use water of lower quality to increase carbon accumulation? For example, groundwater of marginal quality could be used for restoration of large tracts of degraded lands. Urban forests and grasslands would benefit from utilization of "gray" water from homes, businesses, or cities rather than irrigation using potable water supplies. Surface treatments or soil amendments that improve retention of water in soil between rain events and irrigation would also be of great benefit. Could desalination be linked to irrigation and carbon sequestration via production of carbonates with brines and  $\text{CO}_2$ ?
- **Fertilization and nutrient acquisition.** Can we improve the efficiency at which nutrients are taken up by plants through novel

microbial manipulations or soil amendments? Can we determine and enhance the role of mycorrhiza (a mutual association between a fungus and the root of a seed plant it invades) in carbon fixation and plant productivity? We must address the availability of other critical nutrients and trace elements, not just nitrogen and phosphorous.

- **Enhance production and retention of soil carbon.** Can the formation of strongly-adsorbing and highly-recalcitrant organic macromolecules be enhanced through soil amendments, microbial manipulation, or genetic selection of biomass? Can soil organic carbon profiles be deepened to provide a greater mass of soil available for carbon sequestration? Can inorganic carbon formation be enhanced in an arid system?
- **Erosion control.** Beyond no-till agriculture, what methods can be used to minimize soil erosion? Are there soil additions or surface treatments that will significantly inhibit the susceptibility of soils to water erosion? Are there engineering innovations to at least trap organic matter that might be released from erosion (e.g., sediment trapping to enhance wetlands)? Can the current ~0.5 GtC (Stallard 1998) trapped in sediments each year behind dams be permanently sequestered?
- **Soil amendments or creation of new soil.** Can waste byproducts (e.g., fly ash, concrete, sewage sludge) be used alone or mixed with other materials to improve soil characteristics safely and economically to help the retention of carbon? Can materials created

from byproducts be used to reclaim degraded lands, or perhaps even help mitigate land subsidence while at the same time sequestering carbon?

#### 4.4.2.2 Manage crops and land

Opportunities for increasing carbon sequestration by management practices vary in intensity and are specific to each ecosystem. There are also complexities to implementing some strategies. For example, no-till practices reduce oxidation of soil organic matter but do not necessarily promote increased incorporation of surface organic matter into the soil to potentially enhance soil organic carbon in the long term. There are opportunities to use natural biodiversity as well. For example, a shift from annual to perennial grains would benefit soil carbon sequestration. Management of agricultural ecosystems by planting trees and legumes mixed with crop plants can add organic carbon to soil. Proposed strategies include:

- afforestation of marginal crop and pasture land
- tillage management, crop rotation, residue management
- forest management (reducing deforestation, improving stocking control, implementing fire management)
- range land management
- improved cropping systems and precision farming focused on soil management
- management for pest and disease control and control of invasive species
- decrease urbanization and land conversion of forests to agricultural use

#### 4.4.2.3 Select and engineer species

Opportunities to select or genetically engineer species for carbon sequestration behavior can directly impact both above-ground and below-ground carbon. It will be important to understand carbon partitioning into biomass as we attempt to engineer or select for carbon sequestration traits. R&D can also indirectly make more land area available for carbon sequestration (e.g., by improving food production per hectare so that more land is available for carbon sequestration). This strategy should include (1) research on plants and microbial communities with a focus on near-term (next 25 years) biotechnology options and species selection using extant knowledge and (2) relevant fundamental research on functional genomics that will have impacts in later years (>50 years).

For research in plant genetics, genes must be available for insertion into the plant of choice. Many genes in agriculture have come from a small set of annual plants (e.g., *Arabidopsis*), for which information on gene function (e.g., disease resistance or flower formation) is easily obtained. Most of the genes found in such plants would not have direct value to a carbon sequestration strategy because genes for long-term carbon storage may have little agronomic value. Thus, to enable use of genetic engineering for carbon sequestration, there is a need to discover genes in perennial plants that allocate more carbon to below-ground components, that code for higher content of extractives (components desired from the plant), or that provide resistance to microbial degradation. To enable the discovery of such genes, a functional genomics effort must precede the genetic engineering efforts.

It is not always necessary to start with functional genomics to modify the plant genome. For example, genes for producing higher lignin content in maize have been bred out of current varieties. (Lignin is a complex polymer that hardens and strengthens the cell walls of plants and that does not decompose easily.) Genetic stocks possessing higher lignin content exist, and these could be reintroduced if the objective were to produce this characteristic for carbon sequestration. R&D on altering the Rubisco enzyme to increase biomass production through a more efficient uptake of carbon also might have huge potential benefits. Opportunities in this area and others are discussed in more detail in Chap. 6. Strategies central to this theme include developing methods to

- increase standing biomass
- maximize lignin content for longevity of woody biomass
- increase pest and disease resistance
- improve photosynthetic efficiency
- extend growing seasons of plants
- increase root:shoot ratios
- increase carbon allocation in below-ground components of less decomposable carbon compounds (e.g., lignin, phenolics)
- engineer new plants that have improved water efficiency, nutrient utilization, salt tolerance, and pH tolerance

Metting et al. (1999) provide details on some of the microbial biotechnology options available for sequestering more carbon in soil and vegetation, including species selection and genetic engineering to

- improve microbial symbioses (mycorrhizal fungi, bacterial fixation of nitrogen, and other

- nutrient acquisition features of soil)
- grow mycorrhizal fungi in pure culture (especially those that might improve water and nutrient uptake)
- increase production of polysaccharides and humic substances to stabilize soil organic matter

#### 4.4.3 Research and Development Needs

We have now reached the bottom and final level of the road map—science and technology needs. The R&D recommended to address these needs cuts across several ecosystems and is intended to be general so as to stimulate thought rather than prescribe research for investigators. There are four critical aspects to be considered in planning an R&D program to address carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems

**Understanding.** What is the potential for a given strategy to actually work? What are the scientific principles that govern carbon sequestration?

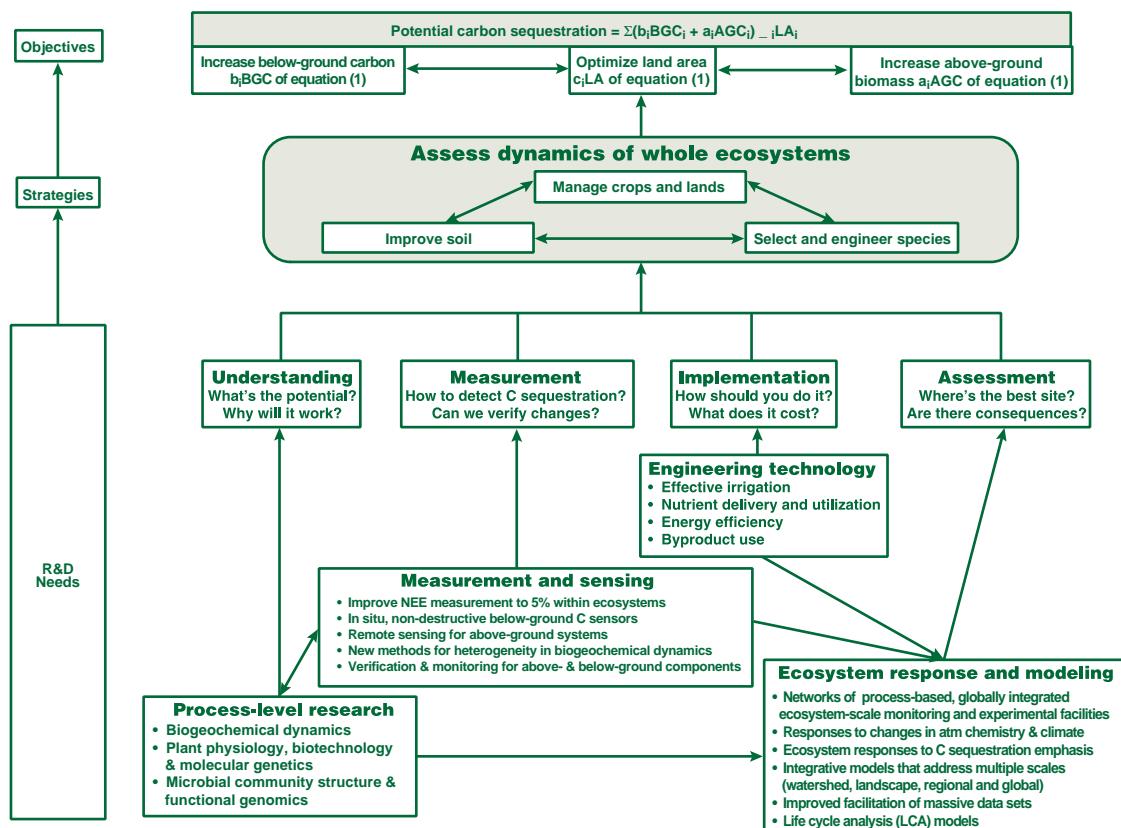
**Measurement.** How can we measure the rates of current carbon sequestration by terrestrial ecosystems? Are these rates likely to change significantly as a result of changes in atmospheric chemistry and climate? Can we detect changes in carbon sequestration rates after implementing various strategies? Can these changes be verified at large scales?

**Implementation.** If a strategy appears feasible, how should it actually be pursued? What advances in engineering are required? What are the costs associated with implementation? These costs can be in terms of actual dollars but also in

terms of costs of carbon as fuel or materials (e.g., fertilizer may be required). How can we verify that a particular carbon sequestration implementation is effective and not the consequence of simultaneous changes in other factors?

**Assessment.** Where are the best opportunities to implement various strategies? What are the possible consequences of implementation over both the short and long term to the landscape, local, regional, or global ecosystems?

**Process-level research** will directly address the questions that must be answered to increase our understanding of carbon sequestration systems. This research is closely linked to and dependent on research into **measurement and sensing** methods to enable study of processes at a variety of scales. New measurement methods can also lead to new breakthroughs in our understanding of key processes. Advances in measurement and sensing directly support the critical need for verification and monitoring of carbon sequestration. Both of these areas will provide direct benefits to research in **ecosystem response and modeling**. This R&D area primarily links to the needs in assessment and represents an integrative R&D topic. Clearly, advances in **engineering technology** will be required to support the implementation of carbon sequestration strategies. As engineering advances are developed, though, information should be linked to ecosystem response and modeling so as to support assessment. We present specific R&D topics as itemized bullets for clarity to align with the details of the road map found in Fig. 4.5.



**Fig. 4.5. Detailed view of the R&D needs level illustrating the fundamental R&D needed to support the development of carbon sequestration options for terrestrial ecosystems.**

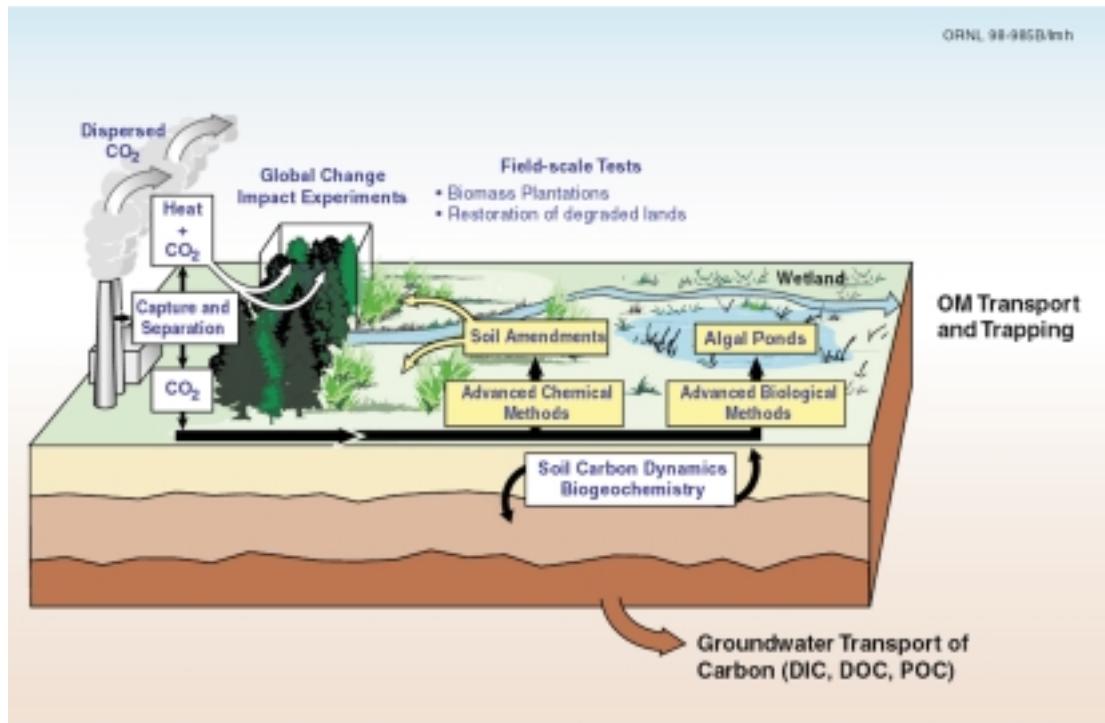
#### 4.4.3.1 Process-level research

Process-level research in the following areas will directly aid our understanding of carbon sequestration systems. R&D is needed to focus on the following:

- Biogeochemical dynamics of carbon, nitrogen, phosphorus, calcium, magnesium, potassium, and trace elements that control transformations of carbon and its transport and fate among plants, soil, water, and the atmosphere. The dynamics must be investigated within the context of a system that includes soil, water, plant, microbe, and climate interactions.

- Plant physiology, biotechnology, and molecular genetics. R&D topics would include development of methods to select and engineer plant species for improved nutrient acquisition, growth, carbon density, and/or carbon sequestration. How can we alter the composition of cellular components and design plants for effective byproduct use by increasing energy content, durability, and lignin content to reduce decomposition rates, or recyclability? How can pest and disease resistance be improved? (See also Chap. 6.)
- Microbial community structure and functional genomics. R&D should be directed toward (1) plant

## Field-Scale R&D on DOE Reservations



Advancing the science and technology needed to enable the mitigation of climate change resulting from  $\text{CO}_2$  emissions through carbon sequestration will require long-term research, evaluation, assessment, and demonstration. DOE lands and associated facilities offer research sites and test beds for evaluating sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems. DOE lands offer great diversity—from shrub-steppe at Hanford, Washington, to tall-grass prairie at Argonne, Illinois, to deciduous forest at Oak Ridge, Tennessee (Brown 1998). Our vision is to have an integrated program of field-scale research, development, and assessment that would allow evaluation of  $\text{CO}_2$  separation science and terrestrial sequestration options. Early research at field scale often results in meaningful feedback to guide process-level research. DOE lands represent well-studied sites, offer good opportunities to involve the public in evaluating carbon sequestration, and could assess transportation and other costs of sequestration at a small scale in early studies.

rhizosphere microbial community functions, (2) the microbial community role in stabilizing soil organic matter or slowing decomposition of organic matter, and (3) impact studies of effects of altered soil processes on nitrogen mineralization and fixation and plant acquisition of other nutrients.

### 4.4.3.2 Measurement and sensing

Developing measurement and sensing techniques to verify the occurrence of carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems and to monitor its effects will be challenging (Post et al. 1998). Methods are needed to ensure that researchers sample sites where the

changes are occurring in ways that reduce sampling errors. Detection of changes in terrestrial carbon at large scales will also offer challenges. It is possible that rules of thumb could be determined for carbon sequestration accomplished by certain practices, but at this time the basis for developing quantitative rules is severely lacking. Because of these challenges, we believe the following R&D topics are particularly important.

- In situ, nondestructive below-ground sensors are needed to quantify rates and limits of carbon accumulation both spatially and temporally. Three areas of importance are (1) soil carbon, water, and nutrients as a function of depth; (2) biomass (root and microbial community) imaging; and (3) porosity or soil structure changes. An example of a sensor that might be developed to measure changes in carbon concentrations in soil would be a miniaturized nuclear magnetic resonance imaging device for scanning a volume of soil below ground.
- Remote sensing (e.g., by satellite imaging) is needed for above-ground biomass systems. Improvements are needed in the frequency, accuracy, and scale of measurements to evaluate land cover and management differentiation and address the variability caused by heterogeneity at these scales.
- New methods of extrapolating across the scale of below-ground processes are needed to enable tracking of changes measured in biogeochemical dynamics.
- Verification and monitoring. Will new sensors be required or will process knowledge (rules of thumb) be sufficient to estimate carbon sequestration based on the

implementation of observable practices?

#### 4.4.3.3 Engineering technology

Once new concepts based on understanding are put forth, some key engineering issues must be addressed to allow for effective implementation of strategies. We offer the following examples:

- Effective irrigation. How can water usage be minimized? Are there opportunities to develop gray water management for urban areas? How might wetland restoration be combined with waste water treatment? What are the implications of using groundwater of marginal quality?
- Nutrient delivery and utilization. A key issue will be nitrogen fixation. Also, with a mandate to reduce organic matter decomposition, nutrient availability will be an issue. Are there innovative soil amendments that can be developed? How can more litter be incorporated effectively into the soil? Are there ways to use large volumes of animal wastes or sewage sludge to improve carbon sequestration while solving this vexing environmental challenge?
- Energy efficiency. Many carbon sequestration methods will require the use of materials that must be handled with heavy equipment: how can the energy penalty be minimized? What alternatives to classic fertilizers can be developed to avoid the fossil fuel emissions from fertilizer production?
- Byproduct use. There are important R&D links to existing programs. For example, the DOE biomass program is examining fossil fuel displacement and the DOE Office of Industrial Technology is

investigating feedstock programs. Are there innovative options to store or bury harvested biomass products? How can biomass products like wood be included in structural materials (e.g., to replace cement, which is produced by a CO<sub>2</sub>-emitting process) to both sequester carbon and reduce CO<sub>2</sub> emissions?

#### 4.4.3.4 Ecosystem response and modeling

The fundamental R&D needed for Ecosystem Response and Modeling falls into two broad categories. First, key measurements will be required for computer models that will evaluate the long-term effects of carbon sequestration. These measurements differ in emphasis from those in Sect. 4.4.3.2 by requiring larger scales, probable manipulative experiments, and integrated measurement strategies. Second, integrative models will be required at scales from landscapes to global ecosystems.

- Networks of process-based, globally integrated ecosystem-scale monitoring and experimental facilities.
- Measurement of plant and ecosystem-scale responses to changes in atmospheric chemistry and climate variables such as CO<sub>2</sub>, temperature, water, nutrients, ozone, and pollutants. For example, increases in emissions of CO, N<sub>2</sub>O, and CH<sub>4</sub> as a feedback from increased carbon sequestration activities.
- Measurement of ecosystem responses to sequestration. For example, species diversity and resiliency may be affected by implementation of some strategies.

- Integrative models that address plant-, watershed-, landscape-, and ecosystem-scale processes up to regional and global systems. These models must also make use of and facilitate use of massive data sets that will be collected through some of these activities. For example, work is needed to assess possible impacts from a focus on restoration of degraded lands, or carbon sequestration and erosion control in deserts that could reduce transport of iron and silica micronutrients by air currents to the ocean.
- Life-cycle analysis models that can identify opportunities for biomass gains, evaluate social and economic issues, and estimate total system costs (real costs and carbon costs).

## 4.5 SUMMARY

Carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems will provide significant near-term benefits (over the next 25 years), with the potential for even more major contributions in the long-term (> 50 years). There are many ancillary positive benefits from carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems, which are already a major biological scrubber for CO<sub>2</sub>. The potential for carbon sequestration could be large for terrestrial ecosystems (5–10 GtC/year). However, this value is speculative, and a primary R&D need is to evaluate this potential and its implications for ecosystems. In addition, economic and energy costs were not fully considered in the analysis to estimate the carbon sequestration potential. As carbon sequestration strategies are developed, a whole ecosystem approach under changing climate conditions must be

considered. Potential feedback mechanisms (both positive and negative) must be addressed.

Our primary focus has been on manipulative strategies to increase carbon sequestration rather than protect ecosystems. We wish to emphasize that carbon stored below ground is more permanent than plant biomass. However, even soil carbon must be managed in the long term. One of the key questions is whether soil texture, topographic position, and climate ultimately determine the carbon content of a soil, or whether it can be permanently changed by manipulation and to what extent. For plant biomass, transformation of carbon into long-lived products or below-ground storage is essential. With this perspective, it appears that the following ecosystems offer significant opportunity for carbon sequestration (not in any order of priority):

- **Forest lands.** The focus should include below-ground carbon and long-term management and utilization of standing stocks, understory, ground cover, and litter.
- **Agricultural lands.** The focus should include crop lands, grasslands, and range lands, with an emphasis on increasing long-lived soil carbon.
- **Biomass croplands.** As a complement to ongoing efforts related to biofuels, the focus should be on long-term increases in soil carbon.
- **Deserts and degraded lands.** Restoration of degraded lands offers significant benefits and carbon sequestration potential in both below- and above-ground systems.

- **Boreal wetlands and peatlands.** The focus should include management of soil carbon pools and perhaps limited conversion to forest or grassland vegetation where ecologically acceptable.

In developing the road map, we established three interrelated objectives that transcend ecosystems: increase below-ground carbon (soil carbon), increase above-ground carbon (plant biomass), and optimize land area for sequestration of carbon.

These objectives can be accomplished by the following strategies: improve soil characteristics, manage crops and lands for sequestration, and select and engineer species for sequestration. These three strategies must be considered from the perspective of whole ecosystems, which is the scale at which management for optimizing carbon sequestration will be accomplished.

Research on four key interrelated R&D topics is needed to meet goals for carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems:

1. **Increased understanding** of ecosystem structure and function directed toward carbon allocation and partitioning, nutrient cycling, plant and microbial biotechnology, molecular genetics, and functional genomics.
2. **Improved measurement** of large-scale carbon fluxes, dynamic carbon inventories with the development of new or improved instrumentation for *in situ*, nondestructive below-ground observation, remote sensing for

above-ground biomass measurement, and verification and monitoring of carbon stocks.

3. **Implementation of improved knowledge and tools** such as better irrigation methods, efficient nutrient delivery systems, increased energy efficiency in agriculture and forestry, and increased byproduct use.
4. **Assessment of ecosystem responses** to changes in both atmospheric chemistry and climate, and other processes that might be impacted by implementation of carbon sequestration strategies. Suites of models would be used, integrating across scales ranging from physiological processes to regional scales as inputs to global-scale modeling and including life cycle analysis models.

Finally, field-scale research should be implemented in the near term with manipulations in large-scale ecosystems aimed at clarifying both physiological and geochemical processes regulating carbon sequestration. This research should be closely linked to integrative ecosystem modeling. The creation of such carbon sequestration test facilities on DOE reservations would provide proof-of-principle testing of new sequestration concepts and an integration of diverse sequestration science and engineering challenges.

## 4.6 ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

All members of the team who helped develop this chapter are identified in Appendix A. In addition, we express our appreciation to the following individuals who provided thorough and meaningful review comments: Gary

King, Linda Mann, David Nowak, Richard Pouyat, Jerry Tuskan, Donn Viviani, and Stan Wullschleger. We also acknowledge the participants in the September 1999 workshop who helped us improve this chapter.

## 4.7 END NOTES

The workshop that was conducted during September 1999 was intended to solicit discussion from a broad set of stakeholders. Many of the comments and suggestions have been incorporated into this revised chapter. However, some of the points of consensus we have left in the rapporteur reports summarized in Chapter 9. We feel that these important observations will be more visible as part of these brief reports, rather than blended into this long chapter. The rapporteur report is intended to complement and augment this chapter.

Sarmiento and Wofsy (1999) have recently released a report *A U.S. Carbon Cycle Science Plan*. Their report is an important complement to sequestration R&D plans. Understanding the carbon cycle is important as various carbon sequestrations strategies are developed.

As discussed in Chaps. 1 and 2, several activities include R&D planning for carbon sequestration. One specific event that paralleled this road map activity, with a topic of close relevance, was the workshop entitled "Carbon Sequestration in Soils: Science, Monitoring and Beyond." This workshop, organized by Oak Ridge and Pacific Northwest National Laboratories and the Council of Agricultural Science and Technology, was held December 3–5, 1998. It addressed the role of carbon sequestration in soils in

far greater detail than does this road-mapping exercise. By engaging several participants in that workshop in our effort, we have tried to maintain a consistent view of the most important R&D topics. For excellent and detailed discussions on specific topics, consult the papers prepared for the workshop: Lal, Hassan, and Dumanski; Marland, McCarl, and Schneider; Metting et al.; and Post et al.

## 4.8 REFERENCES

Amthor, J. S., M. A. Huston, et al. 1998. *Terrestrial Ecosystem Responses to Global Change: A Research Strategy*, ORNL/TM-1998/27, Oak Ridge National Laboratory.

Armentano, T. V., and E. S. Menges 1986. "Patterns of Change in the Carbon Balance of Organic Soil-Wetlands of the Temperate Zone," *Journal of Ecology* 74: 755-74.

Batjes, N. H. 1999. *Management Options for Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Concentrations in the Atmosphere by Increasing Carbon Sequestration in the Soil*. NRP Report 410 200 031, Dutch National Research Program on Global Air Pollution and Climate Change, Wageningen, The Netherlands.

Birkeland, P. W. 1974. *Pedology, Weathering, and Geomorphological Research*, Oxford University Press, New York.

Brown, K. S. 1998. "The Great DOE Land Rush?" *Science* 282: 616-17.

Buyanovsky, G. A. and G. H. Wagner 1983. "Annual Cycles of Carbon Dioxide Level in Soil Air," *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 47: 1139-45.

CNIE (Committee for the National Institute for the Environment) 1998. *Conserving Land: Population and Sustainable Food Production*, available at [www.cnie.org/pop/conserving/landuse2.htm](http://www.cnie.org/pop/conserving/landuse2.htm) (accessed 12/31/98), Washington, D.C.

Edmonds, J., M. Wise, R. Sands, R. Brown, and H. Kheshgi 1996. *Agriculture, Land-Use, and Commercial Biomass Energy: A Preliminary Integrated Analysis of the Potential Role of Biomass Energy for Reducing Future Greenhouse Related Emissions*, PNNL-11155, Pacific Northwest National Laboratory, Washington, D.C.

Edmonds, J., M. Wise, H. Pitcher, R. Richels, T. Wigley, and C. Maccracken 1997. "An Integrated Assessment of Climate Change and the Accelerated Introduction of Advanced Energy Technologies: An Application of MiniCAM 1.0," *Mitigation and Adaptation Strategies for Global Change* 1(4): 311-39.

Fan, S. 1998. "A Large Terrestrial Carbon Sink in North America Implied by Atmospheric and Oceanic Carbon Dioxide Data and Models," *Science* 282: 442-46.

FAO (United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization) 1992. "Protect and Produce: Putting the Pieces Together," Rome.

Garten, C. T., and S. D. Wullschleger. In review. "Soil Carbon Inventories Under a Bioenergy Crop (*Panicum virgatum*): Limits to Measurements of Soil Carbon Storage" (submitted to *J. Env. Quality*).

Goulden, M. L., S. C. Wofsy, J. W. Harden, S. E. Trumbore, P. M. Crill, S. T. Gower, T. Fries, B. C. Daube, S. M. Fan, D. J. Sutton, A. Bazzaz, and J. W.

Munger 1998. "Sensitivity of Boreal Forest Carbon Balance to Soil Thaw," *Science* 279:214-17.

*Greenhouse Related Emissions*, PNNL-11155, Pacific Northwest National Laboratories.

Gutknecht, K. 1998. "Can Carbon Be a New Cash Crop?" *Farmer-Stockman*, (August): 28-30.

Lal, R., H. M. Hassan, and J. Dumanski 1999. "Desertification Control to Sequester Carbon and Mitigate the Greenhouse Effect," *Carbon Sequestration in Soils: Science, Monitoring and Beyond*, N. J. Rosenberg, R.C. Izurralde, and E. L. Malone, eds., Battelle Press, Columbus, Ohio.

Lal, R., J. Kimble, R. Follett, and C. Cole 1998. *The Potential for U.S. Cropland to Sequester Carbon and Mitigate the Greenhouse Effect*, Ann Arbor Press, Chelsea, Mich.

Lal, R., J. M. Kimble, E. Levine, and B. A. Stewart 1995. *Soils and Global Change*, CRC/Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, Fla.

Marland, G., B. A. McCarl, and U. Schneider 1999. "Soil Carbon: Policy and Economics," *Carbon Sequestration in Soils: Science, Monitoring and Beyond*, N. J. Rosenberg, R.C. Izurralde, and E. L. Malone, eds., Battelle Press, Columbus, Ohio.

Metting, F. B., J. L. Smith, and J. S. Amthor 1999. "Science Needs and New Technology for Soil Carbon Sequestration," *Carbon Sequestration in Soils: Science, Monitoring and Beyond*, N. J. Rosenberg, R.C. Izurralde, and E. L. Malone, eds., Battelle Press, Columbus, Ohio.

Mosier, A. R., W. J. Parton, D. W. Valentine, D. S. Ojima, D. S. Schimel, and O. Heinemeyer 1997. *CH<sub>4</sub> and N<sub>2</sub>O fluxes in the Colorado Shortgrass Steppe: II. Long-Term Impact of Land Use Change, Global Biogeochemical Cycles*, 11: 29-42.

Oechel, W.C., S. J. Hastings, M. Jenkins, G. Reichers, N. Grulke, and G. Vourlitis 1993. "Recent Change of Arctic Tundra Ecosystems from a Net Carbon Sink to a Source," *Nature* 361: 520-26.

Post, W. M., R. C. Izurralde, L. K. Mann, and N. Bliss 1999. "Monitoring and Verification of Soil Organic Carbon Sequestration," *Carbon Sequestration in Soils: Science, Monitoring and Beyond*, N. J. Rosenberg, R.C. Izurralde, and E. L. Malone, eds., Battelle Press, Columbus, Ohio.

Sarmiento, J. L. and S. C. Wofsy 1999. *A U.S. Carbon Cycle Science Plan*, prepared by the Carbon and Climate Working Group for the U.S. Global Change Research Program, Washington, D.C.

Sohngen, B., R. Sedjo, and R. Mendelsohn 1998. "Timber Supply and Forest Carbon in a World of Climate Change: Some Modeling Approaches and Results," in Herzog, H. J., ed., *Proceedings of the Stakeholders' Workshop on Carbon Sequestration*, MIT EL 98-002, Massachusetts Institute of Technology Energy Laboratory, June.

Stallard, R. F. 1998. "Terrestrial Sedimentation and the Carbon Cycle: Coupling Weathering and Erosion to

Carbon Burial," *Global Biogeochemical Cycles* 12(2): 231-57.

Stone, R. 1998. "A Bold Plan to Recreate a Long-Lost Siberian Ecosystem," *Science* 282: 31-4.

Trexler, M. 1998. "Forestry As a Climate Change Mitigation Option," in Herzog, H. J., ed., *Proceedings of the Stakeholders' Workshop on Carbon Sequestration*, MIT EL 98-002, Massachusetts Institute of Technology Energy Laboratory, June.

Watson, R. T., M. C. Zinyowera, and R. H. Moss 1996. *Climate Change 1995: Impacts, Adaptations and Mitigation of Climate Change: Scientific-Technical Analyses*, the Contribution of Working Group II to the Second Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Zimov, S. A. and F. S. Chapin, III 1998. "Proposal on Creation of a Pleistocene Park."



# 7 Vision

*By the year 2025, effective, safe, and cost-competitive options for geologic sequestration of all of the CO<sub>2</sub> generated from coal, oil, and gas power plants and generated by H<sub>2</sub> production from fossil fuels will be available within 500 km of each power plant.*

## 5

# SEQUESTRATION OF CARBON DIOXIDE IN GEOLOGIC FORMATIONS

## 5.1 SEQUESTRATION IN GEOLOGIC FORMATIONS BUILDS ON A STRONG EXPERIENCE BASE

Geologic formations, such as oil fields, coal beds, and aquifers, are likely to provide the first large-scale opportunity for concentrated sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>. In fact, CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration is already taking place at Sleipner West off the coast of Norway, where approximately one million tonnes of CO<sub>2</sub> are sequestered annually as part of an off-shore natural gas production project (see sidebar on the Statoil Project). Developers of technologies for sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> in geologic formations can draw from related experience gained over nearly a century of oil and gas production, groundwater resource management, and, more recently, natural gas storage and groundwater remediation. In some cases, sequestration may even be accompanied by economic benefits such as enhanced oil recovery (EOR), enhanced methane production from coal beds, enhanced production of natural gas from depleted fields, and improved natural gas storage efficiency through the use of CO<sub>2</sub> as a “cushion gas” to displace methane from the reservoir.

### 5.1.1 Sequestration Mechanisms

CO<sub>2</sub> can be sequestered in geologic formations by three principal mechanisms (Hitchon 1996; DOE 1993). First, CO<sub>2</sub> can be trapped as a gas or supercritical fluid under a low-permeability caprock, similar to the way that natural gas is trapped in gas reservoirs or stored in aquifers. This mechanism, commonly called hydrodynamic trapping, will likely be, in the short term, the most important for sequestration. Finding better methods to increase the fraction of pore space

### **Statoil Sequesters CO<sub>2</sub> from Off-Shore Gas Production**



Natural gas produced from the Sleipner West field in the North Sea contains nearly 10% by volume CO<sub>2</sub>. To meet the sales specification of only 2.5% CO<sub>2</sub>, most of the CO<sub>2</sub> must be removed from the natural gas before delivery. Statoil uses an amine solvent to absorb the excess CO<sub>2</sub>. The separated CO<sub>2</sub> is injected into an aquifer 1000 m under the North Sea. Approximately one million tonnes of CO<sub>2</sub> are separated and sequestered annually. Over the project lifetime, 20 million tonnes of CO<sub>2</sub> are expected to be sequestered (Korbol and Kaddour 1995).

occupied by trapped gas will enable maximum use of the sequestration capacity of a geologic formation. Second, CO<sub>2</sub> can dissolve into the fluid phase. This mechanism of dissolving the gas in a liquid such as petroleum is called solubility trapping. In oil reservoirs, dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> lowers the viscosity of the residual oil so it swells and flows more readily, providing the basis for one of the more common EOR techniques. The relative importance of solubility trapping depends on a large number of factors, such as the sweep efficiency (efficiency of displacement of oil or water) of CO<sub>2</sub> injection, the formation of fingers (preferred flow paths), and the effects of formation heterogeneity. Efficient solubility trapping will reduce the likelihood that CO<sub>2</sub> gas will quickly return to the atmosphere.

Finally, CO<sub>2</sub> can react either directly or indirectly with the minerals and organic matter in the geologic

formations to become part of the solid mineral matrix. In most geologic formations, formation of calcium, magnesium, and iron carbonates is expected to be the primary mineral-trapping processes. However, precipitation of these stable mineral phases is a relatively slow process with poorly understood kinetics. In coal formations, trapping is achieved by preferential adsorption of CO<sub>2</sub> to the solid matrix. Developing methods for increasing the rate and capacity for mineral trapping will create stable repositories of carbon that are unlikely to return to the biosphere and will decrease unexpected leakage of CO<sub>2</sub> to the surface.

Finding ways to optimize hydrodynamic trapping, while increasing the rate at which the other trapping mechanisms convert CO<sub>2</sub> to less mobile and stable forms, is one of the major challenges that must be addressed by an R&D program.

### 5.1.2 Sources and Forms of CO<sub>2</sub>

For the purposes of this assessment, we assumed that CO<sub>2</sub> would be produced either by combustion of fossil fuels to generate electricity or by decarbonization of fossil fuels to produce hydrogen. Following generation, CO<sub>2</sub> would be separated from the waste stream to a purity of at least 90%. CO<sub>2</sub> would be transported as a supercritical fluid by pipeline to the nearest geologic formation suitable for sequestration. The technology, cost, and safety issues for transportation were not considered, but it is likely that the costs will be significant and must be included for any valid comparison among projects and ideas.

### 5.1.3 Capacity of Geologic Formations Suitable for Sequestration

Three principal types of geologic formations are widespread and have the potential to sequester large amounts of CO<sub>2</sub>:

- active and depleted oil and gas reservoirs
- deep brine formations, including saline formations
- deep coal seams and coal-bed methane formations

Other geologic formations such as marine and arctic hydrates, CO<sub>2</sub> reservoirs, mined cavities in salt domes, and oil shales may increase sequestration capacity or provide site-specific opportunities but are likely to be developed only after other sequestration targets are explored.

Maps showing the location of active and abandoned oil and gas fields, deep-saline aquifers, and coal formations are provided in Figs. 5.1 through 5.3. Figure 5.3 also shows the

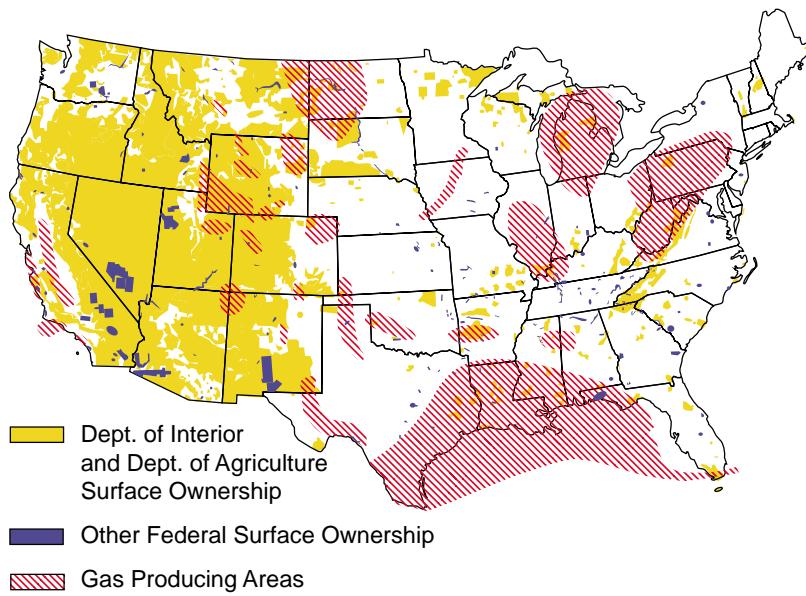
location of fossil-fuel-fired power plants. As illustrated, one or more of these formations is located within 500 km of each of the fossil-fuel-burning power plants in the United States.

Estimates of sequestration capacity for each of these types of geologic formations are provided in Table 5.1. While the range and uncertainty in these estimates are large, and in some cases costs were not considered when they were developed, they suggest that a significant opportunity exists for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in geologic formations. More specifically, in the near term, the United States has sufficient capacity, diversity, and broad geographic distribution of geological formations to pursue geologic sequestration confidently as a major component of a national carbon management strategy. What is less certain is the ultimate capacity that geologic formations can contribute, over the centuries ahead, to sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>. Only through experience and application of systematic screening criteria will we gain enough knowledge to assess the ultimate sequestration capacity of geologic formations.

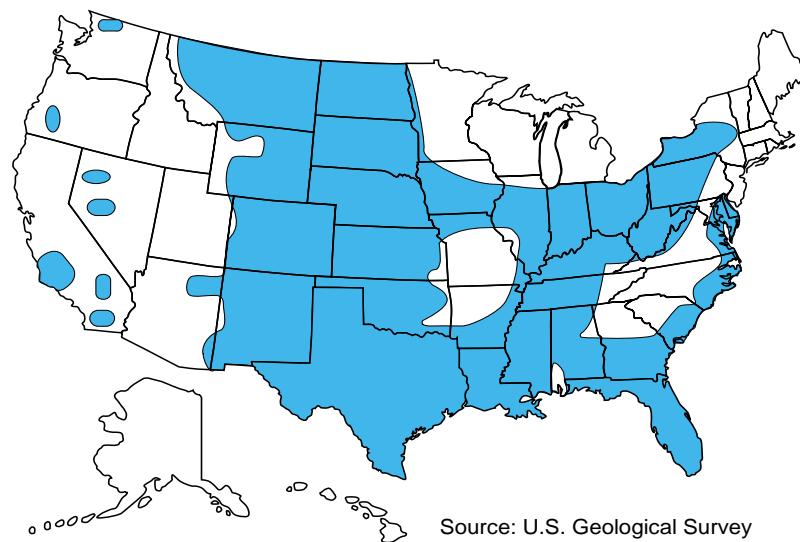
### 5.1.4 Drivers for R&D

Although the potential for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in geologic formations is promising, new knowledge, enhanced technology, and operational experience must be gained in a number of critical areas. The primary drivers for R&D include

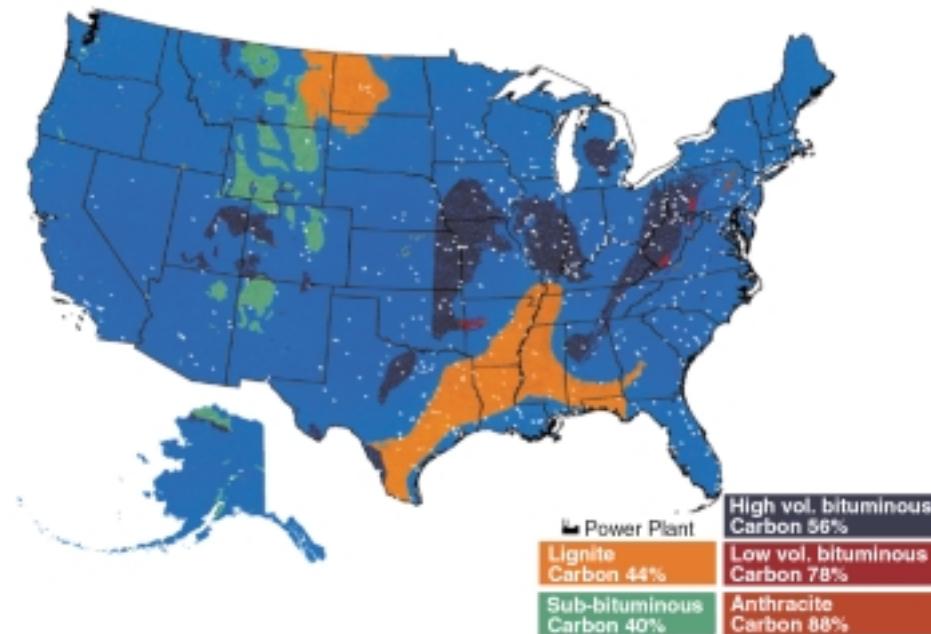
- developing reliable and cost-effective systems for monitoring CO<sub>2</sub> migration in the subsurface
- assessing and ensuring long-term stability of sequestered CO<sub>2</sub> (>100 years)



**Fig. 5.1. Location of gas-producing areas in the United States.**



**Fig. 5.2. Location of deep saline aquifers in the United States.**



**Fig. 5.3. Location of coal-producing areas in the United States and power plants.**

**Table 5.1. Range of estimates for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in U.S. geologic formations**

Geologic formation	Capacity estimate (GtC)	Source
Deep saline aquifers	1-130	Bergman and Winter 1995
Natural gas reservoirs in the United States	25 <sup>a</sup> 10 <sup>b</sup>	R. C. Burruss 1977
Active gas fields in the United States	0.3/year <sup>c</sup>	Baes et al. 1980
Enhanced coal-bed methane production in the United States	10	Stevens, Kuuskraa, and Spector 1998

<sup>a</sup>Assuming all gas capacity in the United States is used for sequestration.

<sup>b</sup>Assuming cumulative production of natural gas is replaced by CO<sub>2</sub>.

<sup>c</sup>Assuming that produced natural gas is replaced by CO<sub>2</sub> at the original reservoir pressure.

- reducing the cost and energy requirements of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in geologic formations
- gaining public acceptance for geologic sequestration

This chapter outlines R&D needs to address these issues and provides a comprehensive road map of the critical elements needed to achieve the potential of geologic sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>.

## 5.2 ASSESSMENT OF CURRENT CAPABILITIES AND R&D NEEDS

The current capabilities and needs were evaluated in the following context for each major type of geologic formation.

**Industrial experience:** What related industrial experience provides the scientific, technological, and

economic basis for evaluating sequestration in geologic formations?

**Beneficial uses of CO<sub>2</sub>:** Are there beneficial uses of CO<sub>2</sub> that may offset the cost of sequestration or provide an additional incentive for developing CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration technology?

**Regulatory, cost, and safety:** What is known about the regulatory framework, cost, and safety aspects of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in geologic formations?

**Operational drivers:** What are the operational aspects that must be understood to enable cost-effective and safe sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>? These include

- *CO<sub>2</sub> trapping mechanisms:* Which of the trapping mechanisms is most important? How much do we understand about them? What are the key unresolved issues?
- *Multiphase flow:* pathways in porous media, including reaction path modeling.
- *CO<sub>2</sub> waste stream characteristics:* What are the requirements for the CO<sub>2</sub> waste stream? How pure should it be? What are the effects of impurities on sequestration efficiency, cost, safety, and risk? What temperature and pressure are needed at the wellhead? What are the unresolved issues?
- *Formation characterization:* How can sequestration capacity and caprock integrity be assessed? What attributes are most important for assessing capacity and integrity?
- *Injection, drilling, and well completion technology:* How will CO<sub>2</sub> be injected into geologic formations? How will the wells be drilled and completed? Are there special material-handling issues for sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>?

- *Performance assessment:* What methods can be used to design, predict, and optimize sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> in geologic formations? What new issues must be addressed or new approaches will be required?
- *Monitoring:* How can migration of CO<sub>2</sub> in the subsurface be monitored? How can leakage be detected and quantified? How can we detect and monitor solubility and mineral trapping?

In the following sections, we first address these questions in the context of issues unique to each type of geologic formation. Next we address cross-cutting issues that are common to all formations.

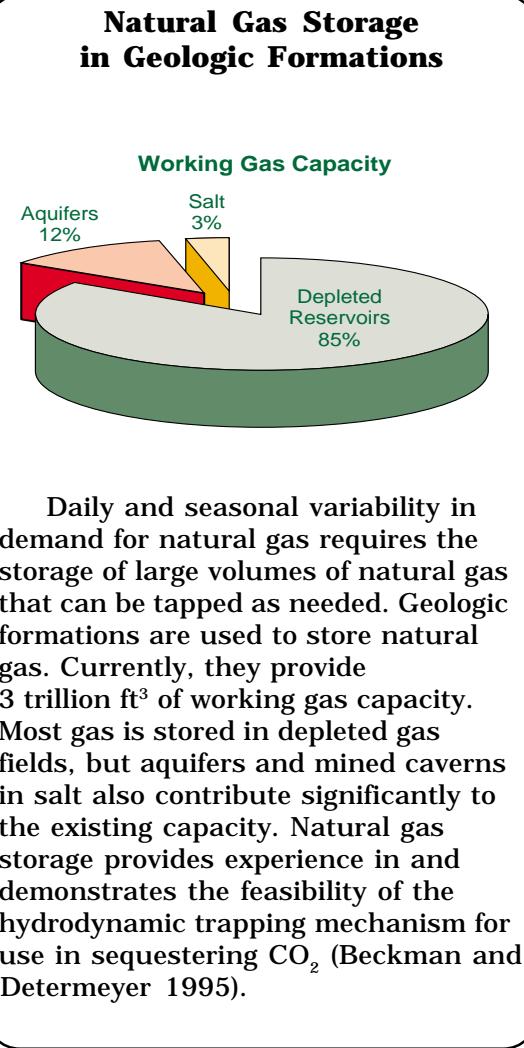
### 5.2.1 Opportunities for CO<sub>2</sub> Sequestration in Oil and Gas Formations

Oil and gas reservoirs are promising targets for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration for a number of reasons. First, oil and gas are present within structural or stratigraphic traps, and the oil and gas that originally accumulated in these traps did not escape over geological time. Thus these reservoirs should also contain CO<sub>2</sub>, as long as pathways to the surface or to adjacent formations are not created by overpressuring of the reservoir, by fracturing out of the reservoir at wells, or by leaks around wells. Second, the geologic structure and physical properties of most oil and gas fields have been characterized extensively. While additional characterization—particularly of the integrity and extent of the caprock—may be needed, the availability of existing data will lower the cost of implementing CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration projects. Finally, very sophisticated computer models have been developed in the oil and gas industry to predict displacement behavior and trapping of

CO<sub>2</sub> for EOR. These models take into account the flow of oil, gas, and brine in three dimensions; phase behavior and CO<sub>2</sub> solubility in oil and brine; and the spatial variation of reservoir properties, to the extent it is known. These same processes are responsible for hydrodynamic and solubility trapping of CO<sub>2</sub> (see sidebar on natural gas storage).

The first and most viable option for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration is to build upon the enormous experience of the oil and gas industry in EOR. Currently, about 80% of commercially used CO<sub>2</sub> is for EOR purposes. The technology for CO<sub>2</sub> injection is commercially proven and can be implemented without much difficulty (see sidebar on auxiliary benefits of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration). EOR has the benefit of sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> while increasing production from active oil fields. In the long term, the volume of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestered as part of EOR projects may not be comparatively large, but valuable operational experience can be gained that will benefit geologic sequestration in other types of formations.

CO<sub>2</sub> could be sequestered in two types of natural gas fields: (1) abandoned fields and (2) depleted but still active fields where gas recovery could be enhanced by CO<sub>2</sub> injection. The map in Fig. 5.1 suggests that, except for the North Central and Atlantic Coastal states, abandoned gas fields are present in many parts of the United States. Deciding which abandoned gas fields could best be used in a CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration program would require a comprehensive review of the current conditions in abandoned fields and the economics of their rehabilitation. This would be a major program of investigation, but the necessary technology to carry out such a review is available and well known to the gas



industry. Locating and sealing abandoned wells may be an ongoing challenge for sequestration in abandoned gas fields.

In nearly depleted gas fields, it is possible that injection could prolong the economic life of the field by maintaining reservoir pressures longer than would otherwise be possible. However, enhancing gas production through injection of another kind of gas (e.g., CO<sub>2</sub>) while the field continues to operate has not been pursued in the United States. Therefore, pilot tests augmented with laboratory and modeling studies will be needed to develop this technology. Some

## **CO<sub>2</sub> Sequestration in Geological Formations Can Have Auxiliary Benefits**

Recovering residual oil through the injection of CO<sub>2</sub> into oil reservoirs began on a large scale in 1972 in Texas. Carbon dioxide enhances oil production by two primary mechanisms. First, CO<sub>2</sub> gas displaces oil and brine, which are subsequently pumped from the wells. Second, injected CO<sub>2</sub> dissolves in the oil, leading to a reduction in viscosity and swelling of the oil, making it flow more easily and leading to enhanced production. The CO<sub>2</sub> used for EOR usually comes from naturally occurring CO<sub>2</sub>-filled reservoirs. Pipelines carry CO<sub>2</sub> from its natural reservoirs to the oil field, where it is injected. Eventually, some of the injected CO<sub>2</sub> is produced along with the oil. At the surface, it is separated and injected back into the oil reservoir. EOR through CO<sub>2</sub> injection provides one example of the beneficial uses of CO<sub>2</sub> and operational experience to guide CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration.

In the future, CO<sub>2</sub> sequestered from power plants can be used to enhance coal-bed methane production. A pilot program of CO<sub>2</sub>-assisted coal-bed methane production in the San Juan Basin, New Mexico, has been under way since 1996. This project, the Allison Unit Pilot run by Burlington Resources, is injecting 4 million ft<sup>3</sup>/day of pipeline-fed CO<sub>2</sub> from a natural source into a system of nine injection wells located in the San Juan Basin. Preliminary results indicate that full-field development of this process could boost recovery of in-place methane by about 75%.

experience may be gained from Gaz de France, which for the past 10 to 15 years has been converting gas storage projects to operate with two kinds of gas: natural gas that is cyclically injected and withdrawn as needed and a low-cost cushion gas. A similar concept may be developed for combining CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration with enhanced natural gas production from depleted fields.

Table 5.2 lists the specific R&D needs for advancing the technology and acceptability of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in oil and gas reservoirs. Needs are divided into near-, mid-, and long-term efforts that together provide a comprehensive set of actions that will create a set of sequestration options.

### **5.2.2 CO<sub>2</sub> Sequestration in Brine Formations**

Brine formations are the most common fluid reservoirs in the subsurface, and

large-volume formations are available practically anywhere. For sequestration, deep (>2000 ft) formations that are not in current use are the most logical targets. As shown in Fig. 5.2, suitable deep formations, which are usually filled with brackish or saline water, are located across most of the United States. Brine formations have the largest potential capacity and are the most challenging of the potential sequestration options.

Although there is little practical experience with CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in brine formations, aquifer storage of natural gas provides a foundation of experience for identifying important technical issues. In addition, CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in aquifers has been discussed in the technical literature since the early 1990s. Operational experience from aquifer gas storage and these studies indicate that from an engineering perspective, the main issues for CO<sub>2</sub> disposal in aquifers

Table 5.2. R&D priorities for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in oil and gas fields

Near-term R&D (<2005)	Mid-term R&D (2005-2010)	Long-term R&D (>2010)
Understand the importance of geochemical reactions on <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- seal integrity</li> <li>- long-term sequestration</li> <li>- subsidence</li> <li>- long-term oil recovery</li> </ul>	Complete assessment of monitoring methods for monitoring CO <sub>2</sub> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Enhance resolution of seismic monitoring method</li> <li>- Develop verification and monitoring capabilities for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in EOR applications</li> <li>- Evaluate and develop electrical methods for CO<sub>2</sub> monitoring</li> <li>- Evaluate and develop methods for monitoring solubility and mineral mapping</li> </ul>	Obtain cost and performance data from a full-scale integrated demonstration of CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration from a power plant in a depleted or abandoned gas field
Develop coupled H-M-C-T (hydrologic, mechanical, chemical, thermal) simulators for evaluating short- and long-term sequestration efficiency and safety	Conduct a small-scale pilot for improved gas recovery from a depleted gas field by CO <sub>2</sub> injection	Develop methods to increase sequestration efficiency from current estimates (1-10% pore volume) to greater than 50%
Establish screening criteria for selecting sequestration sites in oil and gas fields <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Highest priority should be given to EOR projects</li> <li>- Next highest priority to abandoned gas fields</li> <li>- Match CO<sub>2</sub> generators to potential sequestration sites</li> </ul>	Implement pilot test for co-optimization of CO <sub>2</sub> EOR and sequestration	
Assess and develop methods for detection of abandoned wells in oil and gas fields		

relate to (1) the disposal rate of CO<sub>2</sub>; (2) the available storage capacity (ultimate CO<sub>2</sub> inventory); (3) the presence of a caprock of low permeability, and potential CO<sub>2</sub> leakage through imperfect confinement; (4) identification and characterization of suitable aquifer formations and caprock structures; (5) uncertainty due to incomplete knowledge of subsurface conditions and processes; and (6) corrosion resistance of materials to be used in

injection wells and associated facilities.

The main trapping process affecting CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in aquifers is well understood, at least in a generic sense. Injection of CO<sub>2</sub> into a water-filled formation results in immiscible displacement of an brine phase by a less dense and less viscous gas phase. Because CO<sub>2</sub> is soluble in water, some of the CO<sub>2</sub> will dissolve in the water. The thermophysical properties of water

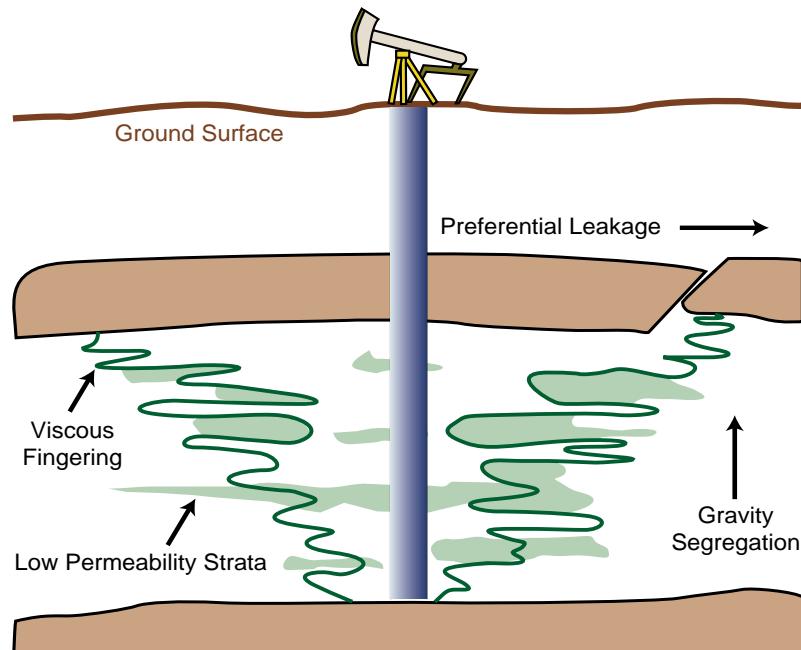
and  $\text{CO}_2$  that determine flow behavior—such as density, viscosity, and solubility—are well known, as is their dependence on pressure, temperature, and salinity. Equilibrium solubility of  $\text{CO}_2$  in water decreases by about a factor of 6 between 10 and 150°C, and it decreases with aquifer salinity (“salting out”). The rate at which gaseous  $\text{CO}_2$  will dissolve in water depends on size and shape of the gas–water interfaces and may be subject to considerable uncertainty.

Uptake of  $\text{CO}_2$  by water may be increased beyond what can be attributed to physical solubility by interactions with carbonate minerals. Minerals such as calcite would be dissolved in response to  $\text{CO}_2$  injection. A considerably larger increase in storage capacity is possible from heterogeneous reactions with aluminosilicates (“mineral trapping”). There are indications that kinetics of reactions with carbonates may be fast,

while kinetics of silicate interactions appear to be very slow, requiring tens or perhaps hundreds of years for substantial reaction progress.

Because  $\text{CO}_2$  is considerably less dense and viscous than water,  $\text{CO}_2$  injection into aquifers will be prone to hydrodynamic instabilities. The viscosity contrasts will lead to viscous fingering, and the density contrast will lead to gravity segregation. The specifics of each will depend on the spatial distribution of permeability at the actual site and on injection rates (Fig. 5.4). The effect of these complexities may be important in controlling the relative importance of the three primary trapping mechanisms. Detailed characterization of these complexities will be difficult, but it may not be necessary for achieving engineering objectives.

Two key issues distinguish  $\text{CO}_2$  sequestration in aquifers from



**Fig. 5.4. Gravity segregation, viscous fingering, heterogeneity, and preferential flow through faulted cap rocks could influence  $\text{CO}_2$  migration in the subsurface.**

sequestration in oil and gas reservoirs. First, oil and gas reservoirs occur by virtue of the presence of a structural or stratigraphic trap. This same trap is likely to retain CO<sub>2</sub>. Identification of such effective traps may be more difficult in brine formations and may require new approaches for establishing the integrity and extent of a caprock. Second, injection of CO<sub>2</sub> into an brine formation is unlikely to be accompanied by removal of water from the formation. (In the case of EOR, oil is simultaneously withdrawn while CO<sub>2</sub> is injected.) Injection will therefore lead to an increase in formation pressure over a large area. Whether or to what extent large-scale pressurization will affect caprock integrity, cause land surface deformation, and induce seismicity must be better understood to design safe and effective sequestration.

A final issue concerning sequestration in brine formations is the acceptable leakage rate from the formation to overlying strata. Leakage of CO<sub>2</sub> may not pose a safety hazard and may, in some cases, be desirable if leakage to overlying units increases the opportunity for enhanced solubility or mineral trapping. Evaluating general and site-specific acceptable leakage rates should be part of a long-term strategy for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in brine formations.

Table 5.3 lists the specific R&D needs for advancing the technology and acceptability of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in brine formations. Needs are divided into near-, mid-, and long-term efforts that together provide a comprehensive set of actions that will create a set of sequestration options.

### 5.2.3 Opportunities for CO<sub>2</sub> Sequestration in Coal Formations

Coal formations provide an opportunity to simultaneously sequester CO<sub>2</sub> and increase the production of natural gas. Methane production from deep unmineable coal beds can be enhanced by injecting CO<sub>2</sub> into coal formations, where the adsorption of CO<sub>2</sub> causes the desorption of methane. This process has the potential to sequester large volumes of CO<sub>2</sub> while improving the efficiency and profitability of commercial natural gas operations (see sidebar on auxiliary benefits of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration).

This method for enhancing coal-bed methane production is currently being tested at two pilot demonstration sites in North America. At one pilot production field in the San Juan Basin (New Mexico and Colorado), the operator has injected 3 million ft<sup>3</sup>/day of CO<sub>2</sub> through four injection wells during a 3-year period. Preliminary results indicate that full-field development of this process could boost recovery of in-place methane by about 75%. The key technical and commercial criteria for successful application of this concept include (1) favorable geology such as thick, gas-saturated coal seams, buried at suitable depths and located in simple structural settings, which have sufficient permeability; (2) CO<sub>2</sub> availability, such as low-cost potential supplies of CO<sub>2</sub>, either from naturally occurring reservoirs or from anthropogenic sources such as power-plant flue gas; and (3) gas demand, which includes an efficient market for utilization of methane, including adequate pipeline infrastructure, long-term end-users, and favorable wellhead gas prices.

**Table 5.3. R&D priorities for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in brine formations**

Near-term R&D (<2005)	Mid-term R&D (2005-2010)	Long-term R&D (>2010)
Develop a small-scale pilot test of CO <sub>2</sub> into a shallow <3000-ft-deep aquifer or facility for brine formation	Understand the kinetics of CO <sub>2</sub> dissolution and mineral trapping	Obtain cost and performance data from a full-scale integrated demonstration of CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration from a power plant in moderate depth (2000-5000 ft) saline formation
Develop coupled H-M-C-T (hydrologic, mechanical, chemical, thermal) simulators for evaluating short and long-term sequestration efficiency and safety	Understand how pressure buildup due to CO <sub>2</sub> injection influences caprock integrity	Develop technologies to mitigate or control CO <sub>2</sub> leaks
Establish screening criteria for selecting sequestration sites in aqueous formations. Match CO <sub>2</sub> generators to potential sequestration sites using screening criteria	Understand reservoir characteristics to minimize adverse effects on caprock integrity during CO <sub>2</sub> injection	Develop advanced concepts and technologies for improving sequestration efficiency
Evaluate and develop, if needed, methods for evaluating the integrity of caprocks. Develop a safety analysis and technical strategy for the concept of an "allowable" leakage rate	Use natural CO <sub>2</sub> reservoirs to understand how long-term mineral trapping may contribute to permanent sequestration	Develop remote or other cost-effective methods for monitoring CO <sub>2</sub> leaks
Develop methods for monitoring migration of CO <sub>2</sub> and its byproducts in the subsurface using a combination of hydrologic, seismic, tracer, and mechanical methods (e.g., tilt measurements)	Evaluate the potential for induced seismicity associated with CO <sub>2</sub> injection	

A second pilot demonstration of this concept is located in Alberta, Canada. The Alberta project is testing a process of injecting CO<sub>2</sub> into one of Alberta's deep unmineable coal beds. Many of Alberta's coal deposits are rich in methane. Preliminary computer modeling suggests that selected techniques for fracturing the coals around wells could be improved with a substantial increase in primary methane. The initial field activities consist of a single well test, designed to measure reservoir properties, increase primary production by an effective fracturing technique, and evaluate CO<sub>2</sub>-enhanced methane recovery. A detailed technical

assessment will follow the field test in early 1999.

Coal-bearing strata include both thin and thick coal seams and interlayered sandstones, siltstones, and shales; and they are usually saturated with water. This complex interlayered formation defines the coal-bed reservoir interval. Coal-bed stratigraphy and the structure/porosity/permeability of interlayered and overlying strata are site-specific and will need to be individually characterized. Unlike in oil and gas reservoirs, however, the methane in coal beds is retained by adsorption rather than by trapping beneath an impermeable overlying/

lateral seal. Therefore, the nature of overlying and adjacent strata becomes an important issue for retention of the CO<sub>2</sub> within the coal-bed reservoir interval until it is adsorbed, and for retention of the displaced methane until it can be withdrawn. Techniques to verify the capacity, stability, and permanence of CO<sub>2</sub> storage in coal-bed reservoir intervals are needed.

Table 5.4 lists the specific R&D needs for advancing the technology and acceptability of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in coal formations. Needs are divided into near-, mid-, and long-term efforts that together provide a comprehensive set of actions that will create a set of sequestration options.

### 5.3 CROSS-CUTTING R&D NEEDS FOR GEOLOGIC FORMATIONS

Operational requirements and R&D needs for sequestration in each of the three types of geologic formations were assessed independently. Not unexpectedly, needs common to all formations emerged and are summarized in this section. There are significant differences, however, in the maturity of technology and scientific understanding of the processes underpinning CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in different types of geologic formations. Figure 5.5 highlights these similarities and differences.

A critical cross-cutting R&D need is to develop a comprehensive monitoring and modeling capability that not only focuses on technical issues, but also has as a principal goal gaining public confidence in geologic sequestration. Without public confidence, progress on technical issues will be of limited impact. Moreover, regulatory oversight bodies, CO<sub>2</sub> generators, and sequestration site operators will need

to come to agreement about protocols for assessment, evaluation, and monitoring. A strong scientific foundation is critical to the success of the geologic sequestration option.

#### 5.3.1 CO<sub>2</sub> Trapping Mechanisms

Hydrodynamic and solubility processes responsible for trapping CO<sub>2</sub> in geologic formations are reasonably well understood, especially over the time frame associated with EOR (<20 years). Mineral trapping (i.e., reactions relying on the chemical reactions between the gas/liquid and solid phases) is less well understood, particularly with regard to how fast these reactions occur. Reactions between CO<sub>2</sub> and the microbial communities present in deep geologic formations are also poorly understood. Needs for new knowledge include

- hydrodynamics of CO<sub>2</sub> migration in heterogeneous formations (e.g., sweep efficiency, preferential flow, and leakage rates)
- CO<sub>2</sub> dissolution kinetics
- mineral trapping kinetics
- microbial interactions with CO<sub>2</sub>
- influence of stress changes on caprock and formation integrity
- nonlinear feedback processes affecting confinement (e.g., mineral dissolution and precipitation that change rock permeability)
- CO<sub>2</sub>-methane adsorption/exchange behavior on organic substrates

#### 5.3.2 CO<sub>2</sub> Waste Stream Characteristics

A high-purity (>90% CO<sub>2</sub>), dry waste stream is the most desirable for sequestration in geological formations, based largely on considerations about volume reduction, costs for gas compression, and CO<sub>2</sub> handling issues (e.g., corrosion). Scoping studies are

**Table 5.4. R&D priorities for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in coal formations**

Near-term R&D (<2005)	Mid-term R&D (2005-2010)	Long-term R&D (>2010)
Physical and chemical properties of coal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Adsorption/desorption of CO<sub>2</sub></li> <li>- Interaction with SO<sub>x</sub> and NO<sub>x</sub></li> <li>- Absolute and relative permeability</li> <li>- Swelling behavior from CO<sub>2</sub> absorption</li> </ul>	Develop H-C-M-T modeling tools for simultaneous fluid flow, gas adsorption-desorption, deformation and gas-flow dynamics in coal-bed reservoir intervals	Obtain cost and performance data from a full-scale integrated demonstration of methane production, power generation, and CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration
Develop reservoir screening criteria for assessment purposes. Match CO <sub>2</sub> generators to potential sequestration sites using screening criteria	Conduct a pilot test of flue gas injection to evaluate ability of CO <sub>2</sub> to adsorb to the coal surface, displacing the methane, while the nitrogen sweeps the methane	Develop technologies and methods for injection and production in low-permeability and deep formations
	Develop injection engineering and design techniques for optimizing CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration and methane production in coal beds	Test CO <sub>2</sub> , methane, coal interactions in water-saturated intervals to evaluate whether dewatering is needed prior to CO <sub>2</sub> injection
	Develop methods for monitoring migration of CO <sub>2</sub> and its byproducts using a combination of hydrologic, seismic, tracer, and mechanical methods	Evaluate the impact of microbial activity on the long-term fate of CO <sub>2</sub> in coal formations

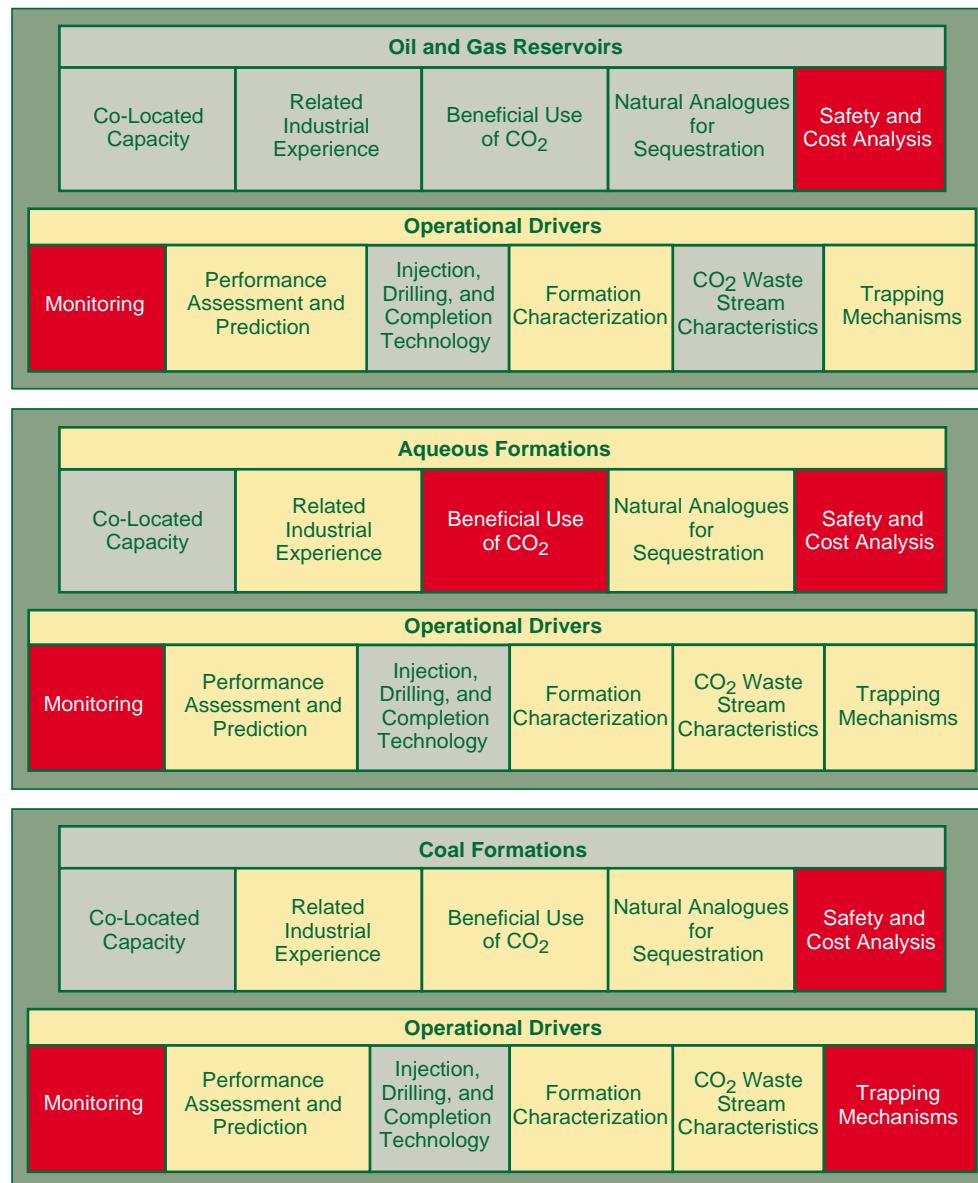
needed to evaluate beneficial or detrimental effects of waste stream characteristics on trapping efficiency, economics, and safety of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration. Examples of research needs include

- analysis of the effect of waste stream characteristics on hydrodynamic, solubility, and mineral trapping/adsorption efficiency
- cost/benefit analysis for determining optimal CO<sub>2</sub> purity
- evaluation of the influence of other “contaminants” (e.g., mercury) on the safety and regulatory constraints on CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration

### 5.3.3 Formation Characterization

Ongoing efforts related to oil and gas production and groundwater remediation have led to development of hydraulic, geophysical imaging, and geostatistical techniques for characterizing the heterogeneity of sedimentary and fractured geological formations. These will be needed to predict the sweep efficiency in brine formations. Additional needs specific to sequestration include

- caprock characterization
- identification of leakage paths and rates
- evaluation of hydrologic isolation through the use of isotopic and other chemical analyses



**Fig. 5.5. Comparative evaluation of the technological and scientific maturity of operational requirements for sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> in geologic formations.** Gray signifies that the technology and scientific understanding are mature and ready to go. White indicates that some experience base is available but more experience is needed to evaluate and improve sequestration options. Black signifies that key processes, parameters, technologies, and an understanding of fundamental processes must improve significantly to achieve our vision for geological sequestration.

- identification of mineral assemblages that influence mineral trapping and caprock integrity
- water encroachment in dewatered formations
- reservoir compartmentalization
- initial conditions and evolution of joints and fracture networks from stress and chemically induced deformation

### 5.3.4 Injection, Drilling, and Well Completion Technology

Injection, drilling, and completion technology for the oil and gas industry has evolved to a highly sophisticated state so that it is possible to drill and complete vertical, slanted, and horizontal wells in deep formations and wells with multiple completions, as well as to handle corrosive fluids. Optimization of these for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration may require methods of optimizing sequestration efficiency. The engineering and cost-related issues of transportation and compression of CO<sub>2</sub> have not been considered here but will need to be added, along with other engineering issues such as effects of contaminants in the CO<sub>2</sub> stream, before large-scale testing occurs. Potential needs include

- methods of injecting additives for controlling the mobility of CO<sub>2</sub>
- advanced well completion technology for enhancing sweep efficiency
- addition of chemical or biological additives for enhancing mineral trapping
- development and emplacement of in situ sensors for monitoring CO<sub>2</sub> migration
- injection technologies to limit CO<sub>2</sub> migration beyond “spill-points” and through leaks in the caprock

### 5.3.5 Performance Assessment

Multiphase, multicomponent computer simulators of subsurface fluid flow have been developed for oil and gas reservoirs, natural gas storage, groundwater resource management, and groundwater remediation. The accuracy of these simulators depends heavily on site- and project-specific calibration and improves by continual

parameter adjustment over the project lifetime. Developing reliable tools for predicting, assessing, and optimizing CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration will require a similar level of experience under actual operating conditions. Additional needs specific to CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration include

- reactive chemical transport codes with precipitation-dissolution and adsorption-desorption kinetics and
- coupled H-C-M (hydrological-chemical-mechanical) models for long-term behavior and assessment of induced micro-seismicity.

### 5.3.6 Monitoring

Monitoring of CO<sub>2</sub> migration in the subsurface is needed for large-scale sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>. Tracking of the distribution of trapped CO<sub>2</sub> in the gaseous, dissolved, and solid phases is needed for performance confirmation, leak detection, and regulatory oversight. Existing monitoring methods include well testing and pressure monitoring; tracers and chemical sampling; and surface and borehole seismic, electromagnetic, and geomechanical methods such as tiltmeters. The spatial and temporal resolution of these methods is unlikely to be sufficient for performance confirmation and leak detection. Needs include

- high-resolution mapping techniques for tracking migration of sequestered CO<sub>2</sub> and its byproducts
- deformation and microseismicity monitoring
- remote sensing for CO<sub>2</sub> leaks and land surface deformation

### 5.3.7 Cross-Cutting Fundamental Research Needs

As the individual road maps for these geologic formations were developed, several cross-cutting fundamental research needs emerged. New and improved understanding of these issues will lead to safer and more cost-effective CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration. An expanded discussion of fundamental research needs can be found in Dove et al.

#### **Multiphase transport in heterogeneous and deformable media:**

Gravity segregation, viscous fingering, and preferential flow along high-permeability pathways will play a dominant role in CO<sub>2</sub> migration in the subsurface. These difficulties will be compounded by deformation accompanying adsorption-desorption processes and precipitation-dissolution processes. A better fundamental understanding is needed to predict migration of CO<sub>2</sub> and to optimize sweep efficiency in geologic formations.

**Phase behavior of CO<sub>2</sub>/petroleum/water/solid systems:** The partitioning of CO<sub>2</sub> between the brine, oil, gas, and solid phases is critical to understanding trapping mechanisms, as well as to predicting CO<sub>2</sub>-enhanced oil recovery from petroleum formations and enhanced gas recovery from coal formations. Better understanding of the solid/fluid partitioning, particularly, is needed for optimizing enhanced gas recovery from coal-bed methane projects.

**CO<sub>2</sub> dissolution and reaction kinetics:** Although the principal reaction pathways between CO<sub>2</sub> and sedimentary formations are relatively well understood (e.g., reactions of feldspars with acid to form calcite, dolomite,

siderite and clay; dissolution of carbonate minerals), the kinetics of CO<sub>2</sub> dissolution in the liquid phase and subsequent rock-water reactions are slow and poorly understood. If conversion of CO<sub>2</sub> to these stable mineral phases is to be an important component of sequestration in brine formations, understanding of the kinetics of these reactions and the processes controlling them is essential.

#### **Coupled H-M-C-T (hydrologic-mechanical-chemical-thermal) processes and modeling:**

Accurately predicting, assessing, optimizing, and confirming the performance of a sequestration project requires an accurate coupled model of all of the processes that influence repository performance and safety. While much experience in subsurface simulation has been gained from the oil and gas industry and from the groundwater management and remediation industries, other experience shows that the quality of our predictions depends strongly on having a simulator geared toward the specific application. Simulators tailored to the specific physical and chemical processes important for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration must be developed, tested, calibrated, and refined through operational experience.

#### **Micromechanics and deformation modeling:**

Production of oil and gas from geologic formations and subsequent sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> into geologic formations will be accompanied by deformation of the reservoir formation. The influence of deformation on the hydraulic properties of the formation and integrity of the caprock must be better understood. In brine formations, unlike in oil and gas reservoirs where injection of CO<sub>2</sub> is accompanied by

withdrawal of fluids, deformation is likely to be widespread as the pressure builds in the formation. The effects of deformation on the integrity of the caprock and its ability to induce seismic events must be better understood to ensure the long-term stability and safety of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration.

**High-resolution geophysical imaging:** High-resolution geophysical imaging offers the best potential for cost-effective monitoring of the migration and byproduct formation of CO<sub>2</sub> in subsurface environments. Three-dimensional and four-dimensional (time-lapse) images of geologic structures and pore fluids can be created with surface, surface-to-borehole, and cross-borehole techniques. The resolution needs to be improved if these methods are to be relied on to detect caprock leakage, formation of viscous fingers, and preferential pathways.

#### 5.4 ADVANCED CONCEPTS FOR SEQUESTRATION IN GEOLOGIC FORMATIONS

The sequestration techniques described draw heavily from current approaches used by industry for production of oil, gas, and coal-bed methane and for storage of natural gas. Although these techniques provide reasonable near-term options for sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>, enhanced technology for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in geologic formations may significantly decrease costs, increase capacity, enhance safety, or increase the beneficial uses of CO<sub>2</sub> injection. Such enhanced technologies include the following:

- **Enhanced mineral trapping with catalysts or other chemical**

**additives.** Conversion of CO<sub>2</sub> to stable carbonate minerals is expected to be very slow under the current scenarios envisioned for sequestration in geologic formations. Identification of chemical or biological additives that increase reaction rates could enhance the effectiveness of mineral trapping.

- **Sequestration in composite formations.**

Multilayer formations, all with imperfect caprocks, may result in highly dispersed plumes of CO<sub>2</sub>. The greater the degree of dispersion, the greater the opportunity for efficient solubility and mineral trapping. Developing design criteria that account for acceptable leakage across multilayer formations could increase the geographic distribution and capacity of geologic formations for sequestering CO<sub>2</sub>.

- **Microbial conversion of CO<sub>2</sub> to methane.**

Microorganisms that generate methane from CO<sub>2</sub> (methanogens) are known to exist in a wide variety of oxygen-depleted natural environments. If sequestration sites could be chosen to take advantage of this naturally occurring process, an underground “methane factory” could be created. Alternatively, additives that stimulate methanogenesis could be injected along with CO<sub>2</sub> to promote methane formation.

- **Rejuvenation of depleted oil reservoirs.**

Injection of CO<sub>2</sub> into active oil reservoirs is a widely practiced EOR technique. However, even after the EOR process is no longer economically feasible, as much as 50% of the original oil in place may be left underground. CO<sub>2</sub>

injection, followed by a quiescent period during which gravity drainage and gas cap formation redistribute the gas and liquid phases, may rejuvenate an oil formation that can no longer produce economically. The injected CO<sub>2</sub> is sequestered in the geological formation.

- **CO<sub>2</sub>-enhanced production of methane hydrates:** Methane hydrates in ocean sediments and permafrost hold tremendous reserves of natural gas. Producing gas from these formations remains a challenge because of their complex structure, mechanical properties, and the thermodynamic behavior of hydrates. CO<sub>2</sub> injection into methane hydrate formations may enhance production while simultaneously sequestering CO<sub>2</sub>.

## 5.5 OVERALL R&D PRIORITIES

Geologic sequestration is unique among the options for sequestration of

CO<sub>2</sub> because of the extensive experience from related industries: oil and gas production, groundwater resource management, and groundwater remediation. Nevertheless, a number of critical needs must be addressed to make geologic formation a cost-competitive and safe option for sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>. These have been addressed in detail in the previous sections of the report. Figure 5.6 provides synthesis and a timeline for a key set of actions needed to accelerate development of a set of options for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in geologic formations. Short-term needs feed into longer term projects. Together these will provide a realistic assessment and cost and performance data for large-scale sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> in geologic formations. The paragraphs below elaborate on these key actions.

1. Fundamental research is needed to aid understanding of critical processes and parameters that will contribute to safe and effective CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration.

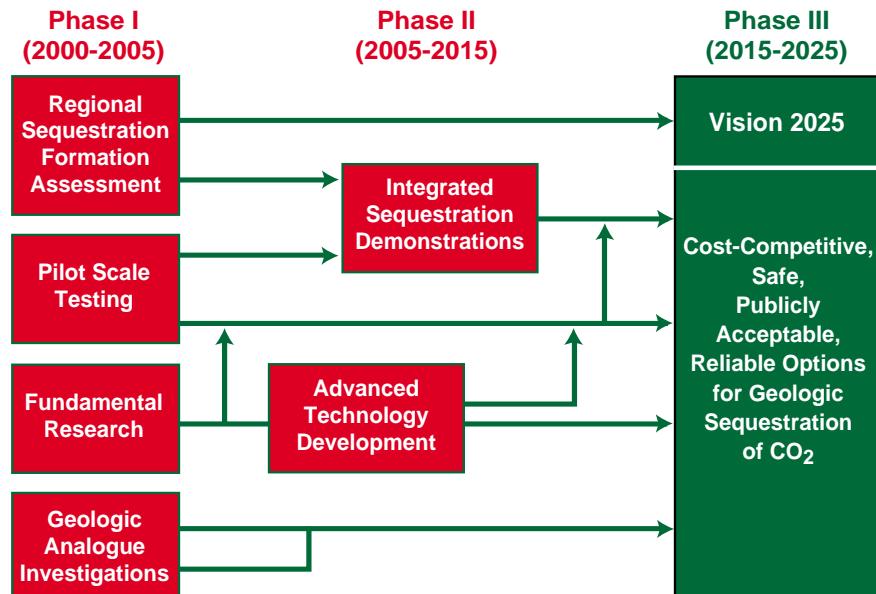


Fig. 5.6. Key elements of the R&D road map for sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> in geologic formations.

2. There must be a reliable assessment of geologic formations available for sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> from each of the major power-generating regions of the United States. Screening criteria for choosing suitable options must be developed in partnership with industry, the scientific community, the public, and regulatory oversight agencies.
3. Pilot tests of geologic sequestration conducted early would help develop cost and performance data and help prioritize future R&D needs. These pilot tests should be designed and conducted with sufficient monitoring, modeling, and performance assessment to enable quantitative evaluation of the processes responsible for geologic sequestration.
4. Geologic analogues, such as CO<sub>2</sub> reservoirs and CO<sub>2</sub>-rich aquifers, should be studied to determine the factors leading to caprock integrity and mineral-trapping mechanisms.
5. Advanced technologies are needed for (1) increasing the volume of the geologic formation filled by CO<sub>2</sub>, (2) creating stable long-term sinks (stable mineral assemblages), (3) increasing solubility and perhaps diluting CO<sub>2</sub> to acceptable levels, and (4) tracking migration of CO<sub>2</sub> in the subsurface.
6. Full-scale demonstration projects, performed in partnership with industry, that integrate CO<sub>2</sub> separation and transportation with geologic sequestration are needed to provide cost, safety, and performance data on geologic sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>.

The road map effort discussed here included a number of working group meetings and extensive external review of the draft by stakeholders. The consensus of these groups was that all

of the potential formations for geologic sequestration should be investigated simultaneously. The stakeholder groups also pointed out that the geologic formations about which we know the most, namely oil and gas reservoirs, are probably the first candidates for pilot testing and implementation of sequestration. The highest priority for fundamental research to expand our current understanding, however, should be the reservoirs about which we know the least, namely brine and coal-bed formations. In addition, cross-cutting research on methods to predict and monitor the performance and safety of CO<sub>2</sub> injection will be essential components of the research effort.

It was also recommended that the R&D program be organized to take advantage of the common aspects of sequestration among all formation types. This approach would maximize synergy and minimize overlap. For example, all of the formations contain brine; these should be studied as a system rather than as particular types of formations. Similarly, monitoring methods before, during, and after injection are likely to be similar for each formation type and should be jointly developed and tested. Finally, engineering studies that provide technology assessment, cost/benefit analyses, and technology enhancements can be shared.

## 5.6 WORKS CONSULTED

Ayers, W. B., and B. S. Kelso 1989. "Knowledge of Methane Potential for Coalbed Resources Grows, but Needs More Study," *Oil & Gas Journal*, (October 23): 64-7.

Bachu S., W. D. Gunter, and E. H. Perkins 1994. "Aquifer Disposal of CO<sub>2</sub>:

Hydrodynamic and Mineral Trapping," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 35: 269-79.

Baes, C. F., Jr., S. E. Beall, and D. W. Lee 1980. "The Collection, Disposal and Storage of Carbon Dioxide" pp. 495-519 in *Interactions of Energy and Climate*, W. Bach, J. Pankrath, and J. Williams, eds., D. Reidel Publishing.

Battistelli, A., C. Calore, and K. Pruess 1997. "The Simulator TOUGH2/EWASG for Modeling Geothermal Reservoirs with Brines and Non-Condensable Gas," *Geothermics*, 26 (4): 437-64.

Bayles, G. A., and A. A. Reznik 1986. *An Evaluation of the Effect of Methane Adsorption/Desorption in Well Tests on Coalbeds*, Chemical and Petroleum Engineering Department, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, Pa. (Work performed for DOE under contract DE-AH-85MC03193.)

Beckman, K. L., and P. L. Determeyer 1995. *Natural Gas Storage: Historical Developments and Expected Evolution*, GRI-95/0214, available at [www.gri.org/toplevel.html](http://www.gri.org/toplevel.html).

Bell, G. J., and K. C. Rakop 1986. "Hysteresis of Methane/Coal Sorption Isotherms," SPE 15454, in *Proceedings of the 61st Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition of the Society of Petroleum Engineers*, New Orleans, La., October 5-8, 1986.

Bergman P. D., and E. M. Winter 1995. "Disposal of Carbon Dioxide in Aquifers in the U.S.," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 36: 523-6.

Bergman P. D., E. M. Winter, and Z. Y. Chen 1997. "Disposal of CO<sub>2</sub> in Depleted Oil and Gas Reservoirs," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 38: suppl. pp. S211-S216.

Briggs, H., and R. P. Sinha 1933. "Expansion and Contraction of Coal Caused Respectively by the Sorption and Discharge of Gas," *Proceedings Roy. Soc. of Edinburgh*, 53: 48-53.

Bumb, A. C., and C. R. McKee 1988. "Gas-well Testing in the Presence of Desorption for Coalbed Methane and Devonian Shale," *SPE Formation Evaluation*, 3(1): 179-85.

Burruss, R. C. 1977. *Analysis of Phase Equilibria in C-O-H-S Fluid Inclusions*, Mineral. Assoc. Of Canada Short Course Handbook 6, pp. 39-74.

Butt, D. P., K. S. Lackner, C. H. Wendt, S. D. Conzone, H. Kung, Y. C. Lu, and J. K. Bremser 1996. "Kinetics of Thermal Dehydroxylation and Carbonation of Magnesium Hydroxide," *J. Am. Ceram. Soc.*, 79: 1892-8.

Byrer, C. W., and H. D. Guthrie 1997. "Assessment of World Coal Resources for Carbon Dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) Storage Potential— While Enhancing Potential for Coalbed Methane," pp. 573-76 in *Greenhouse Gas Mitigation, Technologies for Activities Implemented Jointly, Proceedings of Technologies for Activities Implemented Jointly*, held in Vancouver, Canada, May 26-29, P. W. F. Reimer, A. Y. Smith, and K. V. Thambimuthu, eds., Elsevier, Amsterdam, The Netherlands.

Byrer, C. W., and H. D. Guthrie 1998. "Carbon Dioxide Potential in Coalbeds: A Near-term Consideration for the Fossil Energy Industry," pp. 593-600 in *The Proceedings of the 23rd International Technical Conference on Coal Utilization and Fuel Systems*, Clearwater, Fla., March 9-13, 1998, U.S. Department of Energy, Washington, D.C.

Byrer, C. W., and H.D. Guthrie 1998. "Coal Deposits: Potential Resource for Sequestering Carbon Dioxide Emissions From Power Plants," presented at the Fourth International Conference on Greenhouse Gas Control Technologies, Interlaken, Switzerland, August 30-September 2, 1998. Proceedings forthcoming.

Byrer, C. W., T. H. Mroz, and G. L. Covatch 1984. "Production Potential for Coalbed Methane in U.S. Basins," SPE 12832, presented at the SPE/DOE/GRI Unconventional Gas Recovery Symposium, Pittsburgh, Pa., May 13-15, 1984.

DOE (Department of Energy) 1993. *A Research Needs Assessment for The Capture, Utilization and Disposal of Carbon Dioxide from Fossil Fuel Fired Power Plants*, DOE/ER-30194, Washington, D.C.

Dove, P., J. Harris, J. M. Logan, L. Pyrak-Nolte, F. M. Orr, Jr., P. J. Ortoleva, F. Richter, J. W. Rudnicki, N. R. Warpinski, W. R. Wawersik, J. L. Wilson, and T. F. Wong. "Terrestrial Sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>—An Assessment of Research Needs." Forthcoming.

Dyman, T. S., D. D. Rice, J. W. Schmoker, C. J. Wandrey, R. C. Burruss, R. A. Crovelli, G. L. Dolton, T. C. Hester, C. W. Keighin, and J. G. Palacas 1993. "Geologic Studies of Deep Natural Gas Resources in the United States," pp. 171–204 in *The Future of Energy Gases*, D. G. Howell, ed., U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

Eddy, G. E., C. T. Rightmire, and C. W. Byrer 1982. "Relationship of Methane Content of Coal Rank and Depth: Theoretical Versus Observed," SPE / DOE Paper 10800, in *Proceedings of 1982 SPE/DOE Unconventional Gas Recovery Symposium*, Pittsburgh, Pa., May 16–18.

Fulton, P. F., B. Rogers, N. Shah, and A. A. Reznik 1980. "Study of the Effectiveness of Increasing Methane Production," Chemical and Petroleum Engineering Department, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, Pa. (Work performed for DOE under contract DE-FG-21- 79MC1083.

Fyfe, W. S., R. Leveille, W. Zang, and Y. Chen 1996. "Is CO<sub>2</sub> Disposal Feasible?" *Am. Chem. Soc., Div. Fuel Chem.* 41: 1433–5.

Garrels, R. M., and F. T. Mackenzie 1971. *Evolution of Sedimentary Rocks*, W. W. Norton, New York.

Gunter, W. D., E. H. Perkins, and T. J. McCann 1993. "Aquifer Disposal of CO<sub>2</sub>-rich Gases: Reaction Design for Added Capacity," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 34: 941–8.

Gunter, W. D., T. Gentzis, B. W. Rottenfusser, and R. J. H. Richardson 1996. "Deep Coalbed Methane in Alberta, Canada: A Fuel Resource with the Potential of Zero Greenhouse Gas Emissions," pp. 217–22 in *Proceedings of the Third International Conference on Carbon Dioxide Removal*, Cambridge, Mass., September 9–11, 1996.

Gunter, W. D., S. Bachu, D. H. S. Law, V. Marwaha, D. L. Drysdale, D. E. MacDonald, and T. J. McCann 1996. "Technical and Economic Feasibility of CO<sub>2</sub> Disposal in Aquifers within the Alberta Sedimentary Basin, Canada," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 37: 1135–42.

Gunter W. D., B. Wiwchar, and E. H. Perkins 1997. "Aquifer Disposal of CO<sub>2</sub>-rich Greenhouse Gases: Extension of the Time Scale of Experiment for CO<sub>2</sub>-sequestering Reactions by

Geochemical Modeling," *Mineral. and Petrol.* 59: 121-40.

Harpalani, S., and X. Zhao 1989. "The Unusual Response of Coal Permeability to Varying Gas Pressure and Effective Stress," pp. 65-72 in *Rock Mechanics as a Guide for Efficient Utilization of Natural Resources: Proceedings of the 30th U.S. Symposium*, A. Wahab Kahir, ed., West Virginia University, Morgantown, W.V., June 19-22, 1989.

Hendricks, C. A., and K. Blok 1995. "Underground Storage of Carbon Dioxide," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 36: 539-42.

Hertzog, H. J., and E. M. Drake 1998. "CO<sub>2</sub> Capture, Reuse, and Sequestration Technologies for Mitigating Global Climate Change," pp. 615-26 in *Proceedings of the 23rd International Technical Conference on Coal Utilization & Fuel Systems*, Clearwater, Fla., March 9-13.

Hitchon, B., ed. 1996. *Aquifer Disposal of Carbon Dioxide, Hydrodynamic and Mineral Trapping—Proof of Concept*, Geoscience Publishing Ltd., Sherwood Park, Alberta, Canada.

Holloway, S. 1996. "An Overview of the Underground Disposal of Carbon Dioxide, British Geological Survey," pp. 193-8 in *Proceedings of the Third International Conference on Carbon Dioxide Removal*, Cambridge, Mass., September 9-11, 1996.

Holloway, S. 1997. "An Overview of the Underground Disposal of Carbon Dioxide," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 38: s193-s198.

Holloway, S., and D. Savage 1993. "The Potential for Aquifer Disposal of Carbon Dioxide in the UK," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 34: 925-32.

Joubert, J. I., C. T. Grein, and D. Bienstock 1973. "Sorption of Methane in Moist Coal," *Fuel*, 52 (3): 181.

Kim, A. G. 1977. *Estimating Methane Content of Bituminous Coalbeds from Adsorption Data*, BM-RI-8245, U.S. Bureau of Mines, Pittsburgh, Pa.

Koide, H., Y. Tazaki, Y. Noguchi, S. Nakayama, M. Iijima, K. Ito, and Y. Shindo 1992. "Subterranean Containment and Long-Term Storage of Carbon Dioxide in Unused Aquifers and in Depleted Natural Gas Reservoirs," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 33 (5-8): 619-26.

Korbol, R., and A. Kaddour 1995. "Sleipner Vest CO<sub>2</sub> Disposal—Injection of Removed CO<sub>2</sub> into the Utsira Formation," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 36 (6-9): 509-12.

Lackner, K. S., C. H. Wendt, D. P. Butt, E. L. Joyce, and D. H. Sharp 1995. "Carbon Dioxide Disposal in Carbonate Minerals," *Energy*, 20: 11-70.

Law, D. H. S., and S. Bachu 1996. "Hydrogeological and Numerical Analysis of CO<sub>2</sub> Disposal in Deep Aquifers in the Alberta Sedimentary Basin," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 37 (6-8): 1167-74.

Layne, A. W., and C. W. Byrer 1988. "Analysis of Coalbed Methane Stimulations in the Warrior Basin, Alabama," *SPE Formation Evaluation*, 3: 663-70.

Layne, A. W., H. J. Siriwardane, and C. W. Byrer 1988. "Assessment of Gas Production Potential From Coalbeds and Adjacent Strata," SPE Paper 17765, in *Proceedings of Gas Technology Symposium*, Dallas, Tex., June 1988.

Lee, Y. H. 1982. *Methane Recovery from Coalbeds: Effects of Monolayer Capacity and Pore Structure on Gas Content*, masters thesis, University of New Mexico at Albuquerque.

Lohuis, J. A. O. 1993. "Carbon Dioxide Disposal and Sustainable Development in The Netherlands," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 34 (9-11): 815-21.

McCulloch, C. M., J. R. Levine, F. N. Kissell, and M. Duel 1975. *Measuring the Methane Content of Bituminous Coalbed*, RI8043, U.S. Department of the Interior, Washington, D.C.

McElhiney, J. E., R. A. Koenig, and R. A. Schraufnagel 1989. "Evaluation of Coalbed-Methane Reserves Involves Different Techniques," *Oil & Gas Journal*, (October 30): 63-72

Moffat, D. H., and K. E. Weale 1955. "Sorption by Coal of Methane at High Pressures," *Fuel* 34: 449-62.

Nelson, C. R. 1989. *Chemistry of Coal Weathering*, Elsevier, New York.

Pearce, J. M., S. Holloway, H. Wacker, M. K. Nelis, C. Rochelle, and K. Bateman 1996. "Natural Occurrences of CO<sub>2</sub> as Analogues for the Geologic Disposal of Carbon Dioxide," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 37 (6-8):1123-8.

Reznik, A. A., P. K. Singh, and W. L. Foley 1982. *Enhanced Recovery of In-Situ Methane By Carbon Dioxide Injection: An Experimental Feasibility Study*, Chemical and Petroleum Engineering Department, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, Pa. (Work Performed for DOE under contract DE-FG21-80 MC14262.)

Ruppel, T. C., C. T. Grein, and D. Bienstock 1974. "Adsorption of Methane on Dry Coal at Elevated Pressure," *Fuel* 53: 152.

Scheidegger, A. E. 1974. *The Physics of Flow through Porous Media*, 3rd Ed., University of Toronto Press, Buffalo, N.Y.

Seifritz W. 1990. "CO<sub>2</sub> Disposal by Means of Silicates," *Nature* 345: 486.

Stevens, S. H., J. A. Kuuskraa, and D. Spector 1998. "CO<sub>2</sub> Sequestration in Deep Coal Seams: Pilot Results and Worldwide Potential," presented at the Fourth International Conference on Greenhouse Gas Control Technologies, Interlaken, Switzerland, August 30-September 2, 1998. Proceedings forthcoming.

Surinova, S. I., and A. N. Polushkin 1987. "The Role of the Wettability of Coal in the Production of Carbonaceous Adsorbents," *Solid Fuel Chemistry* 21 (4): 166-120.

Yalcin, E., and S. Durucan 1991. "Methane Capacities of Zonguldak Coals and the Factors Affecting Methane Adsorption," *Mining Science and Technology*, 13: 215-22.

van der Meer, L. G. H. 1992. "Investigations Regarding the Storage of Carbon Dioxide in Aquifers in The Netherlands," *Energy Convers. Mgmt.* 33 (5-8): 611-18.

Weir, G. J., S. P. White, and W. M. Kissling 1995. "Reservoir Storage and Containment of Greenhouse Gases," pp. 233-8 in K. Pruess, ed., *Proceedings of the TOUGH Workshop '95*, LBL-37200, Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Berkeley, Calif.

# Vision

*Advanced biological processes will be developed and deployed to enable practices to sequester carbon in natural systems, remove or convert carbon from fossil energy systems into useful and refractory products, and recycle carbon through biological processes into end products that substitute for fossil carbon sources.*

## 6 ADVANCED BIOLOGICAL PROCESSES

### 6.1 BACKGROUND AND RATIONALE FOR ADVANCED BIOLOGICAL PROCESSES TO SEQUESTER CARBON

By 2025, the goal is to implement advanced biological processes that would help limit emissions and sequester carbon from concentrated utility and industrial combustion gases and dispersed point sources. Advanced biological technologies will augment or improve natural biological processes for carbon sequestration from the atmosphere in terrestrial plants, aquatic photosynthetic species, and soil and other microbial communities. These technologies encompass the use of novel organisms, designed biological systems, and genetic improvements in metabolic networks in terrestrial and marine microbial, plant, and animal species. This strategy can be accomplished by developing

- faster-growing, healthier, and more stress-resistant crop and plants
- a better understanding of biological diversity, genetics, and processes
- ways to enhance or maximize geological carbon sequestration by use of microorganisms
- ways to enhance carbon sequestration in ocean systems through transgenic and genetic manipulation of members of the food chain
- alternative microbial polymers or genetically improved plants as durable materials

Enhanced biological carbon fixation significantly increases carbon sequestration without incurring costs for separation, capture, and compression. Higher ambient CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations increase biological carbon fixation. But the resulting biomass generally has a higher carbohydrate and lower lignin content. Thus increased photosynthate is trapped into readily degraded material.

Photosynthesis is a well-understood process. It is responsible for virtually all CO<sub>2</sub> fixation in nature. Naturally occurring non-photosynthetic microbial processes are also capable of converting CO<sub>2</sub> to useful forms such as methane and acetate. Although much remains to be learned about natural processes, we predict that focused research will create new opportunities to significantly enhance carbon sequestration by advanced biological processes.

Genetic engineering could increase carbon sequestration by developing durable new products that would not be consumed with release of CO<sub>2</sub>. In addition, soil sequestration could be increased by altering the structure of plants to enhance carbon sequestration in soils. New plant species would have a higher percentage of biomass below ground, be resistant to decay, promote the formation of carbonate minerals, and interact with soil microbes to optimize the recycling of plant nutrients. Alternately, the structure and/or composition of aboveground plant structure biomass, including cell walls, could be altered to facilitate plant bioconversion processes and to render non-harvested biomass less degradable in the environment. The metabolic networks of plants and algae also could be altered to direct an increased share of photosynthate to desired products.

The four topic areas that comprise advanced biological technologies for carbon sequestration are carbon capture technology, sequestration in reduced carbon compounds, increasing plant productivity, and alternative durable materials. These have cross-disciplinary applications in terrestrial, geological subsurface, and ocean environments.

## 6.2 CARBON CAPTURE TECHNOLOGY SUPPORT

### 6.2.1 Current Science and Technology Capabilities

The prospects of using advanced biological processes to capture and reduce or sequester carbon from industrial processes are largely theoretical. However, the incentives for developing these processes are substantial because they are based on naturally occurring biological processes that do not require purified (or concentrated) CO<sub>2</sub> streams to be implemented effectively. Additional research will be required to determine the technical and economic feasibility of these approaches for terrestrial, geological, and ocean systems.

Advanced biological processes have the potential to lower energy expenditures, reduce the need for chemical processing, increase recycling of carbon, and reduce the use of fossil fuels.

Sewage plants today are being affected by changes in community dynamics due to generation of new types of wastes from biotechnology facilities and “chip technology.” Engineers are just now beginning to work more closely with microbial ecologists, physiologists, and molecular biologists to better monitor the changes in the microbial diversity and metabolism that are requiring new paradigms for more effectively treating wastewater.

Subsurface microbiology and geomicrobiology researchers have seen an increase in funding for the characterization and monitoring of “rock”-inhabiting microorganisms. Through the use of molecular probes, polymerase chain reaction amplification, and even synchrotron technology, scientists are beginning to

understand how these populations function in a world where there may be limited sources of carbon for energy. Through these studies, researchers have genetically identified and, in some cases, isolated new microorganisms that depend upon non-carbon sources of energy. These studies are laying the foundation for studies of microbial carbon sequestration and alternative energy sources.

### **6.2.2 Science and Technology Requirements**

#### **6.2.2.1 Energyplexes**

Because of the high energy costs associated with current technologies for capture and separation at combustion sources with low-concentration CO<sub>2</sub> streams, the joint consideration of energy production and carbon capture might significantly lower costs. This may best be achieved by expanding the concept of "energyplexes" with integration of biological processes (National Laboratory Directors 1997). Biological processes integrated into energyplexes would produce energy, treat waste, sequester carbon, and produce useful end products. The integration at one site would minimize transportation costs, minimize the potential for environmental damage, and maximize yields. These concepts need further development, but some aspects, which include biological components, have been put into place on a limited scale

Waste treatment associated with landfills, sewage treatment facilities, or even release of sewage into water bodies produces significant CO<sub>2</sub> and other greenhouse gases (especially methane) from fixed carbon. This carbon represents a potential source of renewable energy. Molecular biology

methods could be employed to slow the decomposition rates of solid wastes in landfills. In addition, the bioengineering technology to trap, separate, and recycle CO<sub>2</sub> and methane decomposition products at landfills and sewage treatment facilities needs to be improved.

Sewage treatment is designed to sanitize wastes and to reduce the carbon burden before discharge. Thus an implicit goal of sewage treatment is the production of CO<sub>2</sub>. Most CO<sub>2</sub> is produced by the aerobic treatment stage. A shift to complete anaerobic fermentation could lower emissions. A modification of sewage treatment in this manner, via integration of physiological and genetic regulation, could generate more methane to meet the fuel demand of plant operation and could generate a higher-carbon end product for use in soil building and agriculture. Knowledge about physiological processes and end products must be expanded to design these plants.

Reductions in CO<sub>2</sub> emission could derive from more efficient operation of sewage treatment plants and landfills and integration of managed wetlands into waste treatment processes. Basic understanding of these biological processes must be expanded to allow more effective implementation of these options. Consideration should be given to the integration of these facilities into energyplexes to provide carbon and nutrients for other biological processes (e.g., production of carbonate rocks by metal-reducing organisms, production of biomass by algae).

#### **6.2.2.2 Geological systems**

Biological conversion of CO<sub>2</sub> into insoluble carbonate rocks, such as siderite (FeCO<sub>3</sub>)—using metal-

reducing bacteria and metal-containing fly ash or other low-value products—is technically feasible. If iron is abundant and available as a bioreductant, siderite can be formed. These materials could be used in roadbeds, as composite materials, or as fill. In any case, solid carbonate rock significantly simplifies storage and disposal of CO<sub>2</sub> by enormously increasing the density of the material to be handled. Either metal-reducing organisms or algae could be applied to precipitate carbonate rocks. Metals could be reduced by bacteria and precipitated as carbonates. Recent research on metal-reducing thermophilic bacteria has demonstrated that siderite production by these bacteria can be substantial.

### 6.2.3 Research Implementation

#### 6.2.3.1 Energyplexes

The energyplex concept involves recycling CO<sub>2</sub> in waste flue gases from a power generation facility via photosynthesis to generate a store of reduced carbon in the form of algal biomass. Storage can take the form of polysaccharides or triglycerides, both of which are readily usable fuels, or of chemical feedstocks for downstream bioconversion processes. Although

additional concepts will undoubtedly be developed and should be sought, initial efforts are likely to focus on several research areas, including integration of primary production using waste CO<sub>2</sub> and heat. These energyplexes could benefit from integration of sewage or other waste treatment because the nutrients and carbon could be used in biological processes at the site. Because of seasonal, land, and water limitations, this alternative may be applicable only in certain localities or specialized situations.

One area that has been the focus of considerable research in the past is growth of algae for fuel production. Previous research focused on diesel replacements (“biodiesel”). In addition, the production of hydrogen and other chemical feedstocks using algae is worth additional investment in research. Some algae can be cultivated in saline or alkaline waters, which are available in the southwestern deserts, where land is relatively plentiful. This alternative might be limited by the costs of pond preparation, CO<sub>2</sub> injection, or algal harvest.

#### 6.2.3.2 Geological systems

Microbial processes can probably be engineered to greatly accelerate the formation of carbonates from natural silicate minerals such as serpentinite (see Chap. 7). While it is known that the release of magnesium ions from crushed serpentinite is greatly enhanced in the presence of nitrifying bacteria (Lebedeva, Lyalikova, and Bugel'skii 1978), genetic manipulations, use of other chemotrophic organisms, and exploitation of microbial acid formation can be expected to further accelerate the decomposition of silicate minerals. Knowledge about the factors that

#### Energyplexes for Conventional Crops

An additional potential option is to use the CO<sub>2</sub> and the waste heat to promote the growth of more conventional agricultural crops. Use of CO<sub>2</sub> can lead to increases in productivity of plant growth in hydroponics or wetlands applications. Pilot projects are under way to capitalize on this concept.

inhibit plant growth in serpentine soils (serpentine barrens, where little vegetation is found) can be used to design microorganisms that tolerate high magnesium concentrations and low calcium/magnesium ratios and resist heavy metal toxicity. Genetic engineering has the potential as well to endow these organisms with the capacity to use metal sulfide minerals as energy sources and CO<sub>2</sub> as the carbon source for growth. Carbon dioxide would be sequestered as magnesium carbonate and as microbial biomass.

Additional advanced concepts include the utilization of enzyme systems and catalysts for CO<sub>2</sub> capture. The goals of the research would be to achieve shorter residence times and higher throughput. A more innovative approach may be to develop biological catalysts for removal of CO<sub>2</sub>. These may include “artificial photosynthesis” (microbial or self-assembly) applications with molecular devices that mimic photosynthesis. As some of the solvent-based CO<sub>2</sub> absorbents currently in use are organic compounds, biological production of solvents for CO<sub>2</sub> scrubbing is feasible.

### 6.3 SEQUESTRATION IN REDUCED CARBON COMPOUNDS

#### 6.3.1 Current Science and Technology Capabilities

The feasibility of a significant midterm impact on global climate change by increasing the size of forests is firmly established. Algal biomass schemes for trapping CO<sub>2</sub> have advanced in recent years and should be explored as a possible supplement to forest management and advanced agricultural biotechnologies.

The surface area of the planet is dominated by oceans (75%), where bioproductivity is often limited by nutrient availability. As discussed in Chap. 3, nutritional enrichment could enhance ocean algal growth and marine productivity and might increase net oceanic CO<sub>2</sub> fixation. Advanced biological techniques could be used to increase phytoplankton productivity or to alter the competitive capacities of organisms that feed on algae. Marine algal production is not limited by water availability and affords greater opportunities to control nutrient delivery.

Algae are amenable to relatively simple genetic manipulations aimed at increasing photosynthetic efficiency, maximizing yields of desirable energy storage products, and optimizing conversion of photosynthetic products to fuels or chemical feedstocks. Such strategies could also be applied to terrestrial plant species.

#### 6.3.2 Science and Technology Requirements

The goal is to have a mix of biological systems that will provide incremental but significant contributions to overall carbon management.

Research on using algae in pond systems for renewable energy is likely to have spin-offs for open-ocean carbon management schemes and could eventually lead to ocean harvesting-based renewable energy technologies. Recovery of other products from fermented algal biomass—for example, fertilizers for terrestrial crops or for open-ocean fertilization, or single-cell protein for animal nutrition—would improve overall economics.

Plant and microbial genomics projects currently under way will eventually

provide detailed knowledge about organismal metabolic networks and interrelationships among different cells in a plant and different organisms in an ecosystem. Such knowledge will enable a better understanding of ecosystems and how to manage their productivities. We need more information about

- the function of genes being sequenced and computerized methods to manipulate and store the huge quantities of data pouring forth from genomics efforts
- how to introduce individual genes and pathways into a wide variety of plants and microbes
- gene replacement strategies for plant species
- artificial chromosomes for the introduction of large segments of genetic material into plants
- more rapid and reliable methods for screening candidate genetically engineered plants and for clonal propagation of engineered plants

### 6.3.3 Research Implementation

Most renewable energy schemes generate considerable recalcitrant biomass and therefore offer the opportunity for significant net carbon fixation in addition to their value in reducing the demand for fossil energy. Compared with the difficulties of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration by separation, compression, and transport, the handling and storage of recalcitrant biomass is straightforward.

#### 6.3.3.1 Sequestration of biological carbon in ocean sediments

Chapter 3 discusses enhancing the natural biological carbon cycle in the oceans. Research topics in advanced biology regarding this carbon

mitigation option include the following:

- To what extent can biomass concentration and disposition be genetically manipulated?
- Are there feasible genetic manipulations of biomass that would alter the decreasing rate of biomass production in the open ocean?
- Can we develop an organism that will rapidly and costeffectively assess the ecological impacts of various nutrient stimulation scenarios?
- Can organisms be engineered so that deposition of biological carbon outweighs the adverse pH effects of carbonate deposition?
- Are there advanced biological approaches to increasing phytoplankton accumulation specifically in upwelling, nutrient-rich waters?
- Can genetic biomarkers be developed to monitor and assess the ultimate fate of biomass in deep ocean sediments? (In particular, we need a better understanding of the conversion of biomass to methane clathrates.)

An intriguing aspect of accumulating biomass in ocean sediments is the potential that this process could become an energy resource in the long-term. It is plausible that future energy scenarios would include methane recovery from clathrates located in well-defined deposits.

#### 6.3.3.2 Alkaline ponds for carbon sequestration

The capacity of some blue-green algae to thrive essentially as monocultures in waters of high alkalinity creates the possibility of much more effective CO<sub>2</sub>

sequestration than would be possible with other photosynthetic systems. The chemical hydration rate of CO<sub>2</sub> increases with pH, as does the amount of inorganic carbon that can be dissolved in aqueous solution.

Alkaline ponds have the potential to trap virtually all of the smokestack CO<sub>2</sub> emissions as well as the major pollutant gases SO<sub>2</sub> and NO<sub>x</sub>.

Accumulation of biomass can be optimized by pH manipulations that suppress the biomass-consuming activities of respiring organisms. With appropriate mass culturing of suitable blue-green algae, photosynthetic activity can maintain alkaline pH while providing a renewable energy resource. The feasibility of mass culturing of microalgae in alkaline seawater has been established, demonstrating the potential for developing much larger mass culture systems than could be contemplated with freshwater ponds.

### 6.3.3.3 Schemes for producing refractory biomass from terrestrial plants

Two possibilities for fixing CO<sub>2</sub> into materials with recycle times much

longer than wood can be considered: polymeric materials that are relatively refractory to biological degradation and inorganics (carbonates).

A large number of plant species synthesize diterpenoid resins or natural rubber, two materials that are relatively stable in the environment. Although few of these species are of economic significance, they are widespread and adaptable to a range of climates, could be grown on a large scale, and could be engineered for improved efficiency for conversion of CO<sub>2</sub> to product. These end products of plant metabolism could be deposited as such or cross-linked to minimize the possibility of biological degradation (e.g., vulcanized rubber).

The development of new materials (e.g., novel biomass-derived plastics), that would increase the use of reduced carbon compounds in the economy could be a significant element in carbon management. Another approach could be directed toward eliminating the irreversible conversion of petroleum to CO<sub>2</sub> by substituting “recyclable” plant products for fine and intermediate-scale chemicals and

### Aquaculture in the Desert

In 1987, during Eritrea's war of independence from Ethiopia, simple ponds were dug along the shore to a depth of about 0.5 m below the low tide line and about 200 m<sup>2</sup> in area. The ponds were filled with sea water and chemical fertilizers to grow algae and inoculated with mullet fingerlings at a rate of one fingerling per square meter. After 4 months, each fish weighed about 1 lb. Less than 1% mortality was detected among these algae-eating fish, which are famous for their hardiness in resisting disease and coping with low oxygen concentrations. This is equivalent to a rate of production of about 15 tons/ha per year and demonstrated that desert shores could produce enough food to justify cultivation on a large scale. This was not surprising. In southeast Asia, freshwater ponds have been fertilized to grow algae and inoculated with algae-eating fishes for centuries. Their only variation on this time-proven practice was to substitute seawater for fresh water and marine fish and algae for freshwater fish and algae. ([www-ibt.tamu.edu/invitro/guested.htm](http://www-ibt.tamu.edu/invitro/guested.htm))

even transport fuels. These could include the plant essential oils, fixed oils, resins, and even heptane, which is a major component of turpentine and an excellent transport fuel. Genetic engineering of plants to improve the availability of these products is entirely feasible.

Lignin is relatively resistant to biodegradation, and increasing the lignin content of plants would slow the decay of biomass in soils. Plant geneticists have discovered mutations that decrease the lignin content of plants to increase nutritional value for ruminants. Moreover, as the biochemical pathways for lignin biosynthesis in plants became elucidated, the genes encoding lignin pathway enzymes were cloned and have recently been employed to alter the quantity and quality of lignin in poplar and aspen tree species. The technology of lignin manipulation could be applied to plants that are currently being considered for reforestation with the objective of increasing net carbon transfer.

It has been estimated that only 3% of the carbon in solid wood in landfills is converted to CO<sub>2</sub> or methane (Skog and Nicholson 1998). This limited decomposition of wood is attributed to the recalcitrance of lignin in anaerobic environments. Although anaerobic bacteria can degrade cellulose, much of the cellulose in solid wood is sequestered from bacterial action by a lignin barrier and therefore cannot be biodegraded. Even paper products undergo only partial decomposition in landfills. Currently, most of the wood and wood products in landfills is sequestered carbon. However, alterations in the structure of wood by decreasing lignin content could increase its biodegradability. It is

likely that significant lignin would remain even in genetically modified woody plants and that landfills containing such plants would still sequester carbon. However, increasing biodegradability could increase methane yields from landfills, and the energy value of buried wood and wood products could provide an economic incentive for using woody materials for carbon sequestration. In contrast to reforestation or high-productivity agricultural schemes, there is an unlimited amount of carbon that could be sequestered in landfills.

#### **6.4 INCREASING PLANT PRODUCTIVITY**

Research would improve the ability to genetically manipulate plants to increase photosynthetic activity and fix CO<sub>2</sub> and nitrogen more efficiently. Manipulation of plant genomes to obtain the desired effects is still a poorly developed field. Much more attention needs to be given to the fundamental mechanisms of cell development, cell wall biochemistry, plant photosynthetic processes, and primary and secondary metabolic processes.

More rapidly growing herbaceous agricultural plant species will enhance the removal of CO<sub>2</sub> from the atmosphere and trap it in photosynthate that can be readily converted into renewable fuels, chemicals, polymer precursors and foodstuffs. Rapidly growing woody species will trap CO<sub>2</sub> in durable timber that can be used for a wide variety of structures. Other fast-growing herbaceous and woody species will provide easily delignified fiber for paper, composites, and block copolymers.

### 6.4.1 Current Science and Technology Capabilities

The advent of modern molecular biology has enabled strategies for improvement of many different organisms through genetic engineering, including many agricultural and timber crop species. Our current understanding of the processes of photosynthesis, photorespiration, plant pathology, and wood structure and function, among others, suggests many strategies for increasing the rate of biological carbon sequestration. The 25-year time frame of the proposed R&D program would permit advances in several of these areas to be successfully deployed on a large commercial scale, which could have a significant impact on U.S. carbon emissions.

Plants get their carbon from CO<sub>2</sub>, which makes up only 0.03% of the present-day atmosphere. Microscopic floating plants, phytoplankton, and other algae take up CO<sub>2</sub> dissolved in water. Both terrestrial and water plants require solar energy to reduce CO<sub>2</sub> to biomass.

Photosynthesis is responsible for conversion of sunlight into chemical energy by essentially all primary producers in nearly all ecosystems. It provides the foundation of the food chain for life on Earth and is also the source of the oxygen in our atmosphere.

Sunlight provides the energy for the primary mechanism of carbon fixation from the atmosphere. The theoretical maximum efficiency of light energy capture and conversion into usable chemical energy is approximately 5% (expressed as a fraction of visible light energy available at the earth's surface). Plant photosystems seldom operate at anywhere near this efficiency, a fact that provides us with an excellent opportunity for carbon sequestration. Photosynthetic efficiency varies widely with the ecosystem and time of year. The efficiency of some forests can be as low as 0.1 to 0.05%, while that of marsh grasses can be as high as 2 to 4% in the early spring. The photosynthetic efficiency of corn and sugar cane can be as high as 3.5 to 4%.

### Engineering Rubisco for Speed

Plants fix carbon by taking CO<sub>2</sub> from the air and adding it to small precursor sugars in plants. This step is carried out by an enzyme known as Rubisco. Rubisco is the most abundant protein in the world, making up 50% of all plant proteins. The Rubisco enzyme is slow and inefficient. It not only fixes carbon but, in an alternate reaction, adds oxygen to the precursor sugars and degrades them, diverting the enzyme from productive activity. It may be possible to engineer into Rubisco more efficient carbon-fixation mechanisms or to discover more efficient, naturally occurring forms of Rubisco in as yet poorly characterized or undiscovered organisms.

The activity of Rubisco is regulated by another enzyme called Rubisco activase. Rubisco activase controls the overall process of photosynthesis by making Rubisco activity responsive to light intensity. Researchers are currently changing a specific part of the Rubisco activase enzyme by genetic engineering to analyze its function. Information about the mechanism and structure of Rubisco activase eventually can be used to make changes that improve the activity of the enzyme and increase photosynthetic efficiency. ([www.photoscience.la.asu.edu/Photosyn/faculty/salvucci.html](http://www.photoscience.la.asu.edu/Photosyn/faculty/salvucci.html))

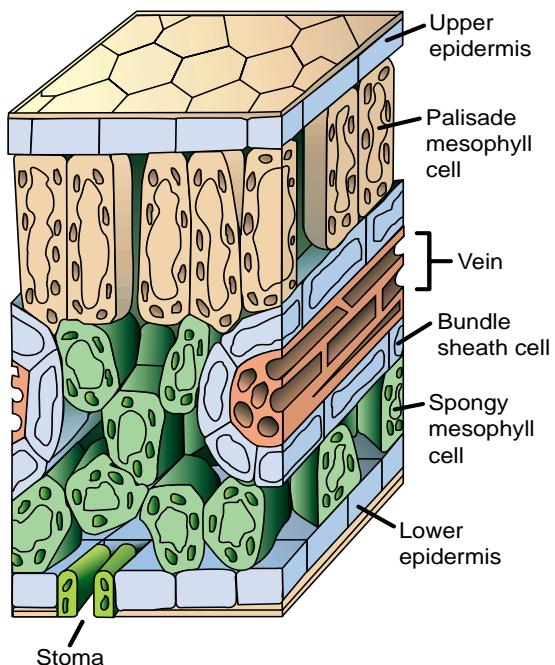
Environmental conditions strongly affect photosynthetic efficiency, but the biochemistry of the photon capture and energy conversion system could be improved as well.

Photosynthetic carbon fixation is limited by the efficiency of two very important processes—conversion of incident light energy to captured chemical energy and the primary carbon fixation reaction catalyzed by the enzyme Rubisco (ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate carboxylase/oxygenase), the most abundant protein on Earth. Either or both of these processes may be limiting in terms of carbon sequestration rates, and it is thought that they could be enhanced significantly via advanced biological approaches.

Rubisco is not only a very slow enzyme, but is also inefficient because it can react with molecular oxygen in a process known as photorespiration. This results in a futile (nonproductive) metabolic cycle. As the ratio of  $\text{CO}_2$  to  $\text{O}_2$  in the atmosphere increases, the productive carboxylation efficiency will naturally increase. However, it may also be possible to discover more efficient, naturally occurring forms of Rubisco in as yet poorly characterized or undiscovered organisms, or to engineer into Rubisco an exaggerated preference for  $\text{CO}_2$  over  $\text{O}_2$  using modern molecular biological techniques (Mann 1999).

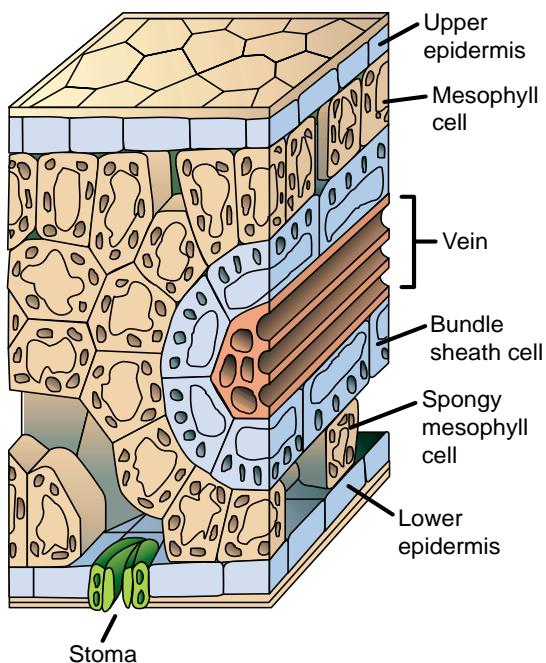
Some plant species have already developed a solution to the problem presented by Rubisco. A group of warm-climate grass species known as  $\text{C}_4$  grasses (including corn, sorghum, and sugar cane) evolved a specialized leaf anatomy (Krantz anatomy; contrast  $\text{C}_3$  and  $\text{C}_4$  anatomy in Figs. 6.1 and 6.2, respectively). These plants show little or no photorespiration and are considerably more efficient because

#### Arrangement of Cells in a $\text{C}_3$ Leaf



**Fig. 6.1: Typical leaf anatomy in a  $\text{C}_3$  plant.** ([www.biology.arizona.edu/181/rick/photosynthesis/C4.html](http://www.biology.arizona.edu/181/rick/photosynthesis/C4.html))

#### Arrangement of Cells in a $\text{C}_4$ Leaf

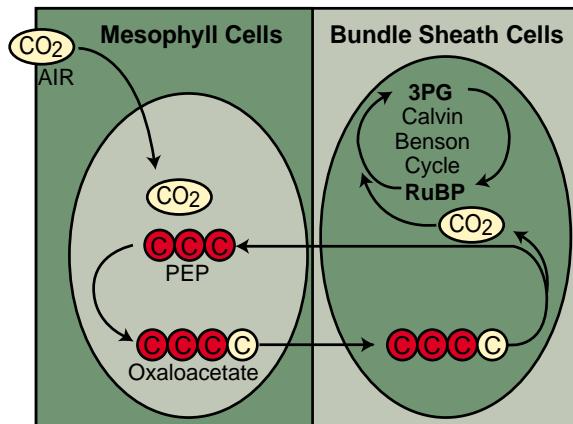


**Fig. 6.2: Typical leaf anatomy in a  $\text{C}_4$  plant.** ([www.cme.msu.edu/WIT/Doc/mj\\_recon.html](http://www.cme.msu.edu/WIT/Doc/mj_recon.html))

$\text{CO}_2$  is carried to sites of photosynthesis. This trapping of  $\text{CO}_2$  is carried out via the Hatch-Slack pathway (Fig. 6.3), which is not affected by oxygen. Genetic manipulation, to optimize pathways for trapping  $\text{CO}_2$ , comprises significant research opportunities.

Although 78% of our atmosphere consists of nitrogen, plants are not capable of converting it into forms they can use. Certain bacteria, however, produce enzymes that facilitate the transformation of nitrogen gas into ammonia and other nitrogen-containing compounds that can readily be absorbed by plant roots and used by the plant. In nature, the natural decay of dead biomass releases nitrogen in forms that can often be absorbed by plants. This occurs both in terrestrial systems and in the oceans. Nitrogen availability is often growth-limiting and is routinely supplemented with fertilizers in agricultural practice. Some plant species, notably the legumes, do not require nitrogen fertilization because their roots are colonized by nitrogen-fixing microorganisms. Ammonia can be readily assimilated by plants and incorporated into other nitrogen-containing compounds, such as amino acids, which are essential for protein synthesis. The critical enzyme in nitrogen fixation is called nitrogenase, and it breaks the very strong triple bond of  $\text{N}_2$ . These complex and poorly understood enzymes require large amounts of energy to accomplish this reaction. In addition, nitrogenases contain an assortment of complex, iron-containing co-factors, which are essential for activity. Thus, iron is often rate-limiting for nitrogen fixation in the ocean.

When photosynthetic light capture,  $\text{CO}_2$  fixation, and nitrogen availability no



**Fig. 6.3: Carbon fixation as it occurs via the Hatch-Slack pathway in C4 plants.**  
([www.biology.arizona.edu/181/rick/photosynthesis/C4.html](http://www.biology.arizona.edu/181/rick/photosynthesis/C4.html))

longer limit plant metabolism, one can improve regulation of and/or redesign secondary metabolic pathways for conversion and sequestration of the primary products. It is thus very important to understand both the spatial and temporal linkages among metabolic pathways in an organism, as well as modes of long-term storage of the sequestered products. Elucidation of these linkages and carbon storage capabilities will be best addressed by structural biology, plant and microbial molecular genetics, and computational simulation and theory.

Other environmental factors affecting carbon sequestration are predation by insects and microbial pathogens, which decrease global crop and forest yields. In addition, other stresses, such as drought, saline soils, heat and cold, pH, and the presence of heavy metals and other pollutants, limit plant growth rates and biomass accumulation. Ameliorating such stresses has been a target for improvement by agriculture and silviculture over the centuries. Modern plant science has mitigated crop losses, but there is still plenty of room for improvement, as evidenced by

the prolific activity and investment in plant biotechnology.

It is advantageous to increase deposition of carbon in soils. This might be accomplished most effectively by increasing the transfer of photosynthate to root systems and by increasing the accumulation of recalcitrant bioproducts (such as lignin) in forest litter. Deposition of carbon in soil by agricultural and silvicultural systems might be increased by shifting photosynthate partitioning from aboveground to belowground organs via genetic means. Increasing the recalcitrance of root tissues should also be explored as a possibility. Root deposition might be particularly important in the restoration of degraded soils or cultivation of plants in marginal ecosystems.

Nitrogen fixation could also increase root deposition and stimulate root exudates. Soil microbes play an important but incompletely understood role in enabling nutrient uptake by plants. Microbes associated with plant roots are an essential component of biological nitrogen fixation. Carbohydrates and other nutrients secreted by plant roots foster microbial growth, and the associated bacteria and fungi mobilize minerals (such as phosphate) and fix nitrogen for plant use. By increasing secretion of photosynthate by roots, it might be possible to increase biological nitrogen fixation and the cultivation of crops in marginal lands. For example, specific plant-associated fungi are essential for the cultivation of softwood species on topsoil-deficient lands reclaimed from open pit mining. It seems likely that similar relationships might be important in other degraded environments.

Several significant non-photosynthetic CO<sub>2</sub> fixation reactions occur in nature (University of Chicago 1998). As much as 10% of the cellulose and hemicellulose in plant biomass might be converted in the anaerobic environment to methane and CO<sub>2</sub> by consortia of anaerobic bacteria. Acetogenic bacteria appear to play a major role in this process. At the global level, approximately 10 GT of acetate is metabolized annually in the anaerobic environment, and about 10% of this may be derived from CO<sub>2</sub> fixation via the acetyl-CoA pathway. Potentially important niches for acetogens include termites, monogastric and ruminant animal digestive systems, and forest soils.

If a source of hydrogen can be provided in a CO<sub>2</sub>-rich, O<sub>2</sub>-free environment, CO<sub>2</sub> can be fixed efficiently into nonvolatile carbon compounds. Interestingly, it has recently been discovered that the strictly chemical action of water on basaltic rock formations deep below the surface of the earth serves as a source of hydrogen for microbial ecosystems (Gollin et al. 1998). These reactions may be important for biosequestration in geologic formations, such as spent oil and gas wells.

The advent of genetic engineering has improved crop productivity by increasing disease resistance and improving the ability of engineered crops to compete with undesired plant species. Plant products, especially oilseed crops, have been altered to increase the production of marketable oils, and these engineered varieties are being grown commercially. Additional engineering could increase oil production or other desirable products. Several genetically engineered crop species are currently being grown in the United States and other countries

and are rapidly capturing market share. For example, 40% of the Canola crops in Canada and 33% of the soybean crops in the United States are genetically engineered.

Research is under way to examine plant-insect interactions. The research usually focuses on combating a specific insect pest by producing transgenic plants (plants with genes from other species) that synthesize compounds that inhibit insect metabolism. Producing a disease-resistant transgenic plant requires that the molecular mechanisms involved in host plant resistance be elucidated. Unfortunately, these mechanisms vary greatly among plant pathogens.

Advances in gene technology have offered various novel routes to improve the disease resistance of crops. Resistance to a number of insect species has been created by use of genes encoding protease inhibitors and the *d*-endotoxin of *Bacillus thuringiensis*. Resistance against a number of viruses was obtained by expressing genes encoding for the viral coat protein, applying the principle of cross-protection.

#### 6.4.2 Science and Technology Requirements

In order to realize the maximum benefit from biological fixation, we need more basic knowledge about what processes limit plant growth in many specialized crops for food, feed, fiber, fuel and structural uses. We also need more information about optimal cultivation and harvest methods, particularly in marginal environments where water or soil quality is limiting. Other growth-limiting factors such as disease and insect pests also require better understanding. Biotechnology

and plant genomics will play large roles in reaching these goals.

#### 6.4.3 Research Implementation

Plant productivity can be increased by

- improving photosynthetic efficiency by increasing light-trapping reaction efficiency and decreasing photorespiration (C<sub>4</sub> pathway; engineering Rubisco efficiency and reaction rate)
- developing rapid methods for genetic manipulation of agricultural, tree, and nontraditional species with CO<sub>2</sub> sequestering potential (transformation and regeneration systems)
- developing new tools for manipulating fast-growing herbaceous and woody species (artificial chromosomes; gene replacement techniques)
- reducing the time required to create transgenic plants in the laboratory
- enhancing non-photosynthetic mechanisms for CO<sub>2</sub> fixation (bacterial methanogenesis and acetogenesis)
- genetically engineering the cell walls of agricultural species so that they can be more easily and economically converted to fuels and chemicals
- developing crops or processes that will biosynthesize functional feedstock chemicals for the synthesis of recalcitrant products (e.g., non-biodegradable plastics)
- improving nitrogen fixation in microbial symbionts of plants and/or by cloning genes into plants
- developing simplified nitrogenases that bypass the current mechanistic complexity, iron-dependence, and energy intensity issues

- improving insect and disease resistance via transgenics and protein engineering

## 6.5 ALTERNATIVE DURABLE MATERIALS

### 6.5.1 Current Science and Technology Capabilities

#### 6.5.1.1 Biopolymers

The past several years have seen dramatic growth in the use of enzymes for synthetic applications. This has been particularly apparent in the increased use of enzymes for polymer design and modification. Enzymes offer significant advantages over chemical catalysts in the synthesis of materials with highly specialized properties—including biodegradability, biocompatibility, inherent selectivity (e.g., enantio-, regio-, and chemo-), and easily tailored functionalities—all produced under conditions that minimize the formation of by-products and the avoidance of unwanted pollutants (Dorkick 1998).

The development of carbon feedstocks for chemical applications will reduce CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by displacing fossil hydrocarbons. Primary examples are the use of polymers derived from renewable agricultural resources, such as corn or sugar beets. These compounds are also commonly known as “bioplastics.” For many applications, the plastic “peanuts” used as packing material have been replaced by bioplastics. These bioplastics are displacing petrochemical-based polymers, such as polyethylene, polystyrene, and polypropylene. One class of bioplastics, the PLA resins, are composed of chains of lactic acid derived from conversion of starch to sugar followed by fermentation to lactic acid. Dow Chemical and Cargill have recently formed a joint venture to commercialize PLA on a large scale. Polyhydroxyalkanoates (PHAs), a chemically distinct family of biodegradable bioplastics, are being investigated by Monsanto and Proctor & Gamble for use as petro-plastic substitutes. Monsanto is looking at producing PHAs in crop plants instead of fermentation vats.

#### Turning Sugar into Better Polymers

The polymer polytrimethylene terephthalate (3GT) has enhanced properties compared with traditional polyester (2GT). Yet commercialization has been slow because of the high cost of making trimethylene glycol (3G), one of 3GT's monomers; it is a two-step process. However, recently, through recombinant DNA technology, an alliance of scientists from DuPont and Genencor International has created a single microorganism with all of the enzymes required to turn sugar into 3G. This breakthrough is opening the door to low-cost, environmentally sound, large-scale production of 3G. The eventual cost of 3G produced by this process is expected to approach that of ethylene glycol (2G).

The 3GT that is created by a fermentation process requires no heavy metals, petroleum, or toxic chemicals. The primary material is from agriculture—glucose from cornstarch. Rather than releasing CO<sub>2</sub> to the atmosphere, the process actually captures it because corn absorbs CO<sub>2</sub> as it grows and all liquid effluent is easily and harmlessly biodegradable. 3GT can also be subjected to methanolysis, a process that reduces polyesters to their original monomers. Used polyesters can be recycled indefinitely by being repolymerized. ([www.dupont.com/corp/science/bionylon.html](http://www.dupont.com/corp/science/bionylon.html))

Bioplastics and biofuels are promising emerging technologies, but other technologies may have a greater long-range impact in terms of carbon sequestration. Bioplastics are expected to compete with petro-plastics on a cost/performance basis. If the carbon used in the process is from atmospheric sources (e.g., from biomass) the net result is carbon sequestration. The market for these materials may limit the carbon sequestration potential; however, other biological processes, especially when part of an integrated sequestration strategy, could have greater sequestration potential.

#### 6.5.1.2 Microbial production of cellulose

*Acetobacter xylinum*, a non-photosynthetic bacterium most commonly used in the production of vinegar, can use glucose, sugar, glycerol, or other organic substrates and convert them into pure cellulose (Brown 1979). Weyerhaeuser, along with the now defunct Cetus Corporation, spent 7 years optimizing the production of bacterial cellulose, which has unique structural and absorption properties. Several patents have been filed on the applications of bacterial cellulose.

Microbial cellulose has been investigated as a binder in papers. Because it consists of extremely small clusters of cellulose microfibrils, it adds greatly to the strength and durability of pulp when integrated into paper. Ajinomoto Company and Mitsubishi Paper Mills in Japan are currently active in developing microbial cellulose for paper products (see patent JP 63295793 at [www.botany.utexas.edu/facstaff/facpages/mbrown/position1.htm](http://botany.utexas.edu/facstaff/facpages/mbrown/position1.htm)). This

biopolymer is just one example of the many microbial polymers that have potential for use as alternative durable materials.

#### 6.5.2 Science and Technology Requirements

Unfortunately, the plastic now produced by plants and bacteria is brittle and decomposes rapidly. Research into ways to improve the quality of bioplastics to enhance their usefulness in consumer goods is needed. Alteration of the biosynthetic pathways via gene shuffling, protein engineering, and improved fermentation technology at extreme temperatures must be integrated to achieve these improved bioplastics.

To overcome the drawbacks to successful commercialization of bacterial cellulose, efforts have centered on understanding the biosynthetic process itself, then trying to optimize the fermentation process to produce more cells and cellulose biosynthesis. Further genetic study of the operon-controlling cellulose synthesis is needed. Gene shuffling may have some applications also with respect to strain “quilting of genes” and selection of improved transformants.

#### Cellulose Factories

*Acetobacter xylinum* is nature's most prolific cellulose-producing bacterium. As many as a million cells can be packed into a large liquid droplet. If each one of these “factories” can convert up to  $10^8$  glucose molecules per hour into cellulose, the product could virtually be made before one's eyes. ([www.botany.utexas.edu/facstaff/facpages/mbrown/position1.htm](http://www.botany.utexas.edu/facstaff/facpages/mbrown/position1.htm))

Because microbial cellulose is an extracellular product that is excreted into the culture medium, special care and handling is necessary to maintain optimal production. The cellulose membrane itself can become a barrier for substrates and oxygen necessary for the cells to produce cellulose. Novel fermentation approaches have been developed to overcome some of the intrinsic difficulties for mass culture of *Acetobacter*, and a vigorous program of bacterial strain selection from regions worldwide has provided a stock resource of stable, efficient cellulose-producing strains.

What is needed currently is a way to convert bench-scale fermentation to an efficient, large-scale fermentation technology. This research need for new development technology can be met through a combination of genetic engineering and a better understanding of microbial physiology in submerged culture.

### 6.5.3 Research Implementation

#### 6.5.3.1 Biopolymers

Research to improve the desired characteristics of bioplastics includes the following:

- advances in elucidating structural biology
- genetic altering of enzymatic pathways
- improved protein crystallography
- computational biology to simulate structure and properties at extreme temperatures
- genetic engineering to improve durability and elasticity

#### 6.5.3.2 Microbial cellulose

The recent success with cloning and sequencing the genes for bacterial

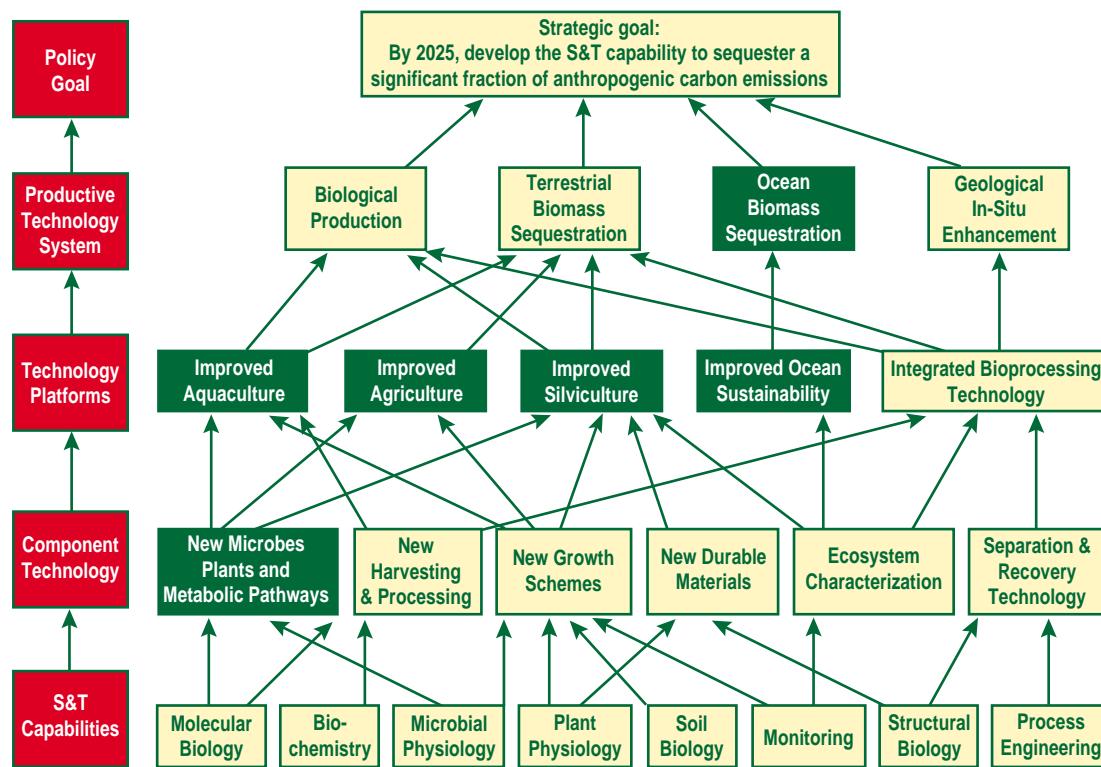
cellulose synthesis (Saxena, Lin, and Brown 1990, 1991) plus functional genomic information (Saxena et al. 1994) will result in new ways to further optimize bacterial cellulose production by *Acetobacter xylinum* as well as other bacteria and algae that synthesize cellulose.

Continued efforts in integrating the physiology and molecular biology of bacterial polymers combined with structural and functional analysis via crystallography and synchrotron characterization should make these bacterial polymers even more attractive and affordable.

## 6.6 SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

R&D efforts leading to sustained sequestration of gigatonnes of carbon per year from the atmosphere are prime sequestration options. Large-scale biological sequestration opportunities will require significant time and resources for deployment, so we envision successive technology deployments over 25 years (Fig. 6.4). Near-term measures (before 2005) have low technical risk and will have limited carbon sequestration effects at first, but they may become increasingly large sinks with time. Medium-term options will use more advanced strategies involving significantly higher technical risk but may permit higher carbon sequestration capacity with fewer resources. Long-term options are characterized as high-risk but may offer remarkable potential for carbon sequestration.

Table 6.1 ranks the strategies discussed in this chapter by technical feasibility, timeliness, and potential effects. Rankings would probably differ



**Fig. 6.4. Key elements of the R&D road map for advanced biological processes.**

if other relevant factors, such as economics, public policy, and risks (health and environmental), were also considered. Some rankings are subjective because of the ill-defined scope of some options. For example, genetic engineering of crop plants for disease and pest resistance is

practiced commercially today; hence, this level of engineering is deemed to be highly feasible. On the other hand, targeted genetic manipulation of growth and durability characteristics of conifers is likely to prove difficult and is deemed less feasible.

Table 6.1. Prioritization of advanced biological options

Focus area	Technology description	Technical feasibility				Time	Potential impact	Additive component rank (higher score = high priority)
		4 = low risk	3 = some risk	2 = moderate risk	1 = high risk (unlikely)			
Increase forest productivity	Management	4	1	1	1	1	2	7
	Genetics	2	2	2	2	3	3	7
	Soil sequestration	2	2	2	2	4	4	8
Increase agricultural crop productivity	Soil sequestration	4	3	3	2	2	2	9
	Management	4	3	3	2	2	2	9
	Fuels/chemicals/materials	3	2	2	3	3	3	8
	Nitrogen fixation	2	1	1	4	4	7	7
	Modify plant cell walls	3	2	4	4	4	7	9
Alter plant functional structure								
Soil biota/ecosystems	Decrease rate of biomass decay	1	2	2	3	3	6	6
	Mycorrhizae (P)	2	2	2	3	3	7	7
	Carbonate formation	2	2	2	3	3	7	7
Shift allocation of plant biomass to below-ground organs	Genetic (includes genetic engineering)	3	1	1	3	3	7	7
Abiotic stresses	Agronomic practices	4	3	3	2	2	9	9
	Salt tolerance	3	2	2	3	3	8	8
	Drought tolerance	3	2	2	3	3	8	8
Landfill options	Sequestration	3	3	3	2	2	8	8
	Conversion	4	3	3	2	2	9	9
Materials substitution with renewables	Steel and concrete	2	3	2	2	2	7	7
	Plastics (PHA, PLA, renewable)	3	3	2	2	2	7	8
Terrestrial aquaculture	Durable wood products							
	Sequestration in biomass reservoir for C storage)	3	2	2	3	3	8	8
Marine aquaculture	Ocean sediments	2	1	1	3	3	6	6
	Kelp farms	2	1	1	1	1	4	4
	Slow release biofertilization	3	2	2	4	4	9	9
Enzyme and protein	Rubisco CO <sub>2</sub> :O <sub>2</sub> fixation ratio	2	1	1	4	4	7	7
	C4 pathway engineering in	2	3	3	3	3	8	8
	Nitrogen fixation	1	1	1	3	3	5	5
	Pathway engineering	3	2	2	3	3	8	8
Biogeochemical	Photosystem efficiency	2	2	2	4	4	8	8
	Bioplugs	2	2	2	3	3	7	7
	Mineralization	1	1	1	3	3	5	5
	Energy-dependent chemical	1	1	1	2	4	4	4

## 6.7 REFERENCES

Brown, R. M., Jr. 1979. "Biogenesis of Natural Polymer Systems, with Special Reference to Cellulose Assembly and Deposition," pp. 50-123 in *Proceedings of the Third Phillip Morris Science Symposium*, Ellen Walk, ed., Richmond, Va., November 9, 1978.

Brown, R. M., Jr., J. H. M. Willison, and C. L. Richardson 1976. "Cellulose Biosynthesis in *Acetobacter Xylinum*: 1. Visualization of the Site of Synthesis and Direct Measurement of the In Vivo Process," *Proc Nat Acad Sci U.S.A.* 73(12):4565-69.

Dorkick, J. 1998. "Biocatalysis on Agricultural Materials: A Natural Alternative," Abstract, Tenth CIFAR Conference, University of California—Davis, Davis, Calif., October 9.

Gollin, D., X. L. Li, S. M. Liu, E. T. Davies, and L. G. Ljungdahl 1998. "Acetogenesis and the Primary Structure of the NADP-Dependent Formate Dehydrogenase of *Clostridium thermoaceticum*, a Tungsten-Selenium-Iron Protein," pp. 303-8 in *Advances in Chemical Conversions for Mitigating Carbon Dioxide: Studies in Surface Science and Catalysis*, Vol. 114, T. Inui, M. Anpo, K. Izui, S. Yanagida, and T. Yamaguchi, eds., Elsevier Science B.V.

Herzog, H., E. Drake, and E. Adams 1997. *CO<sub>2</sub> Capture, Reuse, and Storage Technologies for Mitigating Global Climate Change: A White Paper*, Massachusetts Institute of Technology Energy Laboratory.

Lal, R., J. M. Kimble, R. F. Follett, and B. A. Stewart, eds. 1998. *Soil Processes and the Carbon Cycle*, CRC/Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, Fla.

Lebedeva, E. V., N. N. Lyalikova, and Yu Yu Bugel'skii 1978. "Participation of Nitrifying Bacteria in the Weathering of Serpentinized Ultrabasic Rocks" (in Russian), *Mikrobiolobiya* 47:1101-7.

Mann, C. 1999. "Genetic Engineers Aim to Soup Up Crop Photosynthesis," *Science* 283 (January 15) 314-16.

National Laboratory Directors 1997. *Technology Opportunities to Reduce U.S. Greenhouse Gas Emissions*, Oak Ridge National Laboratory.

Ralph J., J. J. MacKay, R. D. Hatfield, D. M. O'Malley, R. W. Whetten, and R. R. Sederoff 1997. "Abnormal Lignin in a Loblolly Pine Mutant," *Science* 277:235-9.

Ralph, J., R. D. Hatfield, J. Piquemal, N. Yahiaoui, M. Pean, C. Lapierre, and A. M. Boudet 1998. "NMR Characterization of Altered Lignins Extracted from Tobacco Plants Down-Regulated for Lignification Enzymes Cinnamylalcohol Dehydrogenase and Cinnamoyl-CoA Reductase," *Proc Natl Acad Sci U.S.A.* 95:12803-8.

Saxena, I. M., F. C. Lin, and R. M. Brown, Jr. 1990. "Cloning and Sequencing of the Cellulose Synthase Catalytic Subunit Gene of *Acetobacter Xylinum*," *Plant Molecular Biology* 15:673-83.

Saxena, I. M., F. C. Lin, and R. M. Brown, Jr. 1991. "Identification of a New Gene in an Operon for Cellulose Biosynthesis in *Acetobacter Xylinum*," *Plant Molecular Biology* 16:947-54.

Saxena, I. M., K. Kudlicka, K. Okuda, and R. M. Brown, Jr. 1994. "Characterization of Genes in the Cellulose Synthesizing Operon (Acs Operon) of *Acetobacter Xylinum*:

Implications for Cellulose Crystallization," *J. Bacteriology* 176:5735-52.

Skog, K. E., and G. A. Nicholson 1998. "Carbon Cycling through Wood Products: The Role of Wood and Paper Products in Carbon Sequestration," *Forest Products Journal* 48:75-83.

Stevens, T. O., and J. P. McKinley 1995. "Lithoautotrophic Microbial Ecosystems in Deep Basalt Aquifers," *Science* 270:450-4.

Stevens, T. O., and J. P. McKinley 1995. "Lithoautotrophic Microbial Ecosystems in Deep Basalt Aquifers," *Science* 270: 450-4.

University of Chicago 1998. "ISAM 'J' Carbon Cycle Model: Modify the CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions," University of Chicago, Department of the Geophysical Sciences, available at [www.geosci.uchicago.edu/~archer/cgimodels/isam.d.html](http://www.geosci.uchicago.edu/~archer/cgimodels/isam.d.html).

# 7

## *vision*

*Advances in chemical sciences and the resulting technologies allow gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> or its constituent carbon to be transformed into materials that are benign, are inert, are long-lived and contained in the earth or water of our planet, or have commercial value. These transformations represent economical ways to sequester CO<sub>2</sub> or its constituent carbon.*

## ADVANCED CHEMICAL APPROACHES TO SEQUESTRATION

### 7.1 INTRODUCTION

Advanced chemical processes might lead to unique sequestration technologies or to improvements in our understanding of chemistry that will enhance the performance of other approaches to sequestration. Chemistry is a crosscutting discipline that will interact with virtually all aspects of the sequestration problem. This chapter discusses R&D topics for options not covered in the previous chapters on sequestration technologies but that require advances in our understanding of chemistry.

Advanced chemistry shares significant common ground with separation and capture. Improved methods of separation, transport, and storage will benefit from research into advanced chemical techniques necessary to address sequestration via chemical transformation. Because any sequestration technique will involve storing vast amounts of carbon-rich materials, environmental chemistry is an important cross-linking technology to most of the approaches mentioned in this report. The fate of CO<sub>2</sub> in geological underground storage sites is in part determined by the chemical interaction of the CO<sub>2</sub> with the surrounding matrix, whether it is coal in coal beds or the mineral rock that caps saline aquifers deep underground where brines of carbonic acid can interact. Many issues pertaining to aqueous carbonate/bicarbonate chemistry are relevant to ocean disposal or underground disposal. Carbonate chemistry in very basic solutions may offer potential for extracting CO<sub>2</sub> from air. Because clathrates may be used to separate CO<sub>2</sub> from high-pressure systems, knowledge of their properties may be important to understanding approaches to ocean disposal. Subsurface arctic or

marine hydrate formations may also be evaluated as geologic disposal options. Enhancing soil carbon combines biological and environmental chemistry. Similarly, ocean fertilization generates biomass carbon that may interact with ocean chemistry.

### 7.1.1 Introduction to the Problem and Solutions

Most anthropogenic emissions of CO<sub>2</sub> result from the combustion of fossil fuels. Advanced technologies are being developed to use fossil fuels for co-production of chemicals along with power, including approaches to decarbonizing methane or coal to produce hydrogen. Hybrid approaches may be developed that are an alternative energy source to create hydrogen, making it reasonable to use the hydrogen and captured CO<sub>2</sub> to produce transportation fuels. A number of web sites contain information on the developmental technologies alluded to. See [www.nire.go.jp/NIRE/](http://www.nire.go.jp/NIRE/) and [www.fe.gov.doe/coal\\_power/](http://www.fe.gov.doe/coal_power/).

The advanced chemical technologies envisioned for the future would work with the technologies now being developed to convert recovered CO<sub>2</sub> economically to benign, inert, long-lived materials that can be contained in the earth or water of our planet or that have commercial value. Most of the advanced chemical approaches identified in this chapter assume that separation and capture processes will make available pressurized CO<sub>2</sub> with minimal (and defined) impurity levels at ambient temperature (i.e., pipeline CO<sub>2</sub>). Decarbonization technologies will produce particulate carbon at the site of the process, while advanced power generation technologies may produce

a separate stream of carbon monoxide (CO) for use as a feedstock at the plant site. Enhanced chemical processes may also play a role in indirect capture of CO<sub>2</sub> via terrestrial sinks or through ocean fertilization.

### 7.1.2 Potential Chemical Approaches to Sequestration

One potential approach to sequestration is to transform CO<sub>2</sub> into non-commercial materials that are inert and long-lived, such as magnesium carbonate (MgCO<sub>3</sub>). Because they have no commercial value, such materials would need to be sequestered in a relatively inexpensive way, such as refilling the mining pits that first provided the magnesium and associated material. After being incorporated in MgCO<sub>3</sub>, the whole world's 1990 output of carbon could be contained in a space 10 km × 10 km × 150 m (see sidebar "The Volume of Carbon Sequestration").

The ocean also may provide an inexpensive site for sequestration of carbon. Carbon dioxide can be incorporated in an ice-like material, called CO<sub>2</sub> clathrate, that is long-lived when located at a sufficient depth below the ocean surface. After being incorporated in CO<sub>2</sub> clathrate, the whole world's 1990 output of carbon could be contained in a space with a volume of approximately 80 km<sup>3</sup>.

Carbon dioxide, CO, or carbon from energy production also could be recovered and transformed into commercial products (e.g., plastics and rubber) that are inert and long-lived. In 1996, the world's total output of all such products required approximately 206 × 10<sup>6</sup> tonnes of carbon or 3.5% of the anthropogenic carbon emitted during that year (SRI 1997). Alternately, bulk commodities for use

### The Volume Required for Mineral Sequestration



The aerial photograph shows the Bingham Canyon copper mine on the left-hand side. The town of Copperton, Utah, is located to the right of the mine and to the left of the identification number 242 along the top (1 in. = 1.08 miles). Kennecott Copper extracts some 250,000 tons of rock every day from this mine. Kennecott has been mining this deposit for 90 years. The pit is currently half a mile deep and 2.5 miles wide. If it were a stadium, it could seat nine million people. An average sized power plant, operating at 33% efficiency when firing 12,500 Btu/lb coal, would require approximately 35,000 tons of silicate rock per day to capture the CO<sub>2</sub> produced based on the carbonate reaction shown in Table 7.1. To sequester a full year's carbon emissions—based on typical unit availability and capacity factors—would require space equivalent to 35 days of production from this mine.

### Comparison Between the Road Map Goal and Large Industrial Activities

A comparison of the amount of material in sequestered carbon and other large earthmoving activities

- The stated goal of this report is to have the capacity to sequester gigatonnes of carbon by the middle of the next century.
- In 1996, U.S. mines shipped approximately 1 gigatonne of sand and gravel.
- In 1996, U.S. mines shipped approximately 1 gigatonne of coal.
- The Iron and Steel Bureau estimates that the productive capacity of the world steel industry is 1 gigatonne per year.
- According to the Chemical Economics Handbook, the world petrochemical industry bases all of its products on seven precursors. Combined, in 1996 these seven precursors embodied approximately 0.2 gigatonnes of carbon.

**Table 7.1 Thermodynamics of chemical/physical transformations involving CO<sub>2</sub>**

	Chemical/physical transformation	ΔH <sub>298°K</sub> (Kcal/mole)
<i>Energy production</i>		
Coal combustion	C + O <sub>2</sub> → CO <sub>2</sub>	-94.05 <sup>a</sup>
Natural gas combustion	CH <sub>4</sub> + 2O <sub>2</sub> → CO <sub>2</sub> + 2H <sub>2</sub> O	-191.76 <sup>a</sup>
<i>Sequestration</i>		
Bicarbonate	CO <sub>2</sub> + 1/2CaSiO <sub>3</sub> + 1/2H <sub>2</sub> O → 1/2Ca <sup>2+</sup> + HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup> + 1/2SiO <sub>2</sub>	-15.70 <sup>a</sup>
Carbonate	CO <sub>2</sub> + 1/3Mg <sub>3</sub> Si <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub> (OH)4 → MgCO <sub>3</sub> + 2/3SiO <sub>2</sub> + 2/3H <sub>2</sub> O	-3.45 <sup>a</sup>
Oxalate	CO <sub>2</sub> + CO + CaSiO <sub>3</sub> → CaC <sub>2</sub> O <sub>4</sub> + SiO <sub>2</sub>	-31.34 <sup>a</sup>
Clathrate	CO <sub>2</sub> + 6H <sub>2</sub> O → CO <sub>2</sub> •6H <sub>2</sub> O	-5.68 <sup>b</sup> <sub>(at 121°K)</sub>
Liquification	CO <sub>2</sub> (g) → CO <sub>2</sub> (l)	-1.27 <sup>c</sup> <sub>(at 298°K, 63.5atm)</sub>
<i>Utilization</i>		
Methanol synthesis (Hydrogen production)	CO <sub>2</sub> + 3H <sub>2</sub> → CH <sub>3</sub> OH + H <sub>2</sub> O (3H <sub>2</sub> O → 3H <sub>2</sub> + 3/2O <sub>2</sub> )	-31.30 <sup>a</sup> (+205.05) <sup>a</sup>
Cyclic organic carbonate	CO <sub>2</sub> ± PhCH=CH <sub>2</sub> ± 1/2O <sub>2</sub> → PhCHO(C=O)OCH <sub>2</sub>	-55.3 <sup>d</sup>

<sup>a</sup>R. C. Weast, M. J. Astle, and W. H. Beyer. *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*. CRC Press, Boca Roton, Fla., 1988–1989.

<sup>b</sup>S. L. Miller and W. D. Smythe. “Carbon Dioxide Clathrate in the Martian Ice Cap,” *Science*, 170 (1970): 531–532.

<sup>c</sup>W. M. Braker and L. Allen. *Matheson Gas Data Book*, 6th Ed. Matheson, Lyndhurst, N.J., 1980, p. 26.

<sup>d</sup>N. Cohen and S. W. Benson. *Chem. Rev.* 93 (1993):2419–38.

in construction, for example, may represent larger target markets (see the sidebar on potential of sequestration sites and technologies).

In addition, as detailed knowledge is developed, the demands of various sequestration methods may drive the creation of techniques to capture the essence of natural processes. For example, it has been suggested that CO<sub>2</sub> could be sequestered in coal seams. Some of the research needed to investigate that possibility also will bear upon the potential for absorbing CO<sub>2</sub> into other materials that could provide temporary storage; such materials might be used to recover CO<sub>2</sub> from automobile exhaust or directly from the atmosphere. As another example, knowledge of biomimetic chemical techniques—which are essentially models or abstractions of biological processes—might allow us to duplicate these processes under controlled conditions and improve them to enhance reaction rates or

reduce the creation of unwanted or hazardous by-products.

## 7.2 CHEMICAL PROCESSES FOR SEQUESTRATION

Carbon chemistry is very flexible and has helped to create an impressive array of products. Many chemical process options exist for capture and sequestration or reuse of carbon. However, some require as much energy or consume as much raw material as did the original process that emitted the carbon. Such options may have value in a particular niche market, but they are unlikely to represent significant options for long-term sequestration of large quantities of carbon. Whether a process represents a desirable option varies with the economic circumstances and with the attitudes of society; thus it is important to identify a number of approaches that offer a flexible mix of

options. Options selected must meet these criteria:

- A process must be environmentally benign.
- It must be stable and sustainable for long-duration storage or disposal.
- It must be safe.
- It must be cost-competitive with alternative approaches to sequestration or avoidance.
- Sufficient knowledge of the process, such as thermodynamics and kinetics, must be developed to allow comprehensive analysis.
- It must be *prima facie* reasonable, particularly in terms of the energy balance.

This chapter identifies two groups of chemical processes: (1) those that produce materials for sequestration and (2) those that yield useful products of potential commercial value. We examined the knowledge required to determine whether these concepts represent viable options. We also evaluated the current state of knowledge for each process. For each concept, significant R&D needs included (1) an understanding of the basic chemistry and chemical engineering requirements; (2) process development, optimization, scale-up, and environmental control; and (3) systems issues of environmental and ecological impact and economic acceptability. In most cases, the basic chemical reactions have been identified, the basic thermochemical properties have been tabulated, and some process concepts have been established. However, substantial gaps remain.

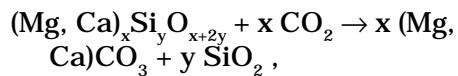
### 7.2.1 Inert Benign Long-Term Storage Forms

One goal of this effort is to design chemistry-based processes that can

convert separated and captured CO<sub>2</sub> to products appropriate for long-term, environmentally acceptable, and unmonitored storage. It is essential that these options be economically competitive with other approaches to sequestration when performed on the massive scale required to make a significant impact compared with CO<sub>2</sub> production rates. This approach is based on mimicry of natural chemical transformations of CO<sub>2</sub>, such as weathering of rocks to form calcium or magnesium carbonates and the dissolution of CO<sub>2</sub> in seawater to yield bicarbonate ions. These two exothermic reactions occur spontaneously in nature. Examples of products for disposal include carbonate (CaCO<sub>3</sub>/MgCO<sub>3</sub>), bicarbonate (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>), clathrate (CO<sub>2</sub>•nH<sub>2</sub>O), and oxalate (CaC<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>/MgC<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>). Table 7.1 presents data on key chemical reactions—some at the heart of the concepts discussed in this section and others that serve as points of reference. Note that schemes to produce fuels, such as methanol, require hydrogen gas. Combining the methanol synthesis reaction and the hydrogen production reaction shows that the combined process would require a large net energy input.

Four possible approaches to these process are discussed and the knowledge gaps are presented for each.

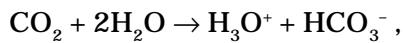
1. The conversion of natural silicate minerals by CO<sub>2</sub> to produce geologically stable carbonate minerals and silica,



is thermodynamically favorable, as is demonstrated by the natural weathering of silicates, albeit at a geologic pace. Current knowledge

of this reaction indicates that it is exothermic, that it can be carried out in several steps, and that sufficient raw materials are available to supply the silicates needed. The challenge is to design conditions of temperature, reaction medium, and reactor configuration that will allow this transformation to be carried out at sufficiently rapid rates. Examples of current studies include direct carbonation of mineral silicates with supercritical  $\text{CO}_2$  and water, molten salt carbonation of mineral silicates with molten  $\text{MgCl}_2$ , and the basic reaction mechanisms of  $\text{MgOH}$  conversion to  $\text{MgCO}_3$ . Topics requiring study include (1) the mechanism and kinetics for this gas-solid reaction, as well as catalysts and/or reaction media to promote it; (2) thermodynamics and kinetics of the gas-molten salt reactions and the chloride chemistry; (3) designs for solids-consuming, solids-producing reactors, control of the physical form of the solid products to optimize processing, and corrosion control; and (4) the economic and environmental impacts of mining of the silicates, surface disposal of the carbonate/silica product, and the trace metal products that may offer collateral economic benefits.

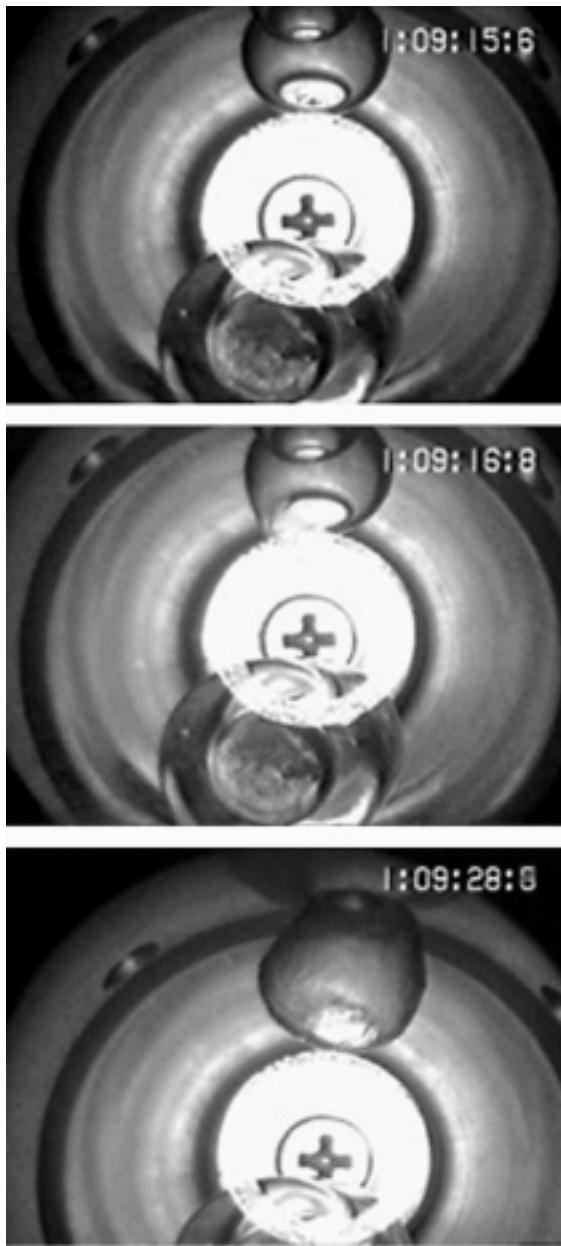
2. A second chemical system is dissolution of  $\text{CO}_2$  in the oceans (or other natural waters) as soluble bicarbonate,



coupled with the need for a source of added alkali to avoid lowering the pH of the body of water. This pathway is important both for sequestration in geologic

formations and for ocean disposal. The  $\text{CO}_2$  might simply be put in the ocean, where most of it would persist as dissolved gas, carbonic acid, and the bicarbonate ion if the  $\text{CO}_2$  were injected far enough below the surface. The bicarbonate ion might be created through development of biomimetic pathways in man-made systems and disposed of near the shore in shallow waters, assuming the needed cations could be provided. The current level of understanding of the process of dissolution and reaction is inadequate to allow development of a process with the potential to sequester  $\text{CO}_2$  at the rate at which it is currently produced in power plants. R&D on using bicarbonate to sequester  $\text{CO}_2$  should address (1) ocean and fresh water and electrolyte chemistry, the influence of solid surfaces, and the precipitation of carbonates; (2) design of reactors and injectors to facilitate efficient mixing of reactants; (3) the effects of enhanced bicarbonate levels on aquatic life and ecology and on the formation of carbonate deposits by advanced biological approaches; (4) rates of transportation from the atmosphere to the ocean; (5) rates of stimulated growth of candidate organisms to capture and hold  $\text{CO}_2$ ; and (6) biomimetic pathways to form calcium carbonate, including the process to make the necessary calcium available to the reaction.

3. The clathrate of  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (see Fig. 7.1), structurally analogous to the better known methane hydrate, may offer potential as a form for large-scale storage in the cold oceans or in man-made systems that mimic the requisite conditions. Clathrates may be used in  $\text{CO}_2$  separation from high-pressure



**Fig. 7.1. Mixtures of gas clathrates have been found near coasts around the world.** These gas hydrates may be mixtures of methane clathrates and CO<sub>2</sub> clathrates. If so, their presence prompts further investigation of the possibility that CO<sub>2</sub> clathrates could be sequestered in the same places. The photos show the formation of a gas clathrate during an experiment.

systems, and their properties may be important to understanding both approaches to ocean disposal and geologic disposal options. Forming

clathrates as a separation step in an integrated gasification combined cycle power plant could be attractive. Preliminary estimates of the energy required indicate that 3 to 4% of the total plant energy would be needed. This is an improvement over techniques available today. Based on what is now known, additional R&D will be required to (1) improve the definition of the phase diagram, thermodynamics, and physical properties of the CO<sub>2</sub>-H<sub>2</sub>O system at high pressure in the presence of the electrolytes and impurities found in the ocean, as well as improve the definition of the kinetics of formation and long-term stability of the clathrates; (2) identify practical methods for deep-ocean injection and mixing; and (3) assess the local ecological impacts of hydrate formation. Further exploration would be necessary to determine whether, in the longer term, CO<sub>2</sub> disposal via clathrate formation could be coupled with recovery of methane fuel from the methane hydrate deposits in the oceans.

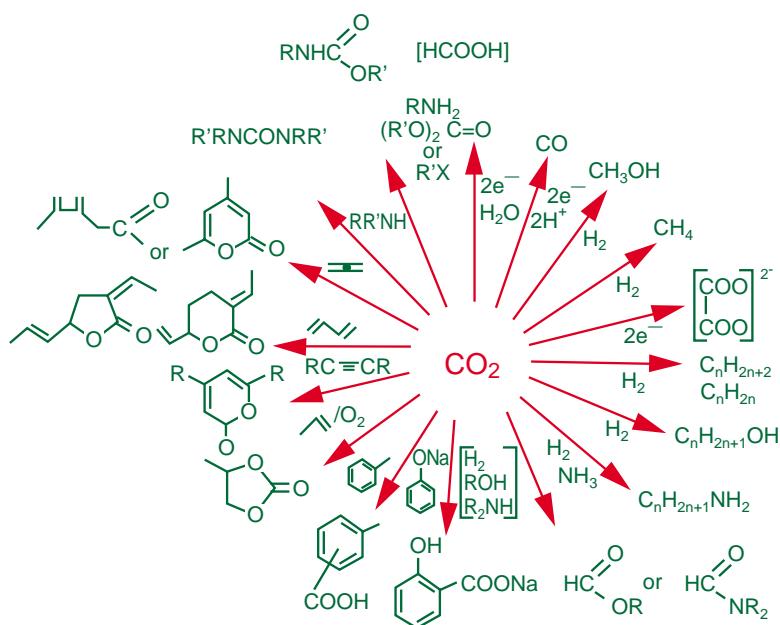
4. In addition to these process concepts, exploratory R&D is warranted on defining additional low-energy disposal states of carbon that would meet the guiding principles for this topic; examples might include formates and oxalates. Because CO<sub>2</sub> is an acidic gas, it can be captured by using an alkaline substance to form stable compounds with it. A procedure that uses one mole of alkali to transform two moles of CO<sub>2</sub>—such as in the transformation of CO<sub>2</sub> to low-energy-state poly-carbon compounds such as calcium/magnesium oxalate (CaC<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>/MgC<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>)—is desirable because of the greater CO<sub>2</sub>-to-alkaline ratio.

Research needs include (1) development of methods for synthesis of regenerable alkaline compounds and for effective use of alkaline; (2) use of molecular modeling to identify new compounds in which one mole of an alkaline species would tie up several moles of CO<sub>2</sub> (Zeissel 1998); (3) exploration of total energy requirements—which include those for chemical reactions as well as those for chemical processing—for both exothermic reactions involving CO<sub>2</sub> and endothermic reactions requiring a small amount of enthalpy input; (4) research into catalysis reactions, process optimization, surface disposal issues, and environmental concerns. Finally, engineering studies and system evaluations of the types described would be needed.

## 7.2.2 Products from Carbon Dioxide Utilization

The goal of CO<sub>2</sub> utilization is to design chemical processes that can convert separated and captured CO<sub>2</sub> to useful and durable products that have reasonable lifetimes (tens to hundreds of years). Carbon dioxide either in whole or in part can participate in many chemical reactions (Fig. 7.2).

Such utilization strategies, when examined from the perspectives of the current petrochemical industry, will not have the capacity to handle the bulk of emitted CO<sub>2</sub>. However, the products and durable goods that are produced may have greater value and storage lifetimes and lesser environmental impacts than existing means to produce these same products. Additional markets might be developed if R&D were directed toward creation of products with large annual uses, such



**Fig. 7.2. Paths to utilize CO<sub>2</sub> in synthetic chemistry.** Source: Aresta 1998.

### Use of Carbon in Ultralight Vehicles

The Rocky Mountain Institute has performed a number of analyses on development of ultralight vehicles. In December 1996, it published a report titled "Costing the Ultralite in Volume Production: Can Advanced-Composite Bodies-in-White be Affordable?" (Mascarin et al. 1996) that examines the use of a carbon-fiber-composite monocoque body-in-white in an ultralight vehicle or hypercar. The body of the car would be made of parts molded from advanced polymer composites and assembled with adhesives. The composites could be formed from carbon fibers embedded in an epoxy or other resin. The carbon fibers could represent approximately 50% of the total weight.

The typical hypercar prepared from these materials would have a curb weight of 637 kg, of which approximately 190 kg is the weight of the monocoque body. If carbon from the fuel cycle were used to create the products needed for construction of such a vehicle, each body shell might contain 100–150 kg of carbon (the report does not list the actual percentage of carbon in the monocoque body). The report discusses the cost of carbon fiber in terms of the size of the market needed to ensure a low cost for the needed material—a market of approximately 0.6 to 0.9 million carbon-fiber cars per year.

Assume that all the needed carbon from such a car body could be derived from either fuel decarbonization or from products made from CO or CO<sub>2</sub> captured after some or all of the chemical energy had been used for energy production. Then this market might require carbon sufficient to make approximately 750,000 cars/year, each car requiring 125 kilograms of carbon. This usage represents approximately 100,000 tonnes of carbon per year. A total of 750,000 cars per year would represent approximately 10% of the current U.S. new car market.

as construction materials or parts for automobile bodies (see sidebar on use of carbon in ultralight vehicles). However, widespread use of carbon-based products would require large shifts in infrastructure and would face stiff competition from the industries manufacturing the products they sought to displace.

Four end-uses that could be viewed as supporting the need for a particular technology are described in the following paragraphs, and gaps in knowledge are identified. This list is not comprehensive because of the great variety of organic synthesis routes that exist, but it provides a sense of the opportunity and scope of this approach to carbon sequestration. (See also Inui et al. 1998 and ACS et al. 1996).

- Particulate carbon, perhaps from methane decarbonization, could be converted into new composite materials and used in durable construction materials such as concrete. The challenge is finding economically viable methods of converting solid carbon into durable goods and new composites. An associated issue is the physical characteristics of the supplied carbon, assuming that the carbon comes from fuel decarbonization processes. Scientific and technological capabilities are needed to define the chemical pathways from hydrocarbons to solid carbon, discover new composite chemistry, and understand how to incorporate carbon into new building materials.

Specific needs include identification of (1) thermochemical processes, (2) new catalysts and reactors, and (3) alternative fuel sources. The lifetime of the product or material is a key variable to be considered in performing life-cycle and system cost and performance analyses.

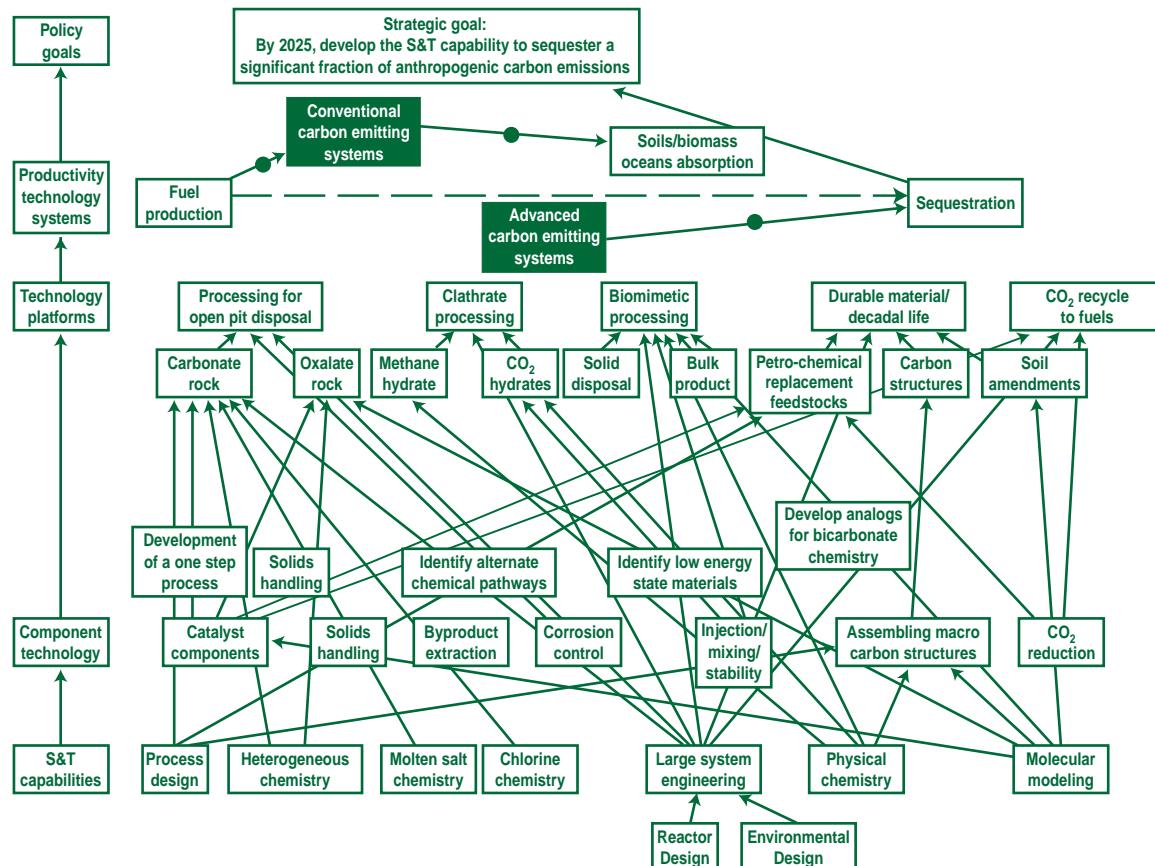
- Many studies have addressed the need to identify ways to use CO<sub>2</sub> as a carbon feedstock for production of plastics or other similar commodities. Needed scientific and technological capabilities include (1) definition of chemical reaction pathways, (2) catalyst development, and (3) process development and optimization. A significant environmental driver is the substitution of CO<sub>2</sub> for toxic substances such as phosgene, which is used as a feedstock to produce isocyanates, polycarbonates, and other products used in industrial processes. Research has uncovered the pathway for this substitution to occur exothermically, implying that more benign processing may be an economic driver as well. Product lifetimes need to be assessed, but we assume that they will be on the order of decades to centuries. Another approach might be partial oxidation (via gasification) to produce energy and some CO that could serve as a feedstock for chemical processes.
- Alternately, it might be possible to use the carbon either from the fuel or from products of the combustion process to create soil amendments to enhance sequestering carbon in natural systems. Similar technical concerns exist about, for example, how to optimize these products for their desired end use. However, the

requirements for achieving product purity and for avoiding potential environmental impacts differ.

- Finally, much attention has been focused on carbon-neutral processes in which fuels and chemicals are formed from CO<sub>2</sub> feedstocks via pathways that would use renewable energy sources. Scientific and technological capabilities will be needed to identify new catalysts, electrocatalysts, and efficient reactors. However, this approach requires a source of cheap hydrogen to react with CO<sub>2</sub>. Schemes have been proposed to split water to provide a source of hydrogen. Direct use of H<sub>2</sub> as a fuel, as an alternative to reacting hydrogen with CO<sub>2</sub>, should be addressed through a systems evaluation of costs and benefits. In general, the question of sequestration or avoidance needs to be addressed with respect to carbon-neutral processing.

### 7.3 ENABLING CHEMICAL TECHNOLOGIES

Previous sections of this chapter described the chemical aspects of sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> for ocean storage of bicarbonates and clathrates; land storage as solid alkaline carbonates; cross-compounds in which a simple cation ties up a number of CO<sub>2</sub> molecules; and storage in durable materials such as plastics, composites, and chemicals. Significant developments in enabling science and associated technologies are needed to support these concepts (see Fig. 7.3). Some processes will be greatly aided by improving computational capabilities related to molecular modeling for novel synthesis routes to make carbon-



**Fig 7.3. A road map of needed research into advanced chemical approaches.** The science and technology capabilities address needs of both advanced chemical processes and the other focus areas. These capabilities are topics that need attention in the near term, as are the component technologies that support the carbonate rock option and biomimetic processing (the latter would enhance the chances for success of sequestration in oceans and geologic formations).

based products, or for development of improved solvents such as sterically hindered amines to capture carbon from flue gases. Many of these capabilities are already under development to support creation of new energy and environmental technologies. A partial list of the enabling technologies needed includes

based products, or for development of improved solvents such as sterically hindered amines to capture carbon from flue gases. Many of these capabilities are already under development to support creation of new energy and environmental technologies. A partial list of the enabling technologies needed includes

- Develop catalysts needed to enhance geologic sequestration, use of the carbon in CO<sub>2</sub>, and decarbonization (e.g., mimic photosynthesis; use TiO<sub>2</sub> and sunlight to split CO<sub>2</sub>)
- Develop new solvents and sorbents for gas separations (O<sub>2</sub> from air or CO<sub>2</sub> from flue gas)
- Develop a thorough understanding of the chemistry key to CO<sub>2</sub> adsorption and methane desorption from coal seams
- Explore novel formulations for fertilizers to be applied to enhance terrestrial or oceanic sequestration concepts
- Create membranes and thin films for advanced separations (e.g., high-temperature ceramic membranes to enable air separation)
- Develop agglomerating agents, binding agents (e.g., coal and lithium zirconate), and coatings

- Improve high-temperature materials, particularly metal oxides (e.g., BaO and BaO<sub>3</sub> cycles for high-temperature separation or NiO or CoO mixed with yttria-stabilized zirconia for chemical looping combustion)
- Explore novel reactor concepts and the requisite sensors and controls

The development of improved catalysts and other new materials is particularly important.

**Catalysis.** Developing effective catalysts capable of multiple electron reduction chemistry is the major challenge for creating an effective technology for reducing CO<sub>2</sub> to high-energy intermediates. Considerable success has been achieved in the design, synthesis, and analyses of donor and acceptor assemblies capable of light-driven, one-electron charge separation processes. Current research demonstrates that remarkably enhanced catalytic efficiencies are achieved in natural and artificial photochemical systems by inducing redox chemistry on surfaces in constrained, structured environments.

Novel structured catalytic assemblies capable of initiating single-step, multiple-electron, reductive chemistry are needed. Redox assemblies capable of cooperative charge accumulation mimic the biological process of CO<sub>2</sub> reduction in photosynthesis and would provide a photoelectrochemical system that could use CO<sub>2</sub> as a chemical feedstock for synthesis of carbon-based chemicals.

New catalysts will be required to enhance the rates of formation of alkaline carbonates and oxalates. Additives that could enhance geologic sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> also are needed.

These materials would be injected with CO<sub>2</sub> early in the period of use to coat the cap rock or features toward the boundary of the reservoir. Over time, say after 5 years, they would begin to react with the injected CO<sub>2</sub> to seal the reservoir and reduce the potential for leakage.

**New materials.** New materials are needed to handle the extreme process conditions of molten salt chemistry. Chemical approaches (e.g., barium oxide and barium peroxide) to air separation or chemical looping combustion (nickel oxide or cobalt oxide mixed with yttria-stabilized zirconia) should be studied because they can take advantage of the high temperatures available at power plants. Binding and agglomeration processes must be defined both for the fabrication of products from particulate carbon and for other uses, such as the capture of CO<sub>2</sub> from vehicles. For example, materials like lithium zirconate might be good CO<sub>2</sub> absorbers and thus enable the capture of some CO<sub>2</sub> from vehicle emissions, a hitherto overlooked approach that merits long-range, high-risk research. As another example, composite materials that might result from adding carbon to plastics, polymers, glasses, cements and ceramics should be studied.

## 7.4 SUMMARY

This chapter explored three approaches to carbon sequestration using advanced chemical technologies:

1. Develop benign by-products for disposal. This avenue may offer the potential to sequester large (gigatonne) amounts of anthropogenic carbon.

2. Produce commercial products. This topic probably represents a lesser potential (millions of tonnes) but may result in collateral benefits tied to pollution prevention.
3. Conduct enabling studies that may impact the ability of technologies under development in other focus areas to meet their potential.

Based on our review of advanced chemical concepts, and recognizing needs identified in other focus areas, priority should be placed on obtaining the chemical knowledge required to

- Absorb/adsorb CO<sub>2</sub> in coal seams.
- Create MgCO<sub>3</sub> as described in the carbonate reaction in Table 7.1. The product is inert and benign.
- Understand and exploit CO<sub>2</sub> clathrates, ice-like materials that precipitate out of mixtures of water and CO<sub>2</sub> under the proper conditions.
- Form and dispose of aqueous solutions of carbonates, the bicarbonate ion being the most prominent, in the ocean or other appropriate bodies of water.
- Develop commercial products made from CO<sub>2</sub>, CO (from advanced power system concepts), or carbon created via decarbonization.

Table 7.2 provides more information about these approaches.

The materials above the double line (that is, oxalates, etc.) have virtually unlimited carbon sequestration potential. The ones below the line are less likely to play a major role based on both thermodynamic considerations and the potential size of target markets. Given current consumption patterns, only a small percentage of fossil carbon feedstocks is used for producing carbon-based goods. The rest goes toward energy production. Reduced carbon will be of interest in niche markets that are driven by the value of the products they generate. The chemical industry could use new chemical processes for producing valuable chemicals and materials, as well as avoid potential environmental penalties for continued CO<sub>2</sub> emissions. The economic benefits of new processes might provide increased technological competitiveness for industry and the ability to use CO<sub>2</sub> as a feedstock for chemical production in addition to current petroleum-based feedstocks. However, the overall effect of product development on carbon sequestration is likely to be small unless new products that are used in large quantities can be developed, such as building materials or materials

**Table 7.2 Approaches to sequestration using chemical processes and examples of their use**

Chemical form of carbon	Examples of implementation
Aqueous carbonate ions: CO <sub>3</sub> <sup>2-</sup> , HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup> Solid carbonates: CaCO <sub>3</sub> , MgCO <sub>3</sub>	Ocean disposal, deep saline aquifers Terrestrial, ocean floor, underground disposal
Clathrates: CO <sub>2</sub> •nH <sub>2</sub> O, n ~ 6 Carbon adsorption of CO <sub>2</sub> Other low-energy states of carbon, such as oxalates	Ocean, ocean floor disposal Coal bed methane extraction Novel disposal technologies
Solid carbon  Carbon-based fuels (e.g., methanol) Carbon bound in durable commercial goods (e.g., plastics)	Underground disposal, feedstock for composite materials CO <sub>2</sub> -based fuel cycles, alternative energy Long-lived construction materials

for automobile bodies. Based on the scale of sequestration that may be needed, our analysis favors research into those chemical options that offer the greater sequestration potential. Thus we consider stable and benign end products for disposal a more promising approach to the problem. In addition, enabling studies should be pursued that benefit both other sequestration methods and the development of chemical means to mimic natural processes under controlled conditions.

## 7.5 END NOTES

1. In hydrate-clathrate, the maximum ratio of guest molecules (e.g.,  $\text{CO}_2$ ) to water molecules is approximately  $1/7$ . (See E. Denude Sloan, Jr., 1998. *Clathrate Hydrates of Natural Gases*, Marcel Dekker, New York, p. 53.) The density of ice is approximately  $0.9 \text{ grams}/\text{cm}^3$ . To establish the needed order of magnitude, we assume that one gram-mole of ice (18 grams) occupies  $20 \text{ cm}^3$  and that at most  $1/7$  gram-mole of  $\text{CO}_2$  ( $44/7$  grams) occupies the same  $20 \text{ cm}^3$ . Thus  $1/7$  gram-mole of carbon occupies at least  $20 \text{ cm}^3$ , probably more. Hence we estimate the maximum effective density to be  $12/7$  grams of carbon per  $20 \text{ cm}^3$ , which is  $0.085 \text{ grams carbon}/\text{cm}^3$ . Thus after  $10^9$  tonnes of carbon was incorporated in  $\text{CO}_2$  clathrate, this clathrate would occupy a volume of at least  $1.2 \times 10^{11} \text{ m}^3$  or  $12 \text{ km}^3$ .
2. The ratio of the mass of  $\text{MgCO}_3$  to the mass of carbon incorporated therein is 7. It follows that  $10^9$  tonnes of carbon would be bound within  $7 \times 10^9$  tonnes of  $\text{MgCO}_3$ . The density of crystalline

$\text{MgCO}_3$  is  $3 \text{ grams}/\text{cm}^3$ . In practice, powdered material with a bulk density of somewhat less would be sequestered. Perhaps about 10% more space would be needed for powder than for crystal (e.g.,  $2.7 \text{ grams}/\text{cm}^3$ ). If so,  $7 \times 10^9$  tonnes of  $\text{MgCO}_3$  would occupy  $2.6 \times 10^9 \text{ m}^3$ , which is the volume of a box whose sides are  $10 \text{ km}$  by  $10 \text{ km}$  and whose height is  $26 \text{ m}$ .

## 7.6 REFERENCES

ACS (American Chemical Society), American Institute of Chemical Engineers, Chemical Manufacturers Association, Council for Chemical Research, and Synthetic Organic Chemical Manufacturers Association 1996. *Technology Vision 2020: The U.S. Chemical Industry*, Washington, D.C., available at <http://www.chem.purdue.edu/CCR/v2020/> (accessed 12/21/98).

Aresta, Michele 1998. "Perspectives of Carbon Dioxide Utilization in the Synthesis of Chemicals. Coupling Chemistry with Biotechnology," in T. Inui, M. Anpo, K. Izui, S. Yanagida, T. Yamaguchi, eds., *Advances in Chemical Conversions for Mitigating Carbon Dioxide: Proceedings of the Fourth International Conference on Carbon Dioxide Utilization, Kyoto, Japan, September 7-11, 1997*, Vol. 114, Elsevier Science B.V.

EIA (Energy Information Administration) 1997. *Emissions of Greenhouse Gases in the United States 1996*, DOE/EIA-0573, U.S. Department of Energy, Washington, D.C., October.

EIA (Energy Information Administration) 1998. *International Energy Outlook, 1998*, DOE/EIA-0484, Washington, D.C., April.

Inui, T., M. Anpo, K. Izui, S. Yanagida, T. Yamaguchi, eds. 1998. *Advances in Chemical Conversions for Mitigating Carbon Dioxide: Proceedings of the Fourth International Conference on Carbon Dioxide Utilization*, Kyoto, Japan, September 7–11, 1997, Vol. 114, Elsevier Science B.V.

Mascarin, A. E., J. R. Dieffenbach, M. M. Brylawski, D. R. Cramer, and A. B. Lovins 1996. *Costing the Ultralight in Volume Production: Can Advanced-Composite Bodies-in-White be Affordable?* (December 1996 revision), available at [http://www.rmi.org/hypercars/b\\_i\\_w/T95\\_35.html](http://www.rmi.org/hypercars/b_i_w/T95_35.html) (accessed 12/21/98).

SRI International 1997. *The Chemical Economics Handbook*, Menlo Park, Calif., 350.0000E.

Zeissel, R. 1998. "Molecular Tailoring of Organometallic Polymers for Efficient Catalytic CO<sub>2</sub> Reduction: Mode of Formation of Active Species," in T. Inui, M. Anpo, K. Izui, S. Yanagida, T. Yamaguchi, eds., *Advances in Chemical Conversions for Mitigating Carbon Dioxide: Proceedings of the Fourth International Conference on Carbon Dioxide Utilization*, Kyoto, Japan, September 7–11, 1997, Vol. 114, Elsevier Science B.V.



# Vision

*Emerging technology road maps furnish a framework for managing and reviewing the complex, dynamic R&D process needed to achieve important strategic goals.*

## 8

# DEVELOPING AN EMERGING TECHNOLOGY ROAD MAP FOR CARBON CAPTURE AND SEQUESTRATION

## 8.1 INTRODUCTION

Road-mapping techniques are being used by numerous industrial firms, industry collaborative groups, and government agencies in their planning processes. The term "road mapping" has been broadly applied to many kinds of activities, and there are many types of road maps.

The purpose of an emerging technology road map is to provide—and encourage the use of—a structured scientific R&D planning process. Emerging technology road maps furnish a framework for managing and reviewing the complex, dynamic R&D process needed to achieve important strategic goals. These road maps show graphically how specific R&D activities can create the integrated technical capabilities needed to achieve strategic objectives. This chapter describes the creation of an emerging technology road map for the capture and sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>.

## 8.2 A CARBON CAPTURE AND SEQUESTRATION SYSTEM

An emerging technology road map seeks to identify the scientific and technological developments needed to achieve a specific technology goal. The process of identifying the needed science and technology must be focused by developing a concept of the technological system that would enable achievement of that goal. This task is particularly difficult in the case of carbon capture and sequestration because there is no paradigm for such a system.

Today, carbon is emitted to the atmosphere from energy technologies that were not designed to capture, let alone sequester, these emissions. There are many ideas for, and even demonstrations of, technology to capture and sequester carbon from fossil fuel combustion. However, we must consider that the current energy system could be modified significantly to make an economical capture and sequestration system possible. Thus the emerging technology road map for carbon capture and sequestration cannot be constructed apart from consideration of current and emerging energy technologies. It will involve an iterative process to connect this road map with others being developed by DOE for various parts of the energy technology system.

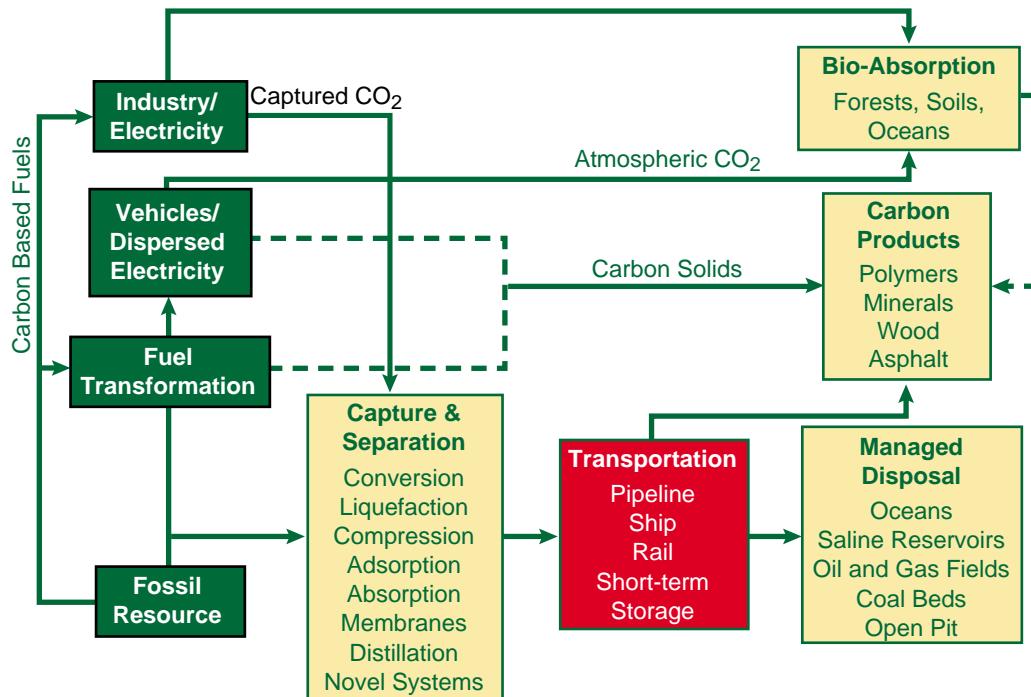
Figure 8.1 gives a top-level picture of a carbon capture and sequestration system and its linkages to the energy system. Within the current fossil energy system, carbon is processed in several forms by different fossil fuel technologies in many different parts of the energy system. To keep it from being emitted to the atmosphere, this carbon must be captured, processed in some way to separate or purify it, and changed to a solid, liquid, or gaseous form that is convenient for transport. It can then be transported in an engineered system to a site for sequestration or for transformation into a long-lived end product. Alternatively, the carbon could be emitted as CO<sub>2</sub> and transmitted through the atmosphere if sequestration by bio-absorption can be assured in some part of the natural carbon cycle.

This report has concentrated principally on the new scientific understanding and technology (shown in white in Fig. 8.1) that are needed for specific capture and sequestration

functions. Transportation technologies (shown in gray) have not been addressed. However, particularly in Chaps. 2 and 7, reference is also made to specific changes in components of the existing energy system (shown in black) that would simplify and/or lower the cost of capture and sequestration.

The close relationship between fuel transformation—from natural hydrocarbons to refined fuels for transportation and/or dispersed energy technology—is of particular importance in this regard. Changes in the carbon content of refined fuels can alter the flow of carbon through the capture and sequestration system. Lowering the carbon contents of transportation fuels can change the balance between carbon transported through the atmosphere and that which must be handled in potentially more expensive engineered systems. The form of fossil-fueled electricity-generating technology also plays an important role in determining the form and cost of capture and sequestration technology. The cost and applicability of the individual capture and sequestration technologies shown depends fundamentally on the particular fossil-fueled electricity-generation technology employed. These are two areas for particular emphasis in coordinating this road map with other DOE transportation and fossil energy technology road-mapping efforts.

The major capture and sequestration technologies are listed in Fig. 8.1 and are discussed in detail in Chaps. 2–7. Each can be developed and improved individually. However, the economic cost and effectiveness of the overall carbon capture and sequestration system depend on the effective combination of many technologies.



**Fig. 8.1. The top-level diagram of a carbon capture and sequestration technology system showing the relationship to the fossil energy system.**

Their relative importance must finally be judged in the context of the integrated technology system. The system shown in Fig. 8.1 is adequate for taking the first steps in developing a carbon capture and sequestration emerging technology road map, but a more detailed system engineering effort will be required to add economic and engineering substance to this sketch before the requirements needed to plan an R&D program can be generated.

### 8.3 BUILDING AN EMERGING TECHNOLOGY ROAD MAP

After identifying the technology goals and the integrated technology system needed to satisfy those goals, the next step in developing an emerging technology road map is to assess the alternative technological pathways that

might lead to achieving the integrated technology system. The approach is to construct these pathways within a technological hierarchy. The highest level of the hierarchy is the integrated technology system—in this case, the carbon capture and sequestration system. The hierarchy ends with the science and technology capabilities that are needed to develop the technologies that make the system economical and effective.

Analyzing the integrated technology system in terms of its component functions and the performance required to meet the strategic goal connects these extremes. First, we identify the critical technology platforms that might provide high value in the operation of the integrated technology system. The technological components that make up the technology platforms can also

**Definitions of the Technology Hierarchy**

**Technology platform:** A combination of components; intellectual property; and market, business, and technical know-how that can be applied to a family of process needs.

**Component:** A technology or specific knowledge that performs, or allows the performance of, a unit function supporting one or more technology platforms.

**S&T Capability:** General science, engineering, and management knowledge and skills that enable development of components and technology platforms.

frequently be identified within the integrated technology system. However, the performance or development requirements of these components must be determined from the needs of the technology platforms, which are aimed at increasing the economic performance of the whole system.

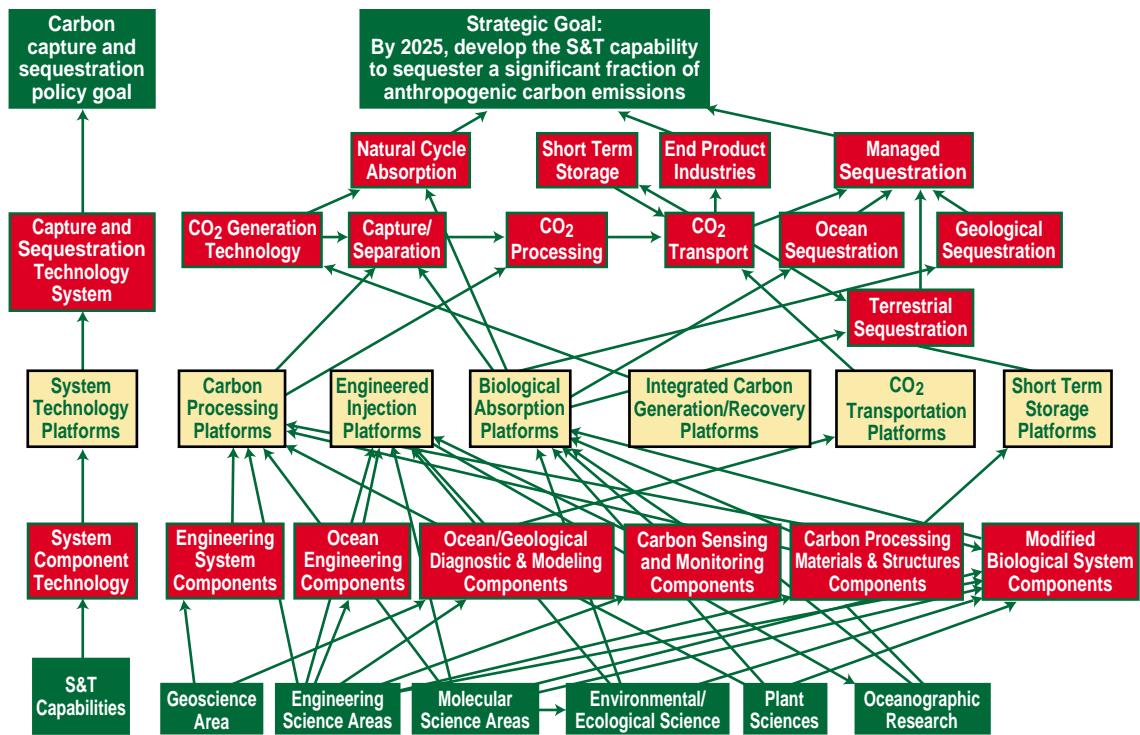
As applied to emerging technologies, the hierarchy includes technology in different stages of development. In fact, not all of the science or technology in an emerging technology road map is well defined. Some elements may well be represented by little more than functional requirements and a technical intelligence-gathering plan to identify scientific or technological approaches. Thus after assembling the framework of the road map by working downward through the hierarchy from policy goals to capabilities, one must also work upward from the capability level to identify possible pathways and to map a course of development.

## 8.4 BUILDING THE CARBON CAPTURE AND SEQUESTRATION ROAD MAP

Chapters 2–7 are organized by related areas of scientific expertise. These chapters were prepared by experts in each science and technology area that would be needed to develop a carbon capture and sequestration system such as that shown in Fig. 8.1. The material provided by these expert groups is the foundation for developing a carbon capture and sequestration road map.

To develop the outline of an emerging technology road map from this material, the carbon capture and sequestration system outlined in Fig. 8.1 was broken down into its functional components. The result is shown graphically as the capture and sequestration technology system in Fig. 8.2.

Then, using the Graphical Modeling System (GMS), an integration group asked each of the working groups to identify technology platforms that they believed would be critical for the efficient performance of these system functions and that were particularly dependent on the group's science and technology. Within these technology platforms, the groups were asked to identify specific components, again within their science and technology areas, that they believed could be important to the development of these technology platforms. Finally, each group was asked to identify the science and technology capabilities that would be essential for the successful development of the technology that they had identified. They also specified the relationships between the science and technology at each level within this science and technology hierarchy. This exercise enabled each of the working groups to better perceive the



**Fig. 8.2. The structure of an emerging technology road map for carbon capture and sequestration.** The boxes (nodes) contain the science and technology needs developed by expert working groups in Chaps. 2–7. The lines represent the relationships and performance requirements among technologies.

relationship of its particular technical area to the overall carbon capture and sequestration system. Each of the working groups also adapted this general approach to better illuminate the technical discussion in its chapter.

The integration group assembled all of this expert input into a system-level outline of an emerging technology road map (Fig. 8.2). The outline illustrates the complex interdependence of the science and technology described in the preceding six chapters. To achieve the capability to capture and sequester a significant fraction of anthropogenic carbon by 2025, development is required at each level of this hierarchy supporting a fully functional carbon capture and sequestration system. Even at this stage in the development of a road map,

the need for a coordinated science and technology development program is evident from the many science and technology relationships shown in Fig. 8.2.

The science and technology underlying the nodes at each level of the hierarchy in Fig. 8.2 is discussed in more depth in Chaps. 2–7. Each of these items is also shown in summary fashion in Tables 8.1–8.3. Working from the bottom to the top of Fig. 8.2, to support the carbon capture goal, the next step is to assemble the capabilities, develop critical components, create new technology platforms, and integrate them with old technology to form a new carbon capture and sequestration system. From the capability to the systems level, technology becomes increasingly

**Table 8.1. System technology platforms**

Carbon processing technology platforms	Engineered injection platforms	Biological absorption platforms	Integrated carbon generation and recovery platforms	CO <sub>2</sub> distribution and storage platforms
Durable material processing	Geologic injection	Soils	CO <sub>2</sub> recycle combustion	CO <sub>2</sub> hydrates and transportation
Low-temperature distillation	Ocean injection - Tankers - Pipelines	Ocean fertilization	Chemical looping combustion	
Adsorption technology		Algal absorption systems	Biomass fuel production	
Membrane separations		High-productivity plants		
Absorption technology		Microbial CO <sub>2</sub> absorption		
CO <sub>2</sub> to fuels processing		Agricultural systems		
Bio-mimetic processing		Forests		
Clathrate processing				
Microbial biochemical reactors				
Carbonate processing				

integrated as it moves from the research laboratory to commercial application. In the past, these stages of development were often sequential. Today, they are more often overlapping in time and involve extensive interaction through the development and commercialization process. Exploring the path from science to system application consists of identifying the expected technology needs and performance requirements at each level of integration and mapping the relationships between them.

## 8.5 BUILDING THE R&D CAPACITY

The road mapping presented in this chapter leads to a three-pronged approach to R&D:

- Specific fundamental scientific breakthroughs in chemistry, geology, and biology that are necessary to achieve the vision presented in Chap. 1 are described below and in Chaps. 2–7.
- Large-scale field experiments would help scientists understand the efficacy, stability, and impact of stored carbon, as well as its consequences on humans and the

**Table 8.2. System component technologies**

Engineering system components	Ocean engineering components	Geological diagnostic and modeling components	Carbon processing materials and structure components	Modified biological system components
Solids handling	Deep sea structural engineering	Reservoir characterization	Catalysis components	Species selection and genetics
Process CO <sub>2</sub> reduction	Hydrate formation technology	Reservoir distribution identification	Gas-liquid contactors	Crop and land management
Corrosion control	Drilling and injection	Geo-monitoring technology	Gas-solid contactors	Photosynthetic system enhancement
Byproduct extraction	Injection mixing and stability		Molecular sieves	Microbial rhizosphere enhancement
Carbon sensor technology	Plume modeling		Enhanced heat and mass transport technology	Soil improvement
In situ ocean carbon monitors			Solvents	Controlled eco-physiology
Tracer technology			Assembling macro-carbon structures	Ecosystem management
			Adsorbents	Fertilizer design and delivery
			Electro-swing adsorption materials	Microbial CO <sub>2</sub> transformation
				Environmental technology
				CO <sub>2</sub> fixation optimization

environment. These might be accomplished by piggy-backing on projects being conducted for other purposes in collaboration with industry, other federal agencies, and/or international programs.

- A coordinated program would take advantage of advances in basic research and findings from field studies. These data and conclusions should be

coordinated, communicated, and integrated to better target additional scientific research and the design of future field experiments.

### 8.5.1 Advanced Sensors and Monitoring Systems

This three-pronged approach is supported by three system technology

## Carbon Sequestration Research and Development

**Table 8.3. Science and technology capabilities**

Engineering science areas	Geoscience areas	Chemical and molecular science areas	Environmental/ ecological science areas	Plant science areas	Oceanographic research areas
Reactor design	Multiphase flow	Surface modeling	Ecosystem modeling	Plant physiology	Ocean general circulation modeling
Large system engineering	Fluid dynamics	Kinetic modeling	Ecological monitoring - Field testing - Long-term stability	Plant pathology	Ocean chemistry
Environmental design	Geochemical reactions and kinetics	Molecular modeling	Ecological inventories	Metabolic engineering	Oceanic biosphere
Process design	Reservoir modeling	CO <sub>2</sub> hydrate chemistry	Environmental impact assessment	Genetic engineering	
Multiphase flow	Geophysical detail resolution	Heterogeneous chemistry	Ecosystem dynamics	Molecular biology	
Fluid dynamics	Geomechanics - In situ stress - Reservoir leakage and integrity	Chlorine chemistry	Microbial ecology (genomics)		
Environmental design		Physical chemistry			
Process design		Molten salt chemistry			
Reservoir modeling		Soil bio-chemistry			
Geophysical detail resolution		Material synthesis			
Geo-mechanics - In situ stress - Leakage/integrity					

platforms and one system component technology that cuts across all focus areas.

The cross-cutting systems component technology is advanced sensors and monitoring systems. There is a continuing need to build more robust

and sensitive sensors for measuring various biological and chemical species. These sensors need to be developed for making precise and accurate measurements in remote and/or hostile environments. Continuous improvements must also be made in monitoring systems to

ensure that data are available in real time and the overall measurement systems will operate under a variety of conditions. The need for advanced sensors and monitoring systems is important for four reasons: (1) The nature of separation, capture, storage, and removal of CO<sub>2</sub> from the atmosphere needs to be quantified in order to measure the efficacy of the technology. Without such characterization, it will be difficult to understand the underlying processes. (2) The stability of the sequestration methods must be validated. We need to know how long the carbon will stay. This will be particularly necessary for oceanic, terrestrial, and geological sequestration. New sensors will need to be developed to measure carbon speciation in soils and CO<sub>2</sub> chemical and physical behavior in geological formations. (3) We must have measurement systems to evaluate impacts due to carbon sequestration. These impacts will need to be shared with the public. This will require development of sensors and monitoring systems for measurement of possible impacts in ocean, geologic, and terrestrial reservoirs. (4) Carbon sequestration will need to be monitored and verifiable if it is to play a role in international agreements.

### 8.5.2 Carbon Processing Platforms

The first technology platform is carbon processing. The focus of this platform is the development of advanced chemical technologies, which are in turn platforms for capture and separation and the development of technologies with collateral benefits. The effectiveness of capture and separation technologies in isolating relatively pure CO<sub>2</sub> for transport and sequestration will also determine the potential efficacy of geological and ocean sequestration options. The

technology platforms that will be required include:

- Chemical/physical absorption, such as the synthesis of novel absorbents
- Chemical/physical adsorption
- Advances in membrane technologies, such as the development of polymeric membranes for increasing dissolution/diffusion rates
- Mineralization/biomineralization, such as developing better reaction paths for formation of carbonates and bicarbonates for geologic and ocean dissolution and sequestration
- Low-temperature distillation systems
- Novel concepts, such as better methods for producing CO<sub>2</sub> clathrates and use of algal bioscrubbers on emissions streams

Capture and separation technologies can also be developed based on engineering and/or chemistry advances of existing technologies already being used in industries such as oil and gas refineries. An important side benefit can be the capture and separation of hydrogen to be used as a clean fuel.

Advances in chemistry research can specifically support oceans and geological sequestration. Geological sequestration will require a better understanding of corrosion, as well as of silicate/carbonate complex interactions. Research will be needed in chemistry and materials sciences to support these geological options. Chemical research in biomimetic processing and the production of clathrates can enhance the effectiveness of engineered solutions for the sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> in the oceans. In particular, the ability to

sequester carbon as bicarbonates or carbonates cost-, resource-, and energy-efficiently will markedly increase the time for which carbon is effectively sequestered.

Chemistry research also has the best potential for developing collateral benefits. Carbon species can be manufactured into commercial commodities, thus giving sequestration an additional economic driver for commercialization. Two problems exist with this approach. First, removing carbon prior to combustion may increase its economic potential but will reduce its energy content. Second, the current market cannot properly use the potentially large amounts of carbon-containing materials produced as part of these processes. New markets and uses will need to be created. Some of these may be in the development of durable materials that could be used for construction materials or soil amendments. Other enabling technologies that would be developed as part of this research would include new catalysts, chemical sensors, and manufacturing process chemicals.

It is important to note that, while there is a huge amount of information on the inorganic and organic chemistry of carbon dioxide, sequestration needs will require new breakthroughs.

### 8.5.3 Biological Absorption Platforms

Biological absorption is the second system technology platform. Scientific research in this area will be necessary to enhance the ability of terrestrial and soil sinks to sequester CO<sub>2</sub>, which will be based on advanced biological research. Plant sciences must develop new rapid-growing species and new, commercially viable woody species. Genetic engineering and molecular biology advances must be used to

create new plant species and enhance microbial rhizospheres to increase plant productivity. Research must be done to increase understanding of soil biogeochemistry to enhance carbon uptake and sequestration in soils. As is the case with ocean sequestration, ecosystem dynamics must be better understood to evaluate potential impacts of new farming methods, introduction of new species, control of pests, and increased carbon content in soils. Finally, a potential way of enhancing ocean sequestration may be coupled with advanced biological research. Bioengineered solutions for increasing the primary productivity of oceans will allow for improved biological mechanisms of increased CO<sub>2</sub> uptake. Additionally, the development of algal scrubbers for CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture may enhance technologies in this area.

### 8.5.4 Engineered Injection Platforms

The third key system technology platform is engineered systems. The emphasis for sequestration in oceans and geological sinks is similar: although progress has been made in the geological arena, improved injection systems must be developed to enhance the delivery of CO<sub>2</sub> to these sinks. In addition, many research advances in chemistry will require innovative engineered systems to effectively implement new technologies.

All of these findings are interrelated. For example, ocean and geological sequestration will not be effective unless efficient capture, separation, storage, and transportation technologies are developed to deliver CO<sub>2</sub> to sink locations. Capture and separation technologies in turn must rely on advances in chemistry and concomitant engineered solutions to

make these technologies efficient and cost-effective.

It is clear from Tables 8.1–8.3 that the technology platforms are not all equally developed. One of these platforms, short-term storage, has not been examined at all because the carbon capture and sequestration system has not yet been sufficiently specified. It is included simply because the current natural gas transmission system, although small by comparison to an eventual CO<sub>2</sub> transmission system in terms of gas volume, requires large short-term storage capacity to operate.

Other platforms, such as integrated carbon generation and recovery, are bridges to other road-mapping efforts. For instance, the road map supporting Vision 21 (a proposed description of the future evolution of fossil fuel technology) is considering modifications to fossil power systems that could significantly simplify the capture of CO<sub>2</sub>. Some platforms, such as CO<sub>2</sub> transportation or engineered injection, are brief because of an assumption that a great deal of experience has already been accumulated in these areas. This assumption will require further examination after a more detailed system engineering picture of a carbon capture and sequestration system is developed.

The most elaborated platforms are carbon processing and biological absorption. This is natural for the carbon processing platform because of the wealth of known chemical engineering techniques that might be adapted to this problem. This platform will become more focused as the conditions under which carbon must be captured and processed become more clear from system analysis and

other energy and fossil fuel transformation road maps.

On the other hand, one might expect the elements within the biological absorption platform to expand even further as the wealth of possibilities presented by progress in the biological sciences is further explored. This richness is also reflected in the technology components supporting this platform.

The inclusion of the biological absorption platform is a genuine departure from traditional lines of energy technology development. It brings with it ties to agricultural and ecological research that have been tenuous at best in the history of energy development. Once carbon capture and sequestration become a feature of energy planning, scientific and technological progress in these fields assumes a key role in future energy development.

Recognizing linkages between disparate fields of knowledge such as these is a key feature of the road-mapping process. Developing and exploiting these linkages requires further effort.

## 8.6 NEXT STEPS

This chapter has described the first stage in developing an emerging technology road map for carbon capture and sequestration. Starting from a potential DOE policy goal, the technology system to achieve that goal has been sketched out. The areas of scientific and technological development needed to support this general technology system have been identified, including new areas foreign to traditional energy technology development.

Although mutual relationships and dependencies of scientific and technological development in all of these fields have been identified and are indicated by the links in Fig. 8.2, the corresponding performance requirements have not yet been developed. Nor has the phasing of potential R&D schedules been considered. Overlaps have been eliminated to some extent, but priorities and gaps in the technology needs have not been examined. More work needs to be done on specifying the economic constraints and technology needs of the integrated carbon capture and sequestration system illustrated in Fig. 8.1. This work can be done in parallel with the steps outlined in the following paragraphs, but it must be done to provide substance to the final road map.

The road map outline described is a valuable product. It should be used as a framework for Phase II of the Carbon Sequestration Road Map in developing a quantitative evaluation of the science and technology requirements for a carbon sequestration system. This is an essential aspect of building a usable road map with all of the requisite characteristics.

Road maps should integrate planning and implementation. The road map should consider all the plans of the organization, such as mission and visioning, market analysis, and portfolio analysis. But it goes beyond mere vision to develop a general plan for developing capabilities. Actionable items should naturally flow from the road map. The primary purpose of the emerging technology road map is to influence future events, not to predict them. Program objectives set for the future should, of course, be based on

realistic expectations about market, policy, and technical trends. However, no one can predict the future. The value of emerging technology road maps derives from the fact that the future can be shaped by new technological developments. Road maps are intended for revision. A road map is not a plan for the future that is unchangeable when it is completed. As events unfold and new research results emerge, the plan must be changed to address the most current state of knowledge—and to build beyond the new frontier. The road map should provide a mechanism for accommodating serendipity—external events and new research results that should be incorporated into the technology development plans. The process of reaching a consensus is as important as the product. To be truly effective, the road map should be a vision of the future reached by consensus among all parties who have responsibility for the R&D—the funders, developers/deliverers, and implementers/users of technology.

Thus, the process of road mapping is as important as the final product of the process—the road map itself. Frequent communication with upper management along the way, involvement of all layers and functions of the DOE organization, and stakeholder participation are keys to success. Based on the results obtained so far, the stakeholders include other government agencies and the agricultural industry in addition to the energy industry. Many different views and priorities must be considered and synthesized into a coherent plan to carry out R&D on carbon capture and sequestration. This will develop the support needed as DOE attempts to implement the emerging technology road map.

# Vision

An effective carbon sequestration R&D program will require interagency cooperation and partnership with industry and nongovernmental organizations to ensure that scientific innovation leads to practical application.

## 9

## STAKEHOLDER PERSPECTIVES

*“Removing carbon dioxide from the atmosphere is as important as controlling emissions. Basic and applied research need to be pursued in the face of political obstacles. Alongside attempts to limit mankind’s production of greenhouse gases, there is a pressing need to find ways of removing carbon from the atmosphere and ‘sequestering’ it in the land, in geological formations and in the oceans. The government has now taken laudable steps in that direction . . . At a DOE workshop on sequestration last week, researchers were bullish about ocean and geological sequestration research. More positively still, there is an encouraging level of cooperation between the agency’s Office of Science and Office of Fossil Energy—offices that haven’t always had a smooth working relationship. But on sequestration, the Office of Science’s orientation towards more basic research appears to fit well alongside the more applied outlook of the Office of Fossil Energy. Such cooperation will be necessary to lead the way as the complexities and costs of sequestration become better understood. This cooperative attitude must also extend to the partnerships between scientists and industry if large-scale sequestration is to be made reality.” (Nature 401; Sept. 23, 1999; [www.nature.com](http://www.nature.com)).*

No one can ensure today that in 10, 20, or 30 years carbon sequestration will be the answer — or one of the answers — to the problem of global climate change. No one can predict whether in 20 or 30 years the world will embrace fossil fuels as future fuels, enjoying their benefits and discarding concerns over their impacts on the world’s climate. We hope to agree that this is an area with enough significance— and enough potential to ultimately affect every person on this planet — to warrant making our best effort to get it started right.

Following through on DOE’s intent to include in the development of its carbon sequestration research program a broad diversity of stakeholder perspectives, a Carbon Sequestration Stakeholders Workshop was held on September 14–15, 1999, in

Gaithersburg, Maryland. DOE used a team of about 70 technical specialists from its national laboratories, academia, industry, and other federal agencies to organize and develop the first draft of this report on *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development*, distributed in February 1999. That report served as the basis for dialog at this workshop.

The workshop had several goals. In a speech in June 1999, Secretary Richardson emphasized that carbon sequestration is an important third option in DOE's climate portfolio. He also asked for help in putting together a program that made sense (Richardson 1999). DOE wanted to attract the attention of the best minds in the business and obtain a critical review of the first draft of this report from a broader community of experts than were involved in the writing of the draft report. Advice, based on other research programs and experience, was needed to refine DOE's research agenda. The development of a community of carbon sequestration researchers would be useful, and this workshop could help improve the necessary collaborations, partnerships, and common understandings.

DOE used this Stakeholders Workshop to obtain feedback from the technical and commercial sectors on the contents of its carbon sequestration research plan, as described in this report. The potential contributions of scientific innovation and the application needs of industry were examined. Advice was collected from attendees on their perspectives for priorities for the R&D program. This was an opportunity to ascertain what other researchers were thinking, to see what industry was doing relative to CO<sub>2</sub> emission reductions and sequestration, and to learn

how nongovernmental organizations were approaching carbon sequestration options. Most important, this workshop started the process of building collaborations and forming partnerships among stakeholders.

Promoting a new area of technical endeavor, such as carbon sequestration, is a process of collection and maturation of innovative ideas. This workshop serves as a starting point for DOE to develop the interest of a community of researchers who would devote their creative thinking to address the challenges of carbon sequestration.

The workshop was opened with introductory remarks by Martha Krebs, Director of DOE's Office of Science, and Robert Kripowicz, Principal Deputy Assistant Secretary of the Office of Fossil Energy. They discussed DOE's approach to carbon sequestration research, from its most basic principles to its most practical applications, and noted that this broad spectrum of research, in turn, will require close intra- and inter-agency as well as external coordination and cooperation.

The plenary sessions were organized around speakers who represented their own views and, as well as possible, various stakeholder groups: the international nongovernmental sector, the research community, the environmental community, and the energy industry. Breakout groups, organized around sequestration options, provided an arena for discussion and input to the report. They included sessions on separation and capture, ocean sequestration, sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems, sequestration in geological systems, and advanced concepts (biological and chemical) for carbon sequestration.

Reports from the plenary sessions and the breakout groups are presented beginning on page 9-7 of this chapter.

## 9.1 POINTS COMMUNICATED TO DOE AT THE WORKSHOP

Participants at the Stakeholders Workshop largely affirmed the direction of DOE's effort. Participants urged the use of collaboration and partnerships in conducting R&D to ensure the best use of research funds and avoid duplication of effort. R&D priorities for research planning were suggested. Much of the discussion focused on the necessity to integrate R&D efforts with developments in various energy technology systems and to understand the environmental impacts of sequestration technologies.

### Collaborative Programs

Several federal agencies currently fund programs related either directly or indirectly to carbon sequestration. The carbon cycle science program in the U. S. Global Change Research Program includes DOE, USDA, NSF, NASA, the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, and the USGS. In addition, the Department of Defense Office of Naval Research and the Environmental Protection Agency have programs in carbon sequestration or other related areas. The IEA has sponsored research on carbon sequestration for many years.

The private sector is actively involved in geologic sequestration as applied to enhanced oil recovery, CO<sub>2</sub> separation, and other sequestration activities. A number of international programs involve carbon sequestration, including ocean sequestration research funded by Japan, Norway, the United States, and the United Nations Environmental Program. Several geological

sequestration programs are under way, such as the IEA-endorsed Pan Canadian Resources project at Weyburn in Saskatchewan and the Statoil project at Sleipner in the North Sea. Participants counseled DOE to be proactive in integrating its activities with these other programs wherever possible to optimize the use of programmatic funds.

### Priority Setting

The priorities identified by the participants track potential benefits and problems associated with specific technologies. The magnitude of the potential benefits to be derived from a technology is important, such as the potential amount of CO<sub>2</sub> to be sequestered. So is the difference in residence times of carbon (i.e., how long CO<sub>2</sub> can be sequestered) offered by competing technologies. Finally, any market benefit to be derived from development of a technology, such as enhanced oil recovery or production of new carbon-based industrial materials, may offer the opportunity for nearer-term technology commercialization and implementation. Because the effectiveness of sequestration methods needs to be verified, it is important to develop new or improved analytical instrumentation and monitoring technologies to measure the efficacy of various approaches.

Priorities will depend on a better understanding of the impacts of sequestration implementation on the environment. In addition, operational uncertainties must be reduced so that future costs and financial risk can be determined. Part of the uncertainty analysis must include life cycle analysis for the components of a particular process. In particular, certain enabling activities, such as gas compression and transportation systems, have not been evaluated in the detail needed. Most

participants also agreed that socioeconomic impacts and societal perceptions of risk must be addressed and that the public must be properly informed as to the nature of sequestration projects.

### A Systems Approach

Options to address climate change include a wide variety of technologies and practices, such as improved efficiency; nuclear, renewable, and fossil energy; and sequestration. Consequently, an analysis of sequestration cannot be separated from a wider system of energy supply and use. Furthermore, some sequestration options, such as capture and separation, are intimately tied to advances in other specific technologies, such as new power plant designs.

Integration of carbon sequestration R&D efforts should continue to consider system technology platforms highlighted in Chap. 8: carbon processing, biological absorption, engineered injection, and advanced characterization and monitoring technologies.

All breakout sessions agreed that a better understanding of environmental impacts is critical. Although we are starting to recognize that emitting CO<sub>2</sub> into the atmosphere may lead to a changed global climate, there are few analyses describing potential impacts of sequestering it in the terrestrial or oceanic biosphere or in geologic formations. Thus researchers need to design or leverage experiments that examine environmental impacts as part of larger engineering studies. Any environmentally based experiment should be systems-based to enable greater understanding of related, unanticipated impacts and of ecosystem dynamics. Greater understanding of a number of coupled biogeochemical cycles (e.g.,

water, oxygen, nitrogen) is required for adequate understanding of the carbon cycle. All breakout groups saw the need for innovative, improved, and more sensitive analytical instrumentation and monitoring technologies.

The organization of existing data and the careful design of future data collection should be a priority. The ocean, geological, and terrestrial groups agreed on the importance of a digital environmental atlas and suggested DOE, NASA, USGS, and USDA as agencies that might appropriately collaborate on such an effort.

The need for systems integration is particularly relevant for capture and separation technologies coupled to direct injection of CO<sub>2</sub> into oceans or geologic settings. Life cycle analysis would help ensure that all costs, impacts, and benefits are properly included. Additionally, the degree of separation and purification of gases may strongly affect cost. It may be possible to dispose of gaseous mixtures in which CO<sub>2</sub> is not of high purity in order to save costs associated with capture and separation technologies.

The magnitude of the problem and possible solution pathways requires a portfolio approach. Some technologies are commercially viable now because of uses other than sequestration, but their high costs mean that their utility may be limited. Large-scale breakthroughs will require considerable scientific and engineering innovation. That is the integrating theme of the advanced concepts breakout session. All of those approaches could naturally fit into one of the other groups. However, this group focused on breakthrough concepts where research should be funded to “change the rules of the games” because of the magnitude of the problem. We

must capitalize on exogenous R&D for near-term commercial successes. We must build on laboratory-based research to develop new field experiments and pilot activities. And we must draw on all of these activities to develop breakthrough technologies in order to have a significant sequestration effect on fossil fuel emissions by 2025.

## 9.2 A RADICAL APPROACH TO GLOBAL WARMING

*The bland suburban hotel held a sea of gray and balding heads. They belonged to scientists and engineers, who, by and large, were unfashionably dressed . . . It was, in short, a gathering of nerds. But these were nerds who may hold our future in their hands. The turnout was robust at a recent two-day Energy Department workshop intended to help chart a road map for conducting research on the idea of carbon sequestration. (Solomon, October 2, 1999, National Journal).*

The challenge being addressed is how to turn the scientific potential of carbon sequestration into reality. This chapter summarizes the views of scientists,

industry, environmentalists, and government officials on DOE's draft *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development* report and provides guidance in developing R&D for practical carbon sequestration technologies. The atmosphere at the workshop was one of encouragement and cooperation, recognizing that some solutions using new forms of sequestration with larger-scale field applications will take decades. This is a technical challenge that DOE is ideally suited to help undertake. Input from the stakeholder community has been helpful to DOE, especially in identifying promising options and in establishing R&D priorities. This guidance has been incorporated into the technical chapters of this report, and key perspectives and issues raised by the user community have been highlighted in this chapter. The next steps will be to focus on each of the carbon sequestration elements (Chapters 2-7) and work on setting R&D priorities within elements. Even now, we have identified a number of promising carbon sequestration options, and research directions have been established. Recommendations for proceeding with a carbon sequestration R&D program are summarized in Chapter 10 of this report.



**Reports from the Plenary Sessions  
and the Breakout Groups**

**Carbon Sequestration Stakeholders Workshop  
Gaithersburg, Maryland  
September 1999**



**Carbon Sequestration Stakeholders Workshop  
Gaithersburg, Maryland  
September 1999**

**THE PLENARY SPEAKERS**

**International Perspectives on Carbon Sequestration<sup>1</sup>**

*The International Energy Agency is one of the leading international, nongovernmental organizations. Its proactive Greenhouse Gas R&D program provides important information on greenhouse gas emissions and carbon sequestration (Eds.).*

**International collaboration for developing carbon sequestration technology**

It is widely accepted that sequestration is likely to be an important option for dealing with climate change in the 21st century. There has been a significant change in attitude toward this subject in the past few years, in response to these developments:

- recognition that something will need to be done about the changing climate
- growing understanding that fossil fuels will continue to play a role in energy supply for many years to come, so we will need ways of making them climate-friendly
- acceptance that what is needed is a large-scale solution, which carbon sequestration can provide and can deliver through the use of known technology
- understanding that R&D, leading to demonstrated technology, provides insurance against the more severe outcomes of climate change

As a result, many more people are interested in knowing what the sequestration technologies can do, how they can be improved, and the best ways to use them.

In the next 100 years, there will be a large and growing gap between actual emissions (in a business-as-usual scenario) and the level of emissions that would stabilize atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> levels. If the world might turn out anything like the projections made by some climate change researchers, we will need options to avoid damaging climate change. Especially after the first Kyoto commitment period, options that can deliver deep (60 to 70%) reductions in emissions may be needed, which include sequestration. So sequestration technologies could play an important role, but there is still room for them to be improved. That is the reason for this workshop.

**Identifying targets for research and development**

The IEA Greenhouse Gas R&D Programme (IEA GHG) (<http://www.ieagreen.org.uk>) has been working on carbon sequestration technologies for 8 years. The Programme is an international collaboration of 17 countries and more than 20 industrial organizations, 7 of whom are direct sponsors. It has three main objectives:

- to evaluate technologies for reducing emissions, especially from use of fossil fuels
- to disseminate the information obtained
- to identify targets for necessary R&D and promote action

<sup>1</sup> This plenary presentation of the Carbon Sequestration Workshop was made by Dr. Paul Freund of the International Energy Agency.

IEA GHG has conducted about 80 studies covering all stages of sequestration technology, from capture of CO<sub>2</sub> from flue gas streams in power plants and other major process plants, to CO<sub>2</sub> storage, to utilization of CO<sub>2</sub> in various ways, to enhancement of natural sinks by methods such as afforestation or fertilization of the ocean, to production of hydrogen from fossil fuels with sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>, as well as many other mitigation options.<sup>2</sup>

These studies have identified much work that needs to be done in research, development, or demonstration. For example, IEA GHG's expert workshops have defined research priorities in areas such as ocean storage of CO<sub>2</sub>. The recommendations of these workshops cover many different aspects, including the need to (1) increase our confidence in predicting how long it will take CO<sub>2</sub> to return to the atmosphere, (2) understand and minimize environmental impacts, (3) take account of the legal position and likely public attitudes, and (4) gain practical experience.

IEA is following up on these recommendations in many ways, including a series of forums to encourage international stake-holder dialogue. Equally important for research planning purposes is to know what not to do. In this light, here are some of the important targets for research:

- Capture of CO<sub>2</sub>—The cost and energy consumption of capture presents a major barrier to early adoption of sequestration technology. There is a need to reduce the cost markedly and improve the energy efficiency of the separation process; to ensure stable and long-lived solvents; and, for the longer term, to consider more radical changes in the systems.
- Storage (sequestration) of CO<sub>2</sub>—Important goals are to build confidence and win acceptance of the concept (which requires demonstrating reliable and safe operation in as many individual examples as possible); ensure low environmental impact; and, at a more practical level, identify potential reservoirs at local levels, calibrate predictive models, develop methods of verification, and address legality. Utilization options such as enhanced oil recovery and CO<sub>2</sub>-enhanced recovery of coal bed methane are essentially storage options, so the same requirements apply to them.
- Utilization of CO<sub>2</sub>—Using CO<sub>2</sub> to make things, such as chemicals or materials, must achieve a net reduction in emissions; to do so, the proposed schemes must pass tests of thermodynamics and energy requirements. There are more practical requirements, too, such as the length of time the CO<sub>2</sub> will be sequestered, the size of the market, and cost. So far, we have not found uses of CO<sub>2</sub> for making chemicals or materials that pass these tests, so this challenge for research is a tough one.
- Additional research areas, such as CO<sub>2</sub> transport and enhancement of natural sinks.

There is still enough time to bring forward radical new ideas on ways of doing things such as separating CO<sub>2</sub>. Results of exploratory research should then be assessed to identify those that could deliver large prizes—those particular ideas would warrant further development.

<sup>2</sup> The 5th international conference on greenhouse gas control technologies will be held in Cairns, Australia, in the year 2000. The call for papers for this conference will be distributed shortly.

### **Collaborative research and development projects**

In a situation where there is more work to be done than resources available, collaboration is an obvious approach; it is even more obvious for tasks such as carbon sequestration where there is only limited opportunity for competitive advantage, especially among users of the technology. Where there are unique facilities for learning, collaboration is especially important to allow many people to take advantage of them. With the world facing a global problem in climate change, international collaboration is an important tool for research.

A number of practical R&D projects organized as international collaborations are already under way: IEA GHG assists most of these in some way:

- Sleipner deep saline reservoir
- Alberta enhanced coal bed methane project
- Canadian O<sub>2</sub>/CO<sub>2</sub>—recycle combustion
- Weyburn enhanced oil recovery monitoring
- Ocean storage project in Hawaii

Others are in planning:

- BP Amoco Schrader Bluff joint industry project
- Precombustion decarbonization demonstration plant (IEA GHG)
- Catalytic flow reversal reactor to tackle dilute methane emissions (Canada)

Sleipner is a unique facility—it hosts the world's first commercial-scale project for geological sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>. Statoil began work on this project in the early 1990s, for commissioning in 1996. It became apparent that Sleipner presented a unique opportunity for a research and monitoring program. IEA GHG helped to bring together international participants in a collaborative research project, helped develop research priorities, and took the lead in discussions with Statoil. These discussions continued for two years and eventually culminated in a three-phase plan:

- Phase 0, collection of baseline data, is complete.
- Phase 1, a partially European-funded project to monitor the reservoir, includes a seismic survey of the reservoir that is under way.
- Phase 2, an international research and monitoring project to build on this work, is being put together now. Many of the participants in this workshop may want to join in.

This project helps by demonstrating a technology, developing an agreed-upon research agenda, and enabling access to a unique facility to gain experience.

### **A Research Perspective on Carbon Sequestration<sup>3</sup>**

*Carbon sequestration options that rely on enhancing the natural cycle are essentially human interventions in the global carbon cycle. They depend upon a detailed understanding of fundamental processes to implement safe, effective, and verifiable sequestration options. This presentation emphasized ecological processes (Eds.).*

<sup>3</sup> This plenary presentation of the Carbon Sequestration Workshop was made by Dr. Jerry Melillo of The Ecosystems Center of the Marine Biological Laboratory, Woods Hole, Massachusetts.

### Verifiable measurement

Verification is the bottom-line issue for carbon sequestration. Verification is essential for acceptance of the carbon sequestration sinks, because credit for carbon sequestered is now an international business matter. It involves money, and documentation is necessary. But verification must be measurable, reproducible, and scientifically based.

There is widespread agreement that the largest anthropogenic carbon source is the gigatonnes of carbon from fossil fuel burning. Land-use changes, particularly in the tropics, add to that source term. The known sinks for that global carbon burden are accumulation in the atmosphere and accumulation in the oceans. Known sources exceed measured sinks. We can assume that the carbon missing from our accounting is being accumulated in the terrestrial biosphere.

If we want to store vast quantities of carbon in the terrestrial biosphere, the basic stoichiometry of natural systems must be obeyed. The laws of nature require that carbon be stored in particular ratios with other elements, including nitrogen. As the draft *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development* report points out, the most effective place to store much of this carbon is in the microbially resistant carbon or humus compounds of the soil. The stoichiometry of humus worldwide is fairly constant, and the carbon-to-nitrogen mass ratio is about 13 to 1. Therefore, in addition to managing carbon, we must manage the global nitrogen cycle. As discussed in Chapter 4 of this report, assessment is essential to understand the whole global ecological system and the way it will be affected by carbon sequestration.

### Carbon sequestration—dynamics of the global carbon cycle

The dynamics of the global carbon cycle is a major research topic at many research centers. An experiment conducted by a group at Max Planck Institute in Germany and another group in Sweden attempts to understand the spatial component of carbon storage throughout the world in a geo-referenced perspective that examines “natural sequestration” as a consequence of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> fertilization, climate variability, and agricultural land use. The geo-referenced approach is particularly important because, if people are to buy into storing carbon, they will want to know where it will be stored and to be able to verify that it is stored there. The experiment uses a series of biogeochemical models for carbon, nitrogen, and water in terrestrial ecosystems that allow predictions about carbon storage or loss from terrestrial ecosystems over time. It produces estimates of carbon and nitrogen stocks and fluxes. Models of this sort require substantial geo-referenced data (e.g., location, cloudiness, elevation, atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> content, nitrogen deposition, kind of vegetation, temperature, precipitation, and soil texture).

This model was run for the United States using increases in CO<sub>2</sub> observed over the 1980 time period, real climate as it changed over that period, and the changes in land use in the United States over that time period. The model suggested that in the United States during the 1980s, the annual carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems was 136 teragrams. There has been a widespread CO<sub>2</sub> fertilization effect across the mainland of the United States. Will it continue forever? There may be a point at which additional CO<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere will no longer act as a fertilizer; we may have saturated that effect. In addition, consider climate. Climate variability witnessed over the 1980s and early 1990s, in most parts of the United States, has actually promoted additional carbon storage. Now we can go to specific sites in the United States and test—validate the models and their predictive capability.

A little more carbon is stored through changes in land use. The model suggests that for the period 1900 to 1992, the United States was not a net sink for carbon but was actually releasing carbon largely as a result of land clearing in this country. Since the 1960s, the United States has been sequestering carbon, but in small amounts, not nearly as large as the Princeton group's estimate that North America is a 1.7-pentagram sink (Fan et al. 1998). The model indicates that the continent is a much smaller sink than that.

### Digital environmental atlas

The draft *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development* report did not mention the need to organize extant information into accessible data sets that can be used by anyone. A digital environmental atlas is needed if we are to proceed with sequestration. Such an atlas is the analog of the human genome project: It is an information-based project that is essential for understanding and sustaining life on planet earth. We do not have to agree on model output, but at least we need agreement that we are all operating with the same concept (model) of planet Earth and that we use verified data inputs accessible to the scientific community. This digital environmental atlas should be updatable. It should be geo-referenced at some reasonable spatial scale that would require an international, government-NGO partnership. Currently, every group maintains its own environmental databases, resulting in much redundant effort and large disconnects. Remote sensing clearly would be tremendously helpful.

### Integrated assessment models

There also is a need for integrated assessment models that take us beyond the ecological and the geological framework to consider the whole environmental system. We are beginning to couple economic systems, physical climate, chemical properties, and ecological attributes into an integrated formal modeling approach to explore scenarios and consequences. Integrated models of this sort could be tremendously helpful in evaluating concerns about the environment. They could interrelate climate change with other issues, such as biodiversity and land use, that are coupled to the carbon issue and climate change. An integrated assessment paradigm could allow us to place carbon sequestration in a larger context.

## Environmental Community Perspectives on Carbon Sequestration<sup>4</sup>

*The nongovernmental environmental community has divergent views of carbon sequestration. The following presentation illustrates how carbon credits could be used by conservation organizations to protect biodiversity (Eds.).*

Environmental organizations have varying positions on carbon sequestration, and they do not all agree as to whether sequestration activities should be credited under the Kyoto Protocol. Major issues related to carbon sequestration include measurement and monitoring, effects on biodiversity, and the stability of the stored carbon. These issues all reflect concerns regarding impacts on environmental systems, and hence the advisability of the adoption of the Kyoto Protocol. Both the Environmental Defense Fund and The Nature Conservancy support the concept of carbon sequestration in forests and in land-use applications.

Skeptics of carbon credits are concerned that ambiguities in the protocols and in verification could result in "phantom credits" or "perverse" incentives that are harmful to the environment

<sup>4</sup> This plenary presentation was made jointly by Robert Bonnie of the Environmental Defense Fund and Michael Coda of The Nature Conservancy.

(i.e., cutting of old growth forests or conversion of grasslands). Another concern of some groups is that credits create a diversion from the real issue of emission reductions. On the other hand, advocates of credits see sequestration (“carbon credits”) as a positive means to address climate change that has enormous potential and that could garner a broadened political constituency. Underlying these arguments are fundamental scientific issues that affect policy options for carbon sequestration:

**Durability.** How does one credit carbon stored in a forest ecosystem, recognizing that each ecosystem has a life cycle and permanency exists only at a regional scale. If carbon sequestered in forests is credited, then the forest must be maintained (protected) indefinitely.

**Leakage.** Will augmentation of the natural carbon cycle result in carbon storage in reservoirs from which there is no leakage, or can leakage be measured? This issue becomes important when sequestration credits are applied to agricultural and managed forest ecosystems.

**Additionality.** Credits for carbon sequestration should be for storage beyond that which would occur naturally in the carbon cycle; false credits should not be given for uncertainties (missing sinks) in the global carbon budget.

The mission of The Nature Conservancy is “to preserve plants, animals and natural communities that represent the diversity of life on earth by protecting the lands and waters they need to survive.” It is the largest international organization dedicated to preserving biodiversity. The Conservancy views carbon sequestration credits as a powerful new tool to support its preservation of biological diversity in addition to enhancing carbon sequestration.

The Nature Conservancy supports several international forest sequestration projects, including the Rio Bravo Project in Belize and the Noel Kempff project in Bolivia. The Rio Bravo project is projected to offset 2.4 million tons of carbon over 40 years and is an approved project under the U.S. Initiative on Joint Implementation (USIJI). The land for this project is permanently dedicated under law for conservation. The Noel Kempff project, also a USIJI project, is projected to offset 15 million tons of carbon over 30 years. Other domestic and international forestry projects are funded by oil and utility companies.

### Energy Industry Perspectives on Carbon Sequestration<sup>5</sup>

*Increasingly, a broad spectrum of leaders in the energy and manufacturing industries are taking a proactive approach to controlling and reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions. The following presentation illustrates the approach being taken by Texaco (Eds.).*

*... Perhaps the dominant public policy issue for the energy industry as we enter the next century is the issue of global climate change. We share the concern of many about the impact of climate change on society and our business and we are going to play a positive role in contributing to the goal of managing and reducing greenhouse gas emissions. We believe our focus should be on ways to manage and reduce emissions and better protect the environment—not on choosing sides in the debate. We have nearly completed emissions baselining and we*

<sup>5</sup> This plenary presentation was made by Roland Borey, Manager of Environmental Strategies, Texaco Worldwide Exploration and Production.

*are formulating a plan to manage emissions, which will be available by the end of the summer. We are also forecasting project emissions as we go forward with our business plans to enable us to better manage or reduce those emissions. We believe that the best way to show our commitment is to take action, not to debate the issue. (Peter Bijur, Chairman and CEO of Texaco, April 27, 1999.)*

The chairman and chief executive officer of Texaco made this public commitment to reducing greenhouse gas emissions at the annual Texaco shareholders' meeting. Specifically, Texaco's commitments extend to the integration of greenhouse gas emissions management in all new projects. Further, as Texaco moves forward with its strategic planning for 2000 to 2004, it has committed to the integration of greenhouse gas emissions management into its strategic business thinking, as well, for all of its business units.

### **Operational and financial flexibility**

At the White House Climate Change Task Force meeting in May 1999, Texaco expressed the following views.

- Industry needs the operational flexibility to pursue a portfolio of approaches to managing greenhouse gas emissions worldwide.
- Industry needs the financial flexibility to pursue the lowest-cost approaches wherever possible, including such approaches as forestry management and conservation.
- The United States and other nations should negotiate for rules that will allow the broadest set of approaches that can offset emissions and that are creditable.

Texaco supports the carbon sequestration road mapping effort that will lead to broadening the scope of the operational flexibility and financial flexibility that industry will need to manage greenhouse gas emissions.

### **Integrating emissions management with business planning**

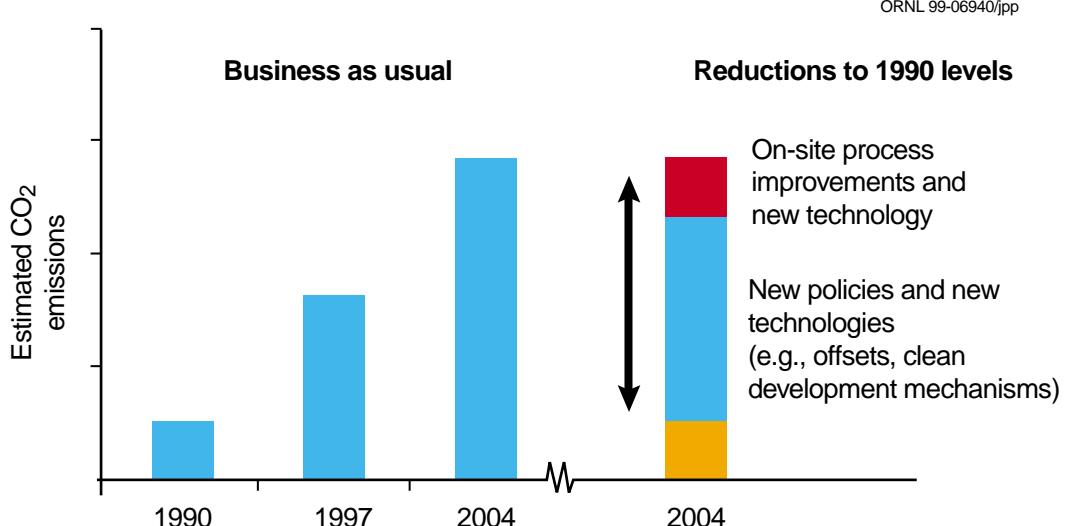
The essence of Texaco's efforts to integrate greenhouse gas emissions management with business planning is indicated in Fig. 9.1. It shows a generic emissions projection graph and some approaches that a typical Texaco business unit may consider in its management or reduction of greenhouse gas emissions.

The essence of Texaco's greenhouse gas emissions management in our business planning is the following:

- Project emissions growth
- Know the gaps between emissions growth and the ability to reduce or offset
- Plan for different levels of reduction and offset

Texaco does this for both strategic planning and new project planning processes.

For new projects, Texaco has taken a proactive approach to consider a list of ways to reduce emissions at the proposed facility and a list of ways to offset emissions outside the facility. It is committed to evaluating the feasibility, the costs, and the benefits of these approaches and incorporating them into a greenhouse gas emissions management plan.



**Fig. 9-1. Emissions projection graph, and approaches a Texaco businesss unit may consider in managing greenhouse gas emissions.**

For example, as a co-venturer in the Gorgon Liquefied Natural Gas Project in Western Australia, Texaco supports the voluntary agreement that was signed with the Australian Greenhouse Office, the leading Commonwealth authority on greenhouse matters. Signed in December 1998 by the Gorgon Project, the agreement contains a detailed greenhouse gas emissions management plan that incorporates a list of continuous design improvements that would result in reducing greenhouse gas emissions by 1.7 million tonnes from a previous baseline design. The project is committed to further design improvements, as well as the evaluation of approaches to offset emissions outside the proposed facility.

#### **The need for research: long term and short term**

The need for carbon sequestration is clear, given the ambitious emissions reduction targets adopted in the Kyoto Protocol. Before industry can use some of these sequestration approaches, Texaco offers DOE and the participants at the workshop the following recommendations to guide R&D. The directions and criteria for long-term research need to consider

**Technical feasibility:** What amount of carbon can be sequestered at a time? Will it stay sequestered? How long will it stay sequestered? Most important, will the sequestration activity fit with an industry's operations? For example, the oil and gas industry has extensive experience with down-hole technologies and with offshore developments. These will be a natural fit with geologic sequestration.

**Environmental effects:** What are the side effects of a particular method, if any, on the ecosystem? Are there any safety concerns?

**Cost-effectiveness:** For the amount of carbon sequestered, what is the cost-effectiveness of the technology?

There is a strong need for shorter-term research as well—such as monitoring that would allow sequestration activities to be credible and creditable. For example, significant development work will be needed on monitoring and verification for geologic sequestration. Industry must have cost-effective monitoring. At a minimum, short-term research must focus immediately on establishing the technical and procedural framework to rank the amount of credible sequestration over specific periods of time.

Texaco has made a public commitment to integrate greenhouse gas management with its business planning processes. At the same time, the need for operational and financial flexibility is clear under the ambitious emissions reduction targets of the Kyoto Protocol. Texaco urges the United States and other parties to negotiate for rules that would allow for the broadest set of credible and creditable emissions reduction approaches, as well as emissions offset approaches. Further, there is a clear need for carbon sequestration and the R&D needed to make these approaches feasible, cost-effective, and environmentally sound. Texaco supports DOE's effort in guiding and funding the R&D approaches necessary to satisfy these needs.

### REPORTS FROM WORKSHOP BREAKOUT SESSIONS

Participants in the Stakeholders Workshop met in breakout sessions organized around the technology areas considered in this report: separation and capture; ocean, terrestrial, and geologic sequestration; and advanced biological and chemical processes (combined into advanced concepts). A rapporteur captured the main points of the discussion in each breakout session, and these summaries follow.

#### Carbon Separation and Capture<sup>6</sup>

Carbon dioxide is generated by numerous anthropogenic activities. The draft *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development* report identifies the major sources. Additional sources could be considered either subsets of the ones already included or additional minor sources. Table 9.1 shows sources identified in the previous draft of the report and additional sources identified in the breakout session. The combined list likely is not complete, but it represents a high fraction of the sources of anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

Many CO<sub>2</sub> separation technologies currently exist and are being used commercially. They have been optimized for specific industrial applications, including CO<sub>2</sub> removal from syngas (mixtures of hydrogen, carbon monoxide, CO<sub>2</sub>, and methane), natural gas, and landfill gas. These separations are generally made at pressure with relatively high CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations, characteristics that tend to make separation easier. Some of these technologies have even been applied to removing CO<sub>2</sub> from combustion flue gases, a process found to be much more expensive. This experience base suggests that a major issue for carbon sequestration is the cost (both capital and operating) of CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture.

There is value in summarizing existing technologies and costs with

- all assumptions and calculations used being consistent
- costs developed only for combinations of technologies and sources of CO<sub>2</sub> that are amenable to each other
- reported costs including life-cycle costs, amortized capital costs, and energy consumption costs

<sup>6</sup> The rapporteurs for the separation and capture breakout group at the Stakeholders Workshop were Joe Abrardo of Air Products and Chemicals and Lorie Langley of ORNL.

Such an effort could result in a compilation similar to that in Table 9.2 (the blanks would be filled in as information becomes available) and could be used as the basis for future research. Improvement and re-optimization of these technologies will lower costs; but, in reality, a significant step change in cost, rather than incremental improvement, is needed. Future R&D should be focused on this fact.

### R&D priorities

Many factors will determine the selection of a particular technology for the separation and capture of CO<sub>2</sub> and the prioritization of the R&D related to it. The process is complicated by several issues, including these:

- Several types of streams containing CO<sub>2</sub> must be addressed (Table 9.1). Each type of source has a different operating pressure and temperature, CO<sub>2</sub> concentration, and scale. These critical parameters determine the appropriateness of the technology for the particular application. In addition, sources of the CO<sub>2</sub>-containing streams may change as new technologies are commercialized (e.g., natural gas combined-cycle gas turbines, Vision 21).

**Table 9.1. Sources of anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> emissions**

Previously identified sources	Additional sources
Fossil-fuel-based power generation	Industrial heat generation
Natural gas production and upgrading	Associated gas
Hydrogen production	Hydrogen production in fertilizer plants
Oil refineries	Petrochemical plants
Iron and steel plants	Other metals plants
Cement and lime production	
Residential heating	
Transportation	
	Waste incineration
	Landfill gas
	Coal bed/coal mine methane
	Heavy manufacturing

**Table 9.2. Example of proposed reporting of CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture costs (\$/ton)**

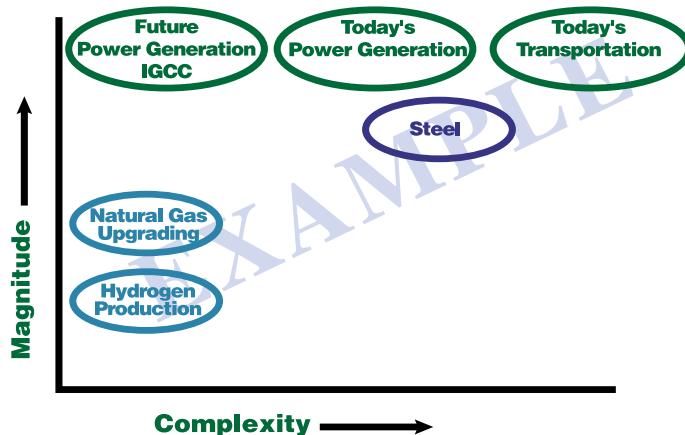
Application	Absorption	Adsorption	Low-temp distillation	Membranes
Power generation (coal)				
Gas turbines (natural gas)				
Natural gas upgrading				
Hydrogen production				
Landfill gas recovery				
etc.				

- The sequestration requirements (e.g., CO<sub>2</sub> purity, pressure, and, possibly, physical state) imposed on the separation system are not well defined yet and may vary depending on the sequestration route selected.
- Energy consumption and capital costs for the separation system may be sensitive to the desired, but as yet undefined, CO<sub>2</sub> recovery level. Determining goals for this parameter (it may be different for each technology) is critical to the overall cost optimization and magnitude of CO<sub>2</sub> emission reduction.
- Other initiatives may significantly affect characteristics of the CO<sub>2</sub> stream required by the separation system (e.g., fuel decarbonization, which moves the CO<sub>2</sub> separation from post-combustion to pre-combustion, and new oxygen-based combustion routes).
- Emission credits or allowances.

These facts and uncertainties suggest that no single separation and capture technology will satisfy all the requirements, and a broad portfolio of technologies is required. Thus any R&D program needs to focus on developing a broad portfolio rather than a specific technology.

R&D prioritization should balance impact on CO<sub>2</sub> emissions with the complexity of the separation. The R&D programs should balance (1) more immediate applications that are less complex and more amenable to current technologies but that have less impact on emissions and (2) more complex but larger-impact opportunities. Confirmation from the near-term applications can provide valuable input to the longer-term ones.

A methodology for displaying the magnitude and the complexity relationships of various sources of CO<sub>2</sub> emissions is shown in Fig. 9.2. This example is qualitative and incomplete, but it presents important concepts. Such a framework could help prioritize the R&D program. Incentives for any actual projects are unclear, especially considering that there are no current legislative mandates in the United States. There is no overall strategy guiding the demonstration projects that are under way (mostly outside the United States). A framework sponsored by DOE would help to focus future U.S. R&D efforts. Criteria should include both



**Fig. 9.2. Example of methodology of displaying prioritization issues.**

business and economic aspects of the program. Completion of the background material discussed in this breakout session would provide an essential foundation to the program.

### Specific recommendations

- Care should be taken to focus research on reasonable combinations of sources and separation technologies.
- Short-term, incremental improvements that can be demonstrated quickly and provide valuable early feedback to the overall program should be pursued. However, effort must also focus on longer-term, order-of-magnitude changes in cost.
- Real applications that have the potential for a material contribution to CO<sub>2</sub> capture, and are of interest to an industry partner, should be identified and supported. DOE should provide economic support during all phases (R&D, demonstration, and implementation) of a program.
- DOE needs to engage industry, both technology users and equipment suppliers, more than is done today.

### Carbon Sequestration in the Oceans<sup>7</sup>

The agenda for the discussion of carbon sequestration in oceans covered four topics: research priorities for direct injection, research priorities for enhancement (e.g., fertilization), linkages and partnerships, and a timeline for developing technologies.

#### Research priorities for direct injection

The starting point for setting research priorities for direct injection and enhancement was the draft report *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development* (DOE 1999).

Participants expressed five different viewpoints regarding the costs of ocean sequestration of carbon.

- Direct injection ocean carbon sequestration is likely to be expensive. Not only the cost of transporting the CO<sub>2</sub> from its source to the deep ocean, but also the cost of separation and capture, probably the largest component of the cost, must be considered.
- It is difficult to judge the future cost-effectiveness of this option. The value of sequestering carbon could increase dramatically, changing the context, and it is difficult to predict how technology will improve.
- Cost-effectiveness needs to be evaluated as part of the larger system. For example, we need to compare carbon sequestration with alternative approaches to carbon mitigation.
- Financial benefits that could occur as a by-product of ocean carbon sequestration (e.g., fish farming or mariculture) could reduce costs.
- Currently, questions about technical and environmental feasibility are more important than questions about costs.

<sup>7</sup> Rapporteur for the ocean sequestration breakout group at the Stakeholders Workshop was Howard Herzog, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Two topics that could influence the effectiveness of ocean carbon sequestration need further research: (1) the effect of singular events, such as hurricanes or deep-water seismic events, and (2) the effect of feedback from climate change on ocean circulation.

A representative of the environmental community voiced several concerns:

- Natural oceanic processes currently sequester about 2 GtC per year because of increased CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations in the atmosphere. Some argue that the environmental impacts of purposeful carbon sequestration in the oceans should be compared with the impacts of “excess” natural carbon sequestration already taking place. Instead, the baseline with which purposeful sequestration should be compared is one with no excess atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations and no excess natural oceanic carbon sequestration. The latter situation would be achieved through a combination of energy policies.
- Carbon sequestration needs to be compared with other approaches (e.g., renewable energy sources).
- Even though ocean carbon sequestration would reduce atmospheric concentrations of CO<sub>2</sub>, extra energy is required to capture, transport, and sequester the CO<sub>2</sub>. This extra energy expenditure should be taken into account. For instance, over the centuries, even the deep ocean will equilibrate with the atmosphere, and the extra CO<sub>2</sub> produced from the energy used sequestering the CO<sub>2</sub> will end up in the atmosphere as well as in the ocean.

Despite the variety of views in the session, there was a reasonable consensus on understanding environmental impacts as the top research priority for direct injection. Some of the specific suggestions were

- Generate more details on the effects of pH and CO<sub>2</sub> on marine organisms.
- Look for opportunities to “piggy-back” biological experiments on planned field experiments, such as the ocean storage project in Hawaii (Adams et al. 1998). (Additional information on this planned experiment can be found at [www.CO2experiment.org](http://www.CO2experiment.org).)
- Investigate natural analogs of ocean injection, such as deep-water CO<sub>2</sub> vents.
- Increase understanding of how to use hydrate formation to mitigate environmental impacts (e.g., to isolate CO<sub>2</sub> from or dilute CO<sub>2</sub> into the water column).
- Use the IRONEX template in conducting field work. This means opening up a project to multiple competitive proposals and choosing the best ones.
- Consider setting up an experimental facility to carry out long-term experiments.

### **Research priorities for enhancement**

The discussion on enhancement focused on the iron fertilization technique. There were several suggestions for additions, clarifications, and revisions to the draft report *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development*.

- Both continuous and pulsed experiments are important. The type of experiment influences the export efficiency.

- Concerning the impact on sea-air fluxes (climate feedbacks), the report may overemphasize the role of CH<sub>4</sub>; N<sub>2</sub>O and dimethylsulfide also should be considered.
- In addition to the compounds mentioned in the report that are important to the biogeochemical cycle (carbon, nitrogen, phosphorus, silicon, and sulfur), important elements include cobalt, zinc, and perhaps selenium.
- The oceans should be included in the digital environmental atlas (of baseline data) that was discussed in the plenary presentation by Dr. Jerry Melillo.
- Cost and energy requirements need analysis.
- To understand the entire system, there is a need for multi-parameter experiments coupled to a model.

Three priorities were identified:

- Increasing understanding of the export efficiency from the ocean surface to the deep ocean is the key to understanding the effectiveness of the iron fertilization process.
- An experiment should be conducted at large enough scales (spatial and temporal) to increase understanding of the fertilization process.
- Developing technologies and methodologies for measurement and verification, including modeling tools, is essential.

### Linkages and partnerships

There are two key linkages to ocean sequestration. First, the fate of ocean injection necessarily will be tied to the costs of separation and capture. Second, ocean injection is particularly closely linked to the international community. Ocean injection is especially important to other countries for many reasons, including (1) the geography of such countries as Japan with greater proximity to the ocean than to underground reservoirs and (2) the international nature of the oceans. Other suggestions included these:

- Coordinate with carbon cycle research. There is an ongoing program on U.S. Carbon Cycle Science that includes DOE, the NSF, NASA, and the USGS.
- Include technology being developed for offshore oil and gas production.
- Carry out a large-scale, long-term IRONEX experiment, as recommended by the Decadal Planning Document of the NSF's biological oceanography group.
- Use the DOE Ocean Carbon Sequestration Center to coordinate/collaborate with other organizations, including other government agencies.
- Explore links to terrestrial sequestration. For example, there may be a change in transport of dissolved organic carbon from land to the ocean in response to terrestrial sequestration strategies.
- Investigate industry participation. This must be a two-way street: industries will be most interested in participating in those projects that offer prospects of financial gain.

### R&D timeline

To acquire the knowledge to implement direct injection and/or enhancement ocean carbon sequestration by 2025, we must accomplish the following things:

- In the short term, pursue activities to build a foundation for long-term, large-scale experiments:
  - Hold planning/expert workshops
  - Conduct laboratory studies
  - Perform theoretical studies/modeling
  - Carry out pilot/feasibility studies
  - Develop basic tools (e.g., monitoring)
  - Build up links with other agencies, industry, and international organizations
  - Conduct public outreach
- In the mid-term (2005–2015), conduct these long-term, large-scale experiments with modeling and monitoring components and a primary focus on environmental impacts.

*The ocean sequestration session was chaired by Ken Caldeira of Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory and Jim Bishop of Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, who are the co-directors of the DOE Center for Research on Ocean Carbon Sequestration. Twenty-eight people attended the breakout session: six from DOE, nine from the national laboratories, two from other government agencies, four from academia, two from environmental groups, and five from the private sector.*

### Carbon Sequestration in Terrestrial Ecosystems<sup>8</sup>

There already is a significant body of information on productivity and carbon cycling in agricultural ecosystems (crops and soils) and above-ground biomass production in managed forests. R&D breakthroughs in the following areas are critical:

- the understanding of fundamental biogeochemical mechanisms that control the partitioning of carbon among plant cellular components and above- and below-ground components, and the allocation of carbon among long- and short-term pools in soils
- the ability to measure and verify net ecosystem exchange (NEE), above-ground biomass, and soil carbon,
- landscape, regional, and global assessments of carbon stocks
- the use of process-level understanding for integrated assessments and for guiding land-use management

It seems likely that focused R&D could, within 25 years, result in new knowledge and technology for terrestrial systems that would make a significant contribution to the larger vision of carbon sequestration.

Sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems is connected to other carbon sequestration approaches and aquatic and marine ecosystems. For example, nutrient and organic matter transport to the ocean margins is an important connection that could be affected by changes in terrestrial ecosystems. Partnerships and collaborations among public and private research communities and stakeholders and across federal funding agencies are critically important.

<sup>8</sup> The rapporteur for the terrestrial sequestration breakout group at the Stakeholders Workshop was F. Blaine Metting, Pacific Northwest National Laboratory.

### Systems

In the draft *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development* report, terrestrial ecosystems are categorized as high-, medium-, and low-intensity management. However, the participants reminded DOE that the categories are fluid and overlapping. Depending on a given approach to enhancing carbon sequestration in a given ecosystem, the ecosystem could be in two or all three of the categories. These additional issues were raised:

- The single-minded emphasis on increasing carbon sequestration should be modified. Optimizing, rather than increasing, would imply that the objective should include enhancing carbon sequestration, but with due concern for potential negative environmental impacts to ecosystems. We cannot predict the consequences of some actions, and it is important to consider approaches to limit the loss of carbon from ecosystems, as well as approaches to add carbon.
- The distinction between “natural” and “managed” ecosystems should be more clearly or explicitly defined.
- Greater emphasis should be placed on restoring carbon lost from ecosystems as a consequence of past land use and on restoration of some types of ecosystem types (i.e., wetlands and riparian zones).
- A two-dimensional matrix of “net increase” plotted against “management intensity” could help to conceptualize and categorize land-use management options for different ecosystems. A given ecosystem could thus be represented more than once.

### Objectives and strategies

In the draft *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development* report, the objectives discussed for “increasing” terrestrial carbon sequestration are (1) increase below-ground carbon, (2) increase above-ground carbon, and (3) optimize land area (per an equation component in the road map). These may not be the best categories from the perspective of whole-ecosystem approaches, and some recommendations for establishing integrated objectives were offered:

- Identify overarching objectives. Regional NEE should be optimized and existing carbon stocks protected.
- Emphasize “whole ecosystems” and consider them in the context of landscapes. In particular, work toward improving understanding of below-ground carbon stocks and fluxes across ecosystems.
- Consider relationships among NEE, net primary production, and carbon sequestration. There is a great need to understand relationships between NEE and carbon longevity and to identify the controlling processes.
- Enhance emphasis on ancillary benefits and unintended consequences of actions aimed at managing carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems.
- Acknowledge more clearly the links to other road map components [e.g., oceans (dissolved organic carbon movement)].
- Reemphasize the importance of conceptualizing strategies in the context of whole ecosystems and ecosystem dynamics. Regardless of the strategy, it is ecosystems that are managed and that therefore must be understood.
- Acknowledge biogeochemical cycles and their interdependencies at the strategy level.
- Conduct assessments of terrestrial carbon sequestration potential and achievable potential at the regional and national scales.

### R&D needs

The R&D needs articulated in the draft *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development* report are largely inclusive and generally represent high priorities for R&D. The R&D objectives deemed to be high priorities for investment can be considered in the categories of understanding, measurement, assessment, and implementation.

### Understanding environmental processes

- Understanding of terrestrial carbon sequestration processes must come first, then implementation. Optimization requires understanding.
- Understanding of fundamental mechanisms controlling carbon sequestration in and loss from terrestrial ecosystems is required to address issues such as increasing recalcitrant carbon, particularly in soils, and controlling the soil carbon active fraction.
- Emphasis is needed on microbial communities and fundamental carbon sequestration processes.
- Improved understanding is needed of spatial and temporal dynamics of carbon cycling as related to sequestration and loss. In agro-ecosystems, “We (partially) know it, but we don’t *understand* it.”
- Understanding of heterogeneity should be addressed at all scales.
- The need to understand linkages and impacts of carbon sequestration process modifications on other cycles should be addressed (i.e., nutrient cycles, the hydrologic cycle—particularly at higher spatial resolution/scales).
- An understanding of current controls over NEE and carbon sequestration/longevity among ecosystems is needed.
- Process models that both feed ecosystem research models and support assessment activities are needed.

### Measurement and verification of carbon storage

- Measurement needs for carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems are of two kinds, which are different but with some overlap: scientific needs versus verification requirements.
- The ability to measure (and verify with ground-truthing) NEE to within 5% within ecosystems is a potential target.
- Improvements in measurement approaches and technology for above-ground biomass are needed beyond agricultural ecosystems.
- Technology for improved measurement of soil carbon is a critical requirement. The ability to measure small changes over relevant (years to decades) time scales is needed, as is the need to be able to measure and interpret spatial-temporal variability.
- Measurement technologies should address the following issues: minimal invasiveness, rapidity, sensitivity, reproducibility, vertical precision, cost, and better models for purposes of verification.

### Assessment and evaluation of sequestration

- Assessments are needed for two distinct purposes: (1) to refine scientific direction and inform the scientific community and (2) to inform decision makers and public constituencies.
- A digital environmental atlas is a critical need. Group members representing the USGS, NASA, and USDA favor a cross-agency effort with DOE.
- Baseline inventories of potential and achievable potential are needed.
- Integrated assessments are needed, including (1) life-cycle costs and whole-carbon accounting for proposed sequestration approaches, (2) impacts of carbon sequestra-

tion approaches on biodiversity and fluxes of other greenhouse gases, and (3) human environmental health.

- Socioeconomic impacts must be assessed.
- Stakeholder and public constituency groups should have easy access to data.

### Implementation

- It is important to link process-level understanding with integrated assessments and guidelines for management options.
- The potential benefits and other consequences of land use management strategies that improve carbon sequestration should be communicated.
- More emphasis is needed on restoration of lost ecosystems (e.g., wetlands) and of carbon lost from manipulated ecosystems (i.e., agriculture).
- Analysis is needed of incentives for implementation.
- Links to social and economic systems must be addressed.

### Partnership opportunities

- A digital environmental atlas is an opportunity for cross-agency collaboration
- Field research at various types of sites: USDA/university network of long-term agricultural sites, NSF long-term ecological research sites, DOE's National Environmental Park network, USGS sites, Forest Service lands
- A dedicated carbon sequestration test facility for further conceptualization and development
- Industry sites: the Canadian GEMCO program with dry land farmers, industry, forest sites

*The terrestrial sequestration session was chaired by Gary Jacobs of Oak Ridge National Laboratory, co-director with Blaine Metting of Pacific Northwest National Laboratory of the DOE Center for Research on Enhancing Carbon Sequestration in Terrestrial Ecosystems. The breakout group comprised about 45 individuals, of whom more than 30 participated for most or all of the breakout session. The group included representatives of DOE, the DOE national laboratories, The U.S. Department of Agriculture's Agricultural Research Service and Forest Service, EPA, NASA, the states, the American Society for Mechanical Engineering, The Nature Conservancy, the university community, and the private sector.*

### Carbon Sequestration in Geologic Formations<sup>9</sup>

Fundamental research is needed in multiphase flow in porous media, including reaction path modeling, and methods are needed to monitor the performance and safety of CO<sub>2</sub> injection into geologic environments.

#### Comments on carbon sequestration R&D strategy

- Implementation of sequestration will be driven by economics. No company will competitively disadvantage itself by sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> with no financial return.
- Control of a CO<sub>2</sub> source and a CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration site will rarely reside with the same legal entity. There will be significant issues of landowner and royalty owner rights and financial needs in most geological sequestration activities.
- DOE should form a program steering committee with representation from industry, environmental action groups, and appropriate government agencies.

<sup>9</sup> The rapporteurs for the geological sequestration breakout group were David Thomas, BP Amoco, and Robert Burruss, U.S. Geological Survey.

- Most of the suggested projects are interrelated. They may begin at a small scale and grow.
- Priorities should be reordered within the short- to long-term priority continuum.
  - Monitoring studies should begin early and continue through the long term. Baseline definition and monitoring techniques will be broadly applicable and needed in each of the target sink types.
  - Engineering-related topics as applied to full-scale plants should take place relatively late. Pilot projects should begin early and progress logically to full-scale plants as dictated by success and need.
- Proposed projects should be evaluated for their fit with the time scale and planned into the appropriate time and sequence.
- There is a natural interrelationship between projects that was not clear in the geologic sequestration chapter in the draft report *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development*.
  - Brines exist in all reservoirs and should be studied as a system rather than as applied to a particular reservoir type.
  - A relatively limited range of minerals make up the reservoirs and are common to all. The program should address them as a system rather than as associated with particular reservoir types.

## Issues

### **Monitoring**

- Detection of CO<sub>2</sub> movement
- Validation of storage
- Joint inversion (geophysical and geochemical)
- Tracers of reaction progress and CO<sub>2</sub> leakage
- Long-term performance assessment

### **Brines**

- Most important and most challenging reservoir
- Reactivity and impact on storage capacity
- Enhancement of solubility and mineral trapping

### **Field tests, pilot projects**

### **Improved monitoring methods**

### **Coupled monitoring and modeling**

- Comparison of system properties
- Opportunities for fundamental research

### **New topics**

- Microbial conversion to useful products (CH<sub>4</sub>)
- Hydrates (trap CO<sub>2</sub>, release CH<sub>4</sub>)

### **Environmental concerns**

- Unintended consequences, for example, mobilization of metals
- Gaining public confidence

***Multiphase flow***

***Communication/education***

***Gaps in knowledge and ideas***

- Efficiency of filling porosity in multiphase flow
- Economics of CO<sub>2</sub>-enhanced oil recovery in oil reservoirs
- Rock/CO<sub>2</sub>/oil/water interactions
- Geomechanical response to changing pressure

***Monitoring***

- Safety
- Performance assessment
- Process research
- Project-specific requirements
- Scale of measurement (field, well, surface)
- Baselines

***Coal***

- Performance assessment
- Formation characterization
- Storage capacity/unit volume or mass

***Brine formations***

- Performance assessment (critical)
- Rates of reaction and dissolution
- Public reaction/perception

The division of geologic sequestration research topics as shown in Tables 5.2 through 5.4 in the draft *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development* report does not indicate how programs support system objectives. A different program management structure is suggested that takes advantage of the strengths of DOE and addresses the primary issues in a structured way. The suggested program management structure in Table 9.3 will minimize overlap and maximize synergism while highlighting the connectedness of the activities. The topics included are examples of the kinds of activities that should occur in each time frame.

***Setting priorities***

**Geological processes.** Cross-cutting technologies identified in the draft *Carbon Sequestration Research and Development* report should be given priority as shown in Table 9.4.

**Reservoir systems.** Priorities differ according to objectives. If the objective is implementation of sequestration, the priorities will be based on minimizing cost, materiality (size of target), time frame, and revenue streams from enhanced oil recovery or tax credits. From this perspective of implementation, the priorities are

1. Oil reservoirs—highest potential for a revenue stream from enhanced oil recovery
2. Coal reservoirs—gas streams are a strong revenue stream
3. Gas reservoirs—less knowledge about “flooding” a gas reservoir with CO<sub>2</sub> is available
4. Brine reservoirs—these are purely disposal targets with no revenue presently available

If the objective is research to understand the sink targets, the order is nearly reversed. Brine reservoirs are the least understood, and oil reservoirs the best understood. Using this criterion, the priorities are

1. Brine reservoirs—broad research needs in brine chemistry, geology of sealing mechanisms, and flow characteristics
2. Coal reservoirs—broad research needs in coal types, adsorption-desorption phenomena, coal body sealing mechanisms
3. Gas reservoirs—major research need for understanding of flow interaction (flooding) of nearly depleted gas reserves with high concentrations of CO<sub>2</sub>
4. Oil reservoirs—most well known, but research needed on targeting sequestration rather than conventional reservoir engineering

**Table 9.3. Suggested program structure for geological sequestration**

Topic	Short <2005	Medium 2005-2010	Long >2010
Fundamental science: Studies on chemistry and processes. Reservoir model, flow in porous media, thermodynamics	Brine/CO <sub>2</sub> --- Oil/CO <sub>2</sub> --- CO <sub>2</sub> f(P,T,X) Modeling----	-----> -----> ----->	-----> ----->
Monitoring: Techniques for establishing baselines and for monitoring during and after injection	Surface and subsurface techniques	Monitoring programs during operation	Monitoring for long-term assurance of safety
Screening: Tools to choose target reservoirs and sites. Geological, engineering, political, safety	Oil and gas Coals	Coals, brines	Brines
Engineering: Studies to provide technology assessment, cost/benefit analysis by consistent techniques. Pilot-scale to full-scale designs	Technology assessment. Cost/benefit analysis. Pilot-scale plants and designs	Demonstration scale plants. Full-scale designs	Full-scale plants

**Table 9.4. Priority of cross-cutting technologies**

Multiphase reactive, multi-component, active transport phenomena:	High priority
Phase behavior of mixed fluids. Physical and chemical interactions:	High priority
CO <sub>2</sub> dissolution of formation materials and studies of reaction kinetics and thermodynamics:	High priority
Coupled H-M-C-T processes and modeling:	High priority
Microseismic mechanisms and deformation modeling:	Lower priority
High resolution geophysical modeling:	Lower priority

Implementation of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration will be driven by economics. Within the United States, there are at present no financial incentives to sequester CO<sub>2</sub> except incidentally as part of an enhanced oil recovery project. Oil and gas reservoirs will be the first set of targets, for the reasons outlined in the priority setting exercise.

Commercial-size projects will be very expensive and dominated by the costs of the following items:

- separation of CO<sub>2</sub> from process streams
- transportation to the sink target
- compression to injection pressures

A program's life should be similar to this progression:

- Project identification
- Sensitivity analysis
- Technology assessment
- Laboratory studies
- Pilot studies with extensive monitoring
- Demonstration scale studies with targeted monitoring and with parallel development of changes dictated by early pilot and demonstration activities

### Advanced Concepts for Carbon Sequestration<sup>10</sup>

Two principles should shape both the prioritization of concepts and their evaluation in selecting candidates for further development:

- Funding for novel biological or chemical approaches to carbon sequestration should be provided without undue prescriptions or limitations. It is impossible to predict what form successful novel processes might take in addressing carbon sequestration. Opportunity is needed for high-impact, "out-of-the-box" thinking.
- Risk, cost, and development time should be addressed in project proposals.

Based on these ground rules, four key objectives were identified:

- Develop breakthrough processes with the potential to sequester large amounts of CO<sub>2</sub> and other greenhouse gases with sequestration lifetimes of greater than 100 years.
- Create new tools, concepts, and information that expand our ability to develop sequestration options and understand their impacts on environmental systems.
- Develop key subprocesses that enhance other sequestration options (i.e., geological, terrestrial, oceans). An example is condensing gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> into water-soluble acetates or solid forms of carbon to reduce containment volumes or increase capacities of geological repositories.
- Develop value-added products from greenhouse gases, as opposed to disposing of them in a relatively inert and unusable form. CO<sub>2</sub> can be used as a feedstock for useful products.

<sup>10</sup> The breakout groups for Advanced Biological Processes (Chapter 6) and Advanced Chemical Concepts (Chapter 7) were combined at the Stakeholders Workshop into an advanced concepts group. James Ekmann, DOE Fossil Energy Technology Center, was the rapporteur for this group.

R&D priorities focus on two primary and numerous secondary criteria. The first priority is to identify approaches capable of consuming large amounts of CO<sub>2</sub> and sequestering it for long times. The second priority is to develop by-products that are well characterized in terms of future chemical changes, toxicity (including that of potential derivatives), and dispersal into the environment. Other secondary priorities include these:

- Focus on 2030 and take advantage of opportunities that occur before then.
- Consider CO<sub>2</sub> a resource for use in products as well as a waste to be disposed of.
- Address serious potential problems in the other sequestration areas, for example, controlling reactions between injected CO<sub>2</sub> and the cap rock that might limit geologic reservoir capacity.
- Continue road-mapping activities by looking first at the desired end result (that is, the sorts of products desired) then looking back toward the process developments needed to produce the desired end-state. This process offers a means to develop revolutionary rather than incremental processes.
- Maintain a diverse portfolio of R&D aimed at breakthrough technologies, since high-risk approaches suggest that some of the options to be explored will fail to meet cost and performance criteria.
- Support development of processes that offer potential multiple (integrated) benefits—sequestration being only one of them—but no single benefit that satisfies simple cost and performance criteria. Means are needed to develop assessment techniques that optimize multiple benefits including those not funded currently (see next bulleted item).
- Develop life-cycle analysis for total carbon emissions and energy requirements to provide a coarse filter to measure net CO<sub>2</sub> emissions for proposed options. This filter might identify additional issues to be evaluated to decide if further work is merited. Such methods should be used before innovative approaches are subjected to economic evaluations that might be driven by the uncertainties.
- Develop new tools, processes, and information to expand the range of sequestration options and facilitate our understanding of impacts of these emerging technologies.

The following are examples of advanced biological and chemical processes for which R&D is needed. (The list is not prioritized.) Many of the concepts are discussed earlier in this report.

#### **Advanced chemical concepts**

- Produce durable goods, products and infrastructure from CO<sub>2</sub>. This process links the demand for high-volume products (tens to hundreds of megatons of product consumed per year), such as those used in infrastructure and other commodities, to population growth. Potential products include artificial soils, lumber for buildings, roadbeds, plastics and composites, and bio-based materials. Added benefits from this approach may include, for example, replacing heavier steel automobile components with lighter-weight plastic or composite materials. Downstream exhaust emissions are lower for lighter vehicles, and upstream emissions are reduced because less steel manufacturing is required.

- Use materials that contain carbonate magnesium to form magnesium carbonates. This approach currently focuses on mining olivine and serpentine ores and reacting them with CO<sub>2</sub> at elevated temperatures and pressures to produce MgCO<sub>3</sub>, which can be stored indefinitely or used. The process can potentially be used in above-ground, closed-loop processes or in-situ.
- Use supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> to form man-made geothermal hot-rock reservoirs and as a heat-transfer fluid in geothermal power plants. Supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> is somewhat superior to water as a heat transfer fluid and does not mobilize heavy metals contained in the subsurface environment.
- Produce ammonium bicarbonate (NH<sub>4</sub>HCO<sub>3</sub>) fertilizer from water, ammonia, and CO<sub>2</sub>. The fertilizer will dissociate in the near-surface soil; the ammonia will act as a plant/crop fertilizer, and the bicarbonate ion (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>) will migrate into the deep soil and ultimately into subsurface water. Carbonate lifetime, soil counter ions, transport of the bicarbonate ions to the aquifer, and reactions in the aquifer must be considered.

### Advanced biological concepts

- Increase plant enzyme activity. For both carbon (rubisco, PEP carboxylase) and nitrogen fixation (nitrogenase) pathways, research may increase plant enzyme activity and increase biomass yields. A related approach is pathway engineering to produce carbon-containing metabolites (intermediates) that can be sequestered or used in some way.
- The research programs on ocean fertilization should also consider the near-shore environment (Wilde et al. 1990).
- Use biological processes to produce a compact, easily stored form of CO<sub>2</sub>. Use microbial processes to produce water- or petroleum-soluble compounds (i.e., acetate) that can be stored indefinitely in smaller volumes than other forms of CO<sub>2</sub> intended for geologic sequestration.
- Modify plants to produce durable materials. Lignin-derived materials already play a significant role in improving the performance of a variety of materials, including concrete, adhesives, fertilizers, and road surfaces. (Lignin Institute 1999). Research to alter the composition of plants has the potential to increase the yields and ease the recovery of useful plant products, as well as increase the stability of materials derived from them. The potential for this approach to increase the amount of carbon tied up in products is unclear and would need to be evaluated. Increased use of lignin is under investigation.

### Impacts on other R&D efforts

Research in advanced chemical and biological concepts could be useful in other sequestration processes. There is potential for large impacts in terrestrial carbon sequestration approaches through the use of CO<sub>2</sub>-derived artificial soils for reclamation of degraded land, as well as improvements in plant photosynthesis that would benefit biomass production and stress tolerance. Improving ocean and soil algal and microbial processes to enhance carbon capture and retention holds the potential for significant increases in the amount of carbon that could be sequestered. Volume reduction in liquid and solid CO<sub>2</sub>-derived products may improve geologic sequestration.

According to an industry representative at the session, innovative approaches to CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture are needed to reduce cost. Advanced biological and chemical strategies have been identified to address this need. Chemical trapping and concentration can be done with reversible organic processing. Biological processes may be able to use impure and dilute CO<sub>2</sub>-containing streams (chemical processes require pure CO<sub>2</sub>). Current separation and capture technologies impose significant costs on any process requiring a source of pure CO<sub>2</sub>.

Analytical chemistry may provide techniques for monitoring and verifying carbon sources and sinks. Large-scale sequestration will succeed only if we can safely separate, capture, transport, dispose of, or use gigatonne quantities of CO<sub>2</sub>, perhaps as part of an international trading regime. The complexity of operating such a system while ensuring human health and safety and protecting the environment will demand extensive monitoring, measurement, and verification capabilities. To keep these costs low, innovative technologies are required that are inexpensive, reliable, easy to deploy and maintain, and capable of measuring quantities of primary interest (i.e., CO<sub>2</sub> leakage rates over a large area, rather than some surrogate measurement).

The other overarching requirement for any of these processes is an accurate understanding of the environmental impacts with respect to products and by-products, their lifetimes, and their dispersal into the environment. One approach to determining impacts is to use a “rough” environmental impact filter for a proposed process, in which upstream and downstream impacts can be assessed from the beginning. For example, what happens to MgCO<sub>3</sub> produced via the accelerated carbonation of minerals? Is it reburied, left on the ground, or used in some way?

*The Advanced Concepts breakout session included participants with both chemical and biological expertise. The group included about 25 individuals, mostly from government agencies (including national laboratories) but also from industry (BP Amoco) and academia.*

## References

Adams, E., M. Akai, L. Gomen, P. Haugan, H. Herzog, S. Masuda, S. Masutani, T. Ohsumi, and C. S. Wong 1998. “An International Experiment on CO<sub>2</sub> Ocean Sequestration,” presented at the Fourth International Conference on Greenhouse Gas Control Technologies, Interlaken, Switzerland, August 30–September 2, 1998.

Fan, S., M. Gloor, J. Mahlman, S. Pacala, J. Sarmiento, T. Takahashi, and P. Tans 1998. “A Large Terrestrial Carbon Sink in North America Implied by Atmospheric and Oceanic Carbon Dioxide Data and Models,” *Science* 282 (October 16):442–6.

Lignin Institute, li@assnhq.com

Richardson, Bill 1999. Remarks presented at the Clean Coal Technology Conference, Knoxville, Tennessee, June 23.

Wilde, P., M. Quinby-Hunt, and W. N. Berry 1990. “Vertical Advection from Oxic or Anoxic Water from the Main Pycnocline as a Cause of Rapid Extinction or Rapid Radiations,” in *Lecture Notes in Earth Sciences*, E. G. Kaufman and O. H. Walliser, eds., Vol. 30, Springer-Verlag.



# Vision

*"To protect the climate cost-effectively, technology breakthroughs, technology incentives, and the elimination of barriers for the deployment of existing technologies are needed. Broad-based cooperative programs to stimulate markets and develop and disseminate new and existing technology to industrialized and developing countries must be a high priority" (World Resources Institute, British Petroleum, General Motors, Monsanto 1998).*

## 10 FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The options for sequestering carbon are diverse. Some are being implemented already, and others will require advances in scientific and engineering disciplines. Many options will require long lead times prior to implementation. In this chapter we identify issues central to the development of an R&D program that would enable us to make viable carbon sequestration options available for the 2025 to 2050 time frame.

The existing R&D program should be expanded soon. If carbon sequestration is to have a significant impact, it will necessarily involve changes of a large magnitude. Decisions made today about the energy infrastructure are likely to be with us for the greater part of a century. New information will help us develop an infrastructure with the flexibility to operate in tandem with carbon sequestration options. Therefore, research should anticipate substantially any necessary carbon reduction efforts.

For carbon capture and sequestration to become a viable large-scale option, it must be cost-competitive, safe, and acceptable. The R&D program should be oriented toward understanding more fully the fate of sequestered CO<sub>2</sub> and the impacts it will have on the environment and on human safety, and toward developing options to ensure a flexible response.

Given the federal government's role in supporting high-risk R&D in the long-term national interest, a carbon sequestration research and technology development program should be significantly expanded on the strength of the eventuality that such technology will be needed in the energy marketplace some time in the first quarter of the next century. This message is consistent with a recent report of the President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology and other

investigations. We should begin this R&D now, because the options available in 2025 and beyond will be determined by research being conducted today.

The first section of this chapter discusses overarching issues that became apparent during the development of this preliminary road map. They are key aspects of carbon sequestration that must be acknowledged and addressed in the planning and implementation of an expanded R&D program. The second section presents our recommendations resulting from an analysis of the focus areas discussed in the previous chapters and from discussions during the workshops.

The implementation of carbon capture and sequestration science and technology must be based on public acceptance. Outreach and educational activities to the public concerning climate change and sequestration are important. Even though some strategies seem inherently beneficial (e.g., planting more forests and protecting wetlands), it may be a challenge to gain public acceptance of some sequestration options because of their large scale, the fact that they are new and may be viewed as adding costs without adding value, and uncertainties about their environmental consequences. Although some current sequestration activities are presumably safe and benign, such as the Sleipner West Project in the North Sea, other options have largely unknown consequences.

Some sequestration options with potentially large environmental impacts may evoke strong concerns from the public. Whether a sequestration option is successful will depend not only on predicted

consequences but also on public acceptance, based upon understanding of benefits and costs.

## 10.1 FINDINGS

- **Carbon sequestration is a broad topic with many internal linkages; combining processes often can provide ancillary benefits**

The ancillary benefits of many carbon sequestration options are appealing. Thus one of the ways to improve the prospects for carbon sequestration is to combine different processes and benefits so that the larger system is more attractive than individual parts. One example is the increased production of oil that would result from the use of CO<sub>2</sub> for enhanced oil recovery or the enhanced production of methane from injecting CO<sub>2</sub> into coal beds—sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> while extracting fossil resources. Another example discussed in Chap. 6 on advanced biological processes is the energyplex, referred to by DOE as the “Vision 21 Plant,” which is a series of modular plants (an industrial ecosystem) that integrate the production of power, heat, chemicals, and fuels to maximize the use of available energy while capturing and sequestering carbon emissions. Another example of combining processes would be using captured carbon to make construction materials or soil enhancements that would otherwise be unavailable.

As Fig. 8.1 in Chap. 8 illustrates, carbon sequestration involves many technological paths and connections or feedbacks. The need to connect processes is evident. Costs and capacities of alternative sequestration options must be based upon consistent assumptions. For instance, the

characteristics of a particular CO<sub>2</sub> stream—its location, temperature, pressure, concentration, or impurities—may make it more suitable for sequestration in one type of sink, such as a geological formation, than in another, such as an ocean.

The number of disciplines involved in carbon sequestration R&D is large. Much can be gained by coordinating research programs with related scientific and engineering activities; for example, scientists studying the oceanic carbon cycle and deep sea injection may need to collaborate with the offshore energy companies developing deep-sea technology.

We found that many research topics involve critical links in several of the focus areas. The development of monitoring systems is important across all the focus areas, and advanced biological and advanced chemical topics have potential impacts in several focus areas. In addition, for sequestration options that cannot rely on taking CO<sub>2</sub> directly from the atmosphere, efficient CO<sub>2</sub> capture, separation, and transportation methods are critical. If the cost of capture is very high or the delivery system cannot accommodate the large amount of carbon that must be sequestered, no degree of cost reduction or efficiency improvement for any sequestration option would be sufficient for it to compete with other carbon reduction efforts. The costs for linking capture and separation to disposal in geologic formations or in the oceans, including compression plants and gas pipelines, have not yet been properly addressed.

- **Many carbon sequestration options can work within the existing infrastructure; other scenarios would require a new distribution system**

A primary benefit of many sequestration options is that they use the existing infrastructure; indeed, sequestration may allow for continued use of fossil fuels and may be based upon current infrastructure.

Sequestration also is consistent with the development of new advanced fossil-fuel-fired generation plants. Sequestration is likely to start with the easiest opportunities, which may require few infrastructure changes, such as the Sleipner West project in the North Sea or improved agricultural and forestry practices.

Other scenarios might require significant infrastructure changes. For instance, shifting to hydrogen-powered transportation to reduce carbon emissions would require a new hydrogen distribution system. The issues in developing a new distribution system, perhaps by making it cost-competitive before it reaches a critical size, are outside the purview of this report, but they are significant. In addition, deregulation could lead to a switch from central station power generation to distributed generating systems (e.g., microturbines) for which capture and separation technologies could be prohibitively expensive. Systems approaches should address the vast materials requirements for some proposed technological solutions. For example, formation of MgCO<sub>3</sub> compounds from CO<sub>2</sub> emissions could require mining operations of unrivaled magnitude for the ores needed.

- **Carbon sequestration is an appropriate topic for government-sponsored R&D, which will be critical to successful implementation**

The prior findings suggest carbon sequestration is not a trivial challenge. The integration required to obtain

industrial participation, address environmental issues, and gain public acceptance suggests that an expanded government initiative is needed. In addition, unlike for clean energy and energy efficiency, no economic or regulatory incentives exist at this time for carbon sequestration, suggesting the need for more governmental than private responsibility for support of research and technology development programs. This conclusion was also reached by the DOE-sponsored Stakeholders' Workshop on Carbon Sequestration held in June 1998 (Herzog 1998), at which industry sent a strong message that "the research agenda for the moment must be led, and funded, by government."

Most possibilities for carbon sequestration involve immature technologies and ideas. The carbon sequestration options include topics that are inadequately investigated compared with many other energy research areas, making the opportunities for significant breakthroughs high. To be successful in the long term, government-sponsored R&D must result in significant advances that will change the rules of the game. Although little private-sector R&D is under way at this time, there is evidence (witness recent announcements by BP/Amoco and others) that the private sector will attempt to implement carbon mitigation approaches that are known to be technically and economically feasible. Domestic and international forest projects also are being conducted by the electric utility industry. These may offer unique opportunities for an R&D program to identify complementary links to industrial practices that could lead to early demonstration opportunities.

- **Some carbon sequestration options could be used as near-term measures until other carbon management technologies, including other carbon sequestration technologies, can be implemented**

There is much we cannot predict with confidence about the reaction of the natural system to increases in atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations. There may be "nonlinear" responses derived from positive feedbacks. An altered climate could bring an increased release of greenhouse gases through, for instance, more rapid mineralization of soil organic material, altered ocean currents, or offgassing of CO<sub>2</sub> and/or methane from permafrost regions.

If scientists were to predict with some degree of reliability that there would be a nonlinear response in the near future, it might result in the need to emphasize development and implementation of near-term sequestration alternatives even though the lifetime of the sequestered carbon might be less permanent than is desirable. In this case, one sequestration option might target R&D to provide techniques and technologies to stall the nonlinear response until some other more permanent solution could be implemented.

## 10.2 RECOMMENDATIONS

### 10.2.1 Beginning the R&D Program

The following recommendations should apply to the carbon sequestration research program.

- **Ensure that the carbon sequestration research program develops technologies and practices that are cost-effective**

**and benign.** For carbon sequestration to be a viable option, it must compete favorably with other carbon management programs with respect to cost and effectiveness. Carbon sequestration should be safe, predictable, reliable, measurable, and verifiable.

Research programs should lead to these ends. To be cost-effective, the research program will need to reduce costs associated with the current separation and sequestration technologies and processes and support the development of new, innovative technologies and processes.

- **Ensure that the research is integrated with other, related research programs.** The research program will be linked to related, ongoing research programs so as to leverage the efforts. For instance, results from biomass or carbon cycle research could help in developing the biological understanding needed for terrestrial sequestration.

The research program should be conducted collaboratively among the offices in DOE and with other government agencies. Ties to other countries through research programs or through scientific bodies, such as IEA's Greenhouse Gas R&D Programme, should be made. The research program should also collaborate with the research and other activities undertaken by the private sector.

- **Ensure that the research program is flexible and targets a wide variety of approaches.** Carbon sequestration is an immature field, so multiple approaches and scales are warranted. There are many prospects for significant advances.

An expanded R&D program should be broad-based, including both basic and applied, theoretical, laboratory, and field-based research, and all sources and sinks. A robust R&D program is needed that has the flexibility to evolve over time as new scientific advances are incorporated into the overall energy system. For example, deregulation of utility companies may lead to market penetration by highly distributed power systems whose individual emissions would be difficult to capture, aggregate, and sequester. Changes in the availability of oil and in the use of nuclear power because of geopolitical reasons could alter the energy mix and the accompanying CO<sub>2</sub> emissions. Future demand for materials made from CO<sub>2</sub>, such as acetate or bioplastics, may increase dramatically. Changes in other related technologies, such as batteries and fuel cells, will influence the effectiveness of various technology pathways. Our understanding of the safety and potential environmental consequences of various sequestration options will evolve. An approach is needed that has a long-term goal but has the flexibility to respond to changes in public policy and energy systems, as well as to the successes and failures of its own research activities.

- **Initiate field-scale investigations to help guide other carbon sequestration research and increase understanding of processes at the field scale.** An important facet of any carbon sequestration R&D program will be to include some early field-scale investigations. Some sequestration options may be sufficiently ready

for pilot- or field-scale research, such as sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> in soils and vegetation, geological formations, or in deep coal beds from which methane is extracted. Selection of these investigations should be based on existing information and the opportunities for early results that could provide rapid assessment and feedback to fundamental R&D needs. Large-scale long-term field studies should test research concepts and reduce economic, environmental, and operational uncertainties associated with the new technologies.

- **Ensure that the research program develops an integrated approach to setting R&D priorities and evaluating the probability of success for different sequestration options.** One potential research topic is the development of an integrated framework for carbon sequestration. A context for the overall research program would be useful because so many of the issues cross disciplines and related activities. The integrative modeling would include investigations into life-cycle analysis, risk, uncertainty, and, to the extent possible, economics. One goal would be to generate a clear model of the carbon flows, including the form that the carbon takes (gaseous, compressed liquid, elemental, carbonate, clathrate, etc.). A second goal would be to keep track of the upstream “costs” associated with the carbon in the form in which it is found. It is important to measure the energy penalties associated with providing carbon in a particular form at any particular place in the system. This research would precede actual economic

analysis of many of the more complicated sequestration options.

The integrated approach to research should incorporate two cross-cutting R&D areas: (1) Developing new monitoring and analysis technologies and procedures to evaluate the efficiency and longevity of our technologies. (2) Developing and enhancing models and simulation systems for all CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration activities to aid in understanding potential benefits and risks associated with large-scale use of these technologies.

- **Ensure that the results of the R&D program are provided to policymakers to aid them in developing policy and selecting the most efficient and effective solutions to the issues of climate change.** This report is not intended to modify the policy process that determines what, if anything, should be done about climate change. But those policy processes should be informed about the availability, costs, and ancillary benefits of various sequestration options. Research and reporting on monitoring, verification, effectiveness, and environmental consequences of carbon sequestration technologies and practices are an essential element in an iterative process, the goal of which is to help policymakers design more efficient and effective solutions to carbon management.
- **Include the magnitude of the impact of the carbon sequestration option among the criteria for setting research priorities.** Further development and refinement of this road map could include setting priorities for the research. Many priorities and discussions of

staging—that is, which research topics should be conducted first and which should come later—are included in the focus area chapters 2–7. Chapter 8 offers further general criteria that could be used in setting priorities. Although sequestration will likely be achieved through the use of a number of technologies, only those research topics should be targeted that have the potential for significantly reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions with acceptable environmental impacts and costs (in either real dollars or energy losses). Longer-term research should focus on the benefits of sequestration mechanisms that will be effective on scales from multiple decades to millennia. Those approaches with shorter sequestration time horizons will provide important relief in the short term, but they must be augmented with more substantial solutions in the longer term.

- **Further develop and refine this road map.** This report is only a first step and should be enhanced by engaging a broader community in discussions of the various sequestration pathways outlined in the roadmap. The understanding of carbon sequestration is still in its early stages, and R&D pathways are still being formulated. Technology pathways are outlined in this road map, but more explicit pathways can be generated for some of the focus areas. Some explicit recommendations are made in the focus area chapters, but phasing of potential R&D schedules has not been done. The next step should include more intense participation by stakeholders, such as the private sector and nongovernmental organizations.

## 10.3 PRINCIPAL FOCUS AREA RECOMMENDATIONS

### 10.3.1 Separation and Capture of CO<sub>2</sub>

There are numerous options for the separation and capture of CO<sub>2</sub>, and many of these are commercially available. However, none has been applied at the scale required as part of a CO<sub>2</sub> emissions mitigation strategy, nor has any method been demonstrated for all the anthropogenic sources considered in this R&D map. Many issues remain regarding the ability to separate and capture CO<sub>2</sub> from anthropogenic sources on the scale required, and to meet the cost, safety, and environmental requirements for separation and capture. In our assessment of the scientific and technological gaps between the requirements for CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture and the capabilities to meet these requirements, many explicit and specific R&D needs were identified.

- Geologic or ocean storage sequestration options that use a concentrated source of CO<sub>2</sub> require low-cost carbon separation and capture techniques to be viable options. The scale of the industrial system required to process gigatonnes of carbon warrants investigation into new solvents, adsorbents, and membrane separation devices for either pre- or post-combustion separation.
- A science-based and applications-oriented R&D program is needed to establish the efficacy of current and novel CO<sub>2</sub> separation processes as important contributors to carbon emissions mitigation. The focus must be on specific areas where long-term R&D will result in order-

of-magnitude changes in cost and energy penalty reductions.

Important elements of such a program include the evaluation, improvement, and development of chemical and physical absorption solvents, chemical and physical adsorbents, membrane separation devices with selectivity and specificity for CO<sub>2</sub>-containing streams, molecular and kinetic modeling of the materials and processes, and laboratory-scale testing of the selected processes.

- Field tests are needed of promising new CO<sub>2</sub> separation and capture options in small bypass streams at large point sources of CO<sub>2</sub>, such as natural gas wells and hydrogen production plants.
- Transportation and compression plant costs should be considered as part of the capture and separation process.

### 10.3.2 Ocean Sequestration

- The ocean provides a large potential reservoir. Active experiments are already under way in iron fertilization and other tests of enhanced marine biological sequestration, as well as deep CO<sub>2</sub> injection. Improvements in understanding marine systems will be needed before implementation of major marine sequestration campaigns. The key concern to be addressed is improved understanding of potential environmental impacts associated with CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in the deep ocean.
- Field experiments of CO<sub>2</sub> injection into the ocean are needed to study the physical/chemical behavior of

the released CO<sub>2</sub> and its potential for ecological impact.

- Ocean general circulation models need to be improved and used to determine the best locations and depths for CO<sub>2</sub> injection and to determine the long-term fate of CO<sub>2</sub> injected into the ocean.
- The effect of fertilization of surface waters on the increase of carbon sequestered in the deep ocean needs to be determined, and the potential ecological consequences on the structure and function of marine ecosystems and on natural biogeochemical cycling in the ocean need to be monitored.
- New innovative concepts for sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> in the ocean need to be identified and developed that are cost- and energy-efficient and have minimal impact on the environment.

### 10.3.3 Carbon Sequestration in Terrestrial Ecosystems

- The terrestrial biosphere is a large and accessible reservoir for sequestering CO<sub>2</sub> that is already present in the atmosphere. Natural carbon fluxes are huge, so that even small forced changes resulting from R&D advances would be very significant. It will be important to address the consequences of altering the natural flux.
- The terrestrial ecosystem is a major biological scrubber for atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> (present net carbon sequestration is ~2 GtC/year) that can be significantly increased by careful manipulation over the next 25 years to provide a critical “bridging technology” while other

carbon management options are developed. An increase in carbon sequestration to perhaps as much as 5 to 10 GtC/year could be possible as a result of directed R&D. Ecosystem protection is also important and may reduce or prevent loss of carbon currently stored in the terrestrial biosphere.

- Research on four key interrelated R&D topics is needed to meet goals for carbon sequestration in terrestrial ecosystems:
  - Increase understanding of ecosystem structure and function directed toward carbon allocation and partitioning, nutrient cycling, plant and microbial biotechnology, molecular genetics, and functional genomics.
  - Improve measurement of gross carbon fluxes and dynamic carbon inventories through improvements to existing methods and through development of new instrumentation for in situ, nondestructive belowground observation and remote sensing for aboveground biomass measurement, verification, and monitoring of carbon stocks.
  - Implement scientific principles into tools such as irrigation methods, efficient nutrient delivery systems, increased energy efficiency in agriculture and forestry, and increased byproduct use.
  - Assess ecosystem behavior in response to carbon sequestration strategies in an environment of a changing climate using a suite of models (including life cycle analysis) to integrate across scales from physiological processes to regional ecosystem management practices.
- Field-scale experiments in large-scale ecosystems are necessary to understand both physiological and geochemical processes regulating carbon sequestration based upon integrative ecosystem models. Such carbon sequestration experiments are needed to provide proof-of-principle testing of new sequestration concepts and integration of sequestration science and engineering principles.
- A digital environmental atlas is needed of quality-assured, verifiable, and georeferenced carbon biogeochemistry on a worldwide basis that integrates terrestrial systems with ocean and geological systems.

#### 10.3.4 Sequestration in Geological Formations

Although there is extensive industrial experience in geologic sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>, many important issues must be addressed to reduce costs, ensure safety, and gain public acceptance. Implementation of the recommendations outlined will provide the information and operational experience needed to address these issues.

- Limited geological sequestration is being practiced today, but it is not yet possible to predict with confidence storage volumes and integrity over long time periods.

Many important issues must be addressed to reduce costs, ensure safety, and gain public acceptance.

- Fundamental and applied research is needed to improve the ability to predict, optimize, and monitor the performance of sequestration in oil, gas, aqueous, and coal formations. Elements of such a program include multiphase flow in heterogeneous and deformable media; phase behavior; CO<sub>2</sub> dissolution and reaction kinetics, micromechanics and deformation modeling; coupled hydrologic-chemical-mechanical-thermal modeling; and high-resolution geophysical imaging. Advanced concepts should be included, such as enhancement of mineral trapping with catalysts or other chemical additives, sequestration in composite geologic formations, microbial conversion of CO<sub>2</sub> to methane, rejuvenation of depleted oil reservoirs, and CO<sub>2</sub>-enhanced methane hydrate production.
- A nationwide assessment is needed to determine the location and capacity of the geologic formations available for sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub> from each of the major power-generating regions of the United States. Screening criteria for choosing suitable options and assessing capacity must be developed in partnership with industry, the scientific community, and public and regulatory oversight agencies.
- Pilot-scale field tests of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration should be initiated to develop cost and performance data and to help prioritize future R&D needs. The tests must be designed and conducted with sufficient monitoring, modeling, and

performance assessment to enable quantitative evaluation of the processes responsible for geologic sequestration. Pilot testing will lay the groundwork for collaboration with industrial partners on full-scale demonstration projects.

#### 10.3.5 Advanced Biological Processes

The 21<sup>st</sup> Century has been referred to as the “Century for Biology.” Indeed, many new molecular tools have been developed that will aid in new discoveries and assist in providing solutions to key problems facing humankind and the planet. The difference that advanced biological techniques can make will be evident when they are integrated with land, subsurface, and ocean management practices. The following recommendations will promote cost-effective and stable biological solutions to carbon sequestration.

- Advanced biological techniques may produce improvements too radical to predict. Biologic processes can yield sequestered carbon products at the least cost. New carbon sequestration options could become feasible and others could be improved using advanced biological techniques.
- Research should be initiated on the genetic and protein engineering of plants, animals, and microorganisms to address improved metabolic functions that can enhance, improve, or optimize carbon management via carbon capture technology, sequestration in reduced carbon compounds, use in alternative durable materials, and improved productivity.
- The objectives and goals of the advanced biological research

should be linked to those specific problems and issues outlined for carbon sequestration in geological formations, oceans, and soils and vegetation so that an integrated research approach can elucidate carbon sequestration at the molecular, organism, and ecosystem levels.

- Short-, mid-, and long-term goals in advanced biological research should be instituted so that a mimetic yardstick can be employed to assess scale-up issues, genetic stability in natural settings, and efficacy in the field.

#### 10.3.6 Advanced Chemical Approaches

- Most carbon sequestration options rely on chemical reactions to achieve benign, stable, and inert products. Studies to enhance the relevant chemistry almost certainly will reduce the costs or increase the effectiveness of these options. Results from R&D on advanced chemical topics also may make it possible to generate useful and marketable byproducts.
- The proper focus of R&D into advanced chemical sciences and technologies is on transforming gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> or its constituent carbon into materials that either are benign, inert, long-lived and contained in the earth or water of our planet, or have commercial value.
  - Benign by-products for sequestration should be developed. This avenue

may offer the potential to sequester large (gigatonne) amounts of anthropogenic carbon.

- Commercial products need to be developed. These could include aggregate for protecting land from ocean encroachment; fertilizer made from NH<sub>3</sub>, water, and CO<sub>2</sub>; and other products for which there may be large-scale uses. This topic probably represents a lesser potential (millions of tonnes) but may result in collateral benefits tied to pollution prevention.
- The chemical sciences can fill crucial gaps identified in the other focus areas. In particular, environmental chemistry is an essential link in determining the impact and consequences of these various approaches. Studies to address the specific gaps identified in Chap. 7 should be conducted to ensure that other focus areas meet their potential.

## 10.4 REFERENCES

Herzog, H. J., ed. 1998. *Proceedings of the Stakeholders' Workshop on Carbon Sequestration*, MIT EL 98-002, Massachusetts Institute of Technology Energy Laboratory, June.

WRI (World Resources Institute) British Petroleum, General Motors, and Monsanto 1998. *Climate Protection Initiative: Building A Safe Climate, Sound Business Future*, Washington, D.C.



## **Appendix A**

### **CARBON SEQUESTRATION WORKING PAPER CONTRIBUTORS AND 1998 WORKSHOP ATTENDEES**



## Appendix A

### CARBON SEQUESTRATION WORKING PAPER CONTRIBUTORS AND 1998 WORKSHOP ATTENDEES

**Note: Bold text indicates attendees at October 28-29, 1998, workshop**

#### Focus Areas Co-Leads

##### **Sally Benson**

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
1 Cyclotron Road  
Mail Stop 90-1110  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: 510/486-5875  
Fax: 510/486-7714  
E-mail: SMBenson@lbl.gov

##### **R. G. Gilliland**, Associate Director

Energy and Engineering Sciences  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6248  
Phone: 865/574-9920  
Fax: 865/576-6118  
E-mail: ig7@ornl.gov or  
gillilandrg@ornl.gov

##### **John F. Clarke**

Battelle Washington Operations  
Pacific Northwest National Laboratory  
9001 D Street, SW, Suite 900  
Washington, DC 20024-2115  
Phone: 202/646-5280  
Fax: 202/646-7824  
E-mail: J.F.Clarke@pnl.gov

##### **George R. Hendrey**

Division of Environmental Biology  
and Instrumentation  
Brookhaven National Laboratory  
Bldg. 318  
Upton, NY 11973  
Phone: 516/344-3262  
Fax: 516/344-2060  
E-mail: hendrey@bnl.gov

##### **James Ekmann**

Deputy Associate Director  
Office of Systems and Env'l. Analysis  
Federal Energy Technology Center  
P.O. Box 10940, MS 922-178C  
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania 15236  
Phone: 412/386-5716  
Fax: 412/386-4561  
E-mail: ekmann@fetc.doe.gov

##### **Howard J. Herzog**

Energy Lab, Massachusetts Institute of  
Technology  
77 Massachusetts Ave., E40-471  
Cambridge, MA 02139-4307  
Phone: 617/253-0688  
Fax: 617/253-8013  
E-mail: hjherzog@mit.edu

**John C. Houghton**  
Environmental Sciences Division  
Department of Energy, SC-74  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: 301/903-8288  
Fax: 301/903-8519  
E-mail:  
John.Houghton@science.doe.gov

**Anna Palmisano**  
Environmental Sciences Division  
Department of Energy, SC-74  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: 301/903-9963  
Fax: 301/903-8519  
E-mail:  
Anna.Palmisano@science.doe.gov

**Jennie C. Hunter-Cevera**  
Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
1 Cyclotron Road  
Mail Stop 70A-3317  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: 510/486-7359  
Fax: 510/486-7152  
E-mail: JCHunter-Cevera@lbl.gov

**David E. Reichle**, Associate Director  
Life Sciences and Environmental  
Technologies  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6253  
Phone: 865/574-4333  
Fax: 865/574-9869  
E-mail: der@ornl.gov or  
reichlede@ornl.gov

**Gary K. Jacobs**  
Environmental Sciences Division  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6036  
Phone: 865/576-0567  
Fax: 865/574-7287  
E-mail: jacobsgk@ornl.gov

**Robert H. Socolow**  
Energy and Environmental Studies  
H104 Engr Quad  
Princeton University  
Princeton, NJ 08544  
Phone: 609/258-5446  
Fax: 609/258-3661  
Email: socolow@princeton.edu

**Roddie R. Judkins**, Manager  
Fossil Energy Program  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
1 Bethel Valley Road  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6084  
Phone: 865/574-4572  
Fax: 865/574-5812  
E-mail: ujr@ornl.gov or  
judkinsrr@ornl.gov

**John Stringer**  
Executive Technical Fellow  
EPRI  
3412 Hillview Avenue  
Palo Alto, CA 94304-1395  
Phone: 650/855-2472  
Fax: 650/855-2002  
E-mail: jstringe@epri.com

**Robert L. Kane**  
Office of Planning/Environment  
Analysis  
Department of Energy, FE-26  
1000 Independence Ave., S.W.  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: 202/586-4753  
Fax: 202/586-1188  
E-mail: Robert.Kane@hq.doe.gov

**Alan M. Wolsky**  
Energy Systems Division  
Argonne National Laboratory  
9700 South Cass Ave, ES/362  
Argonne, IL 60439-4815  
Phone: 630/252-3783  
Fax: 630/252-1677  
E-mail: alan\_wolsky@qmgate.anl.gov

**Nicholas B. Woodward**  
Engineering and Geosciences Division  
Department of Energy, SC-15  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: 301/903-4061  
Fax: 301/903-0271  
E-mail:  
Nick.Woodward@science.doe.gov

**Michael T. York**  
Department of Energy, FE-33  
Department of Energy, Headquarters  
1000 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: 202/586-5669  
Fax: 202/586-4341  
E-mail: Michael.York@hq.doe.gov

**Separation and Capture**

**Roddie R. Judkins**, Manager  
Fossil Energy Program  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
1 Bethel Valley Road  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6084  
Phone: 865/574-4572  
Fax: 865/574-5812  
E-mail: ujr@ornl.gov or  
judkinsrr@ornl.gov

**John Stringer**  
Executive Technical Fellow  
EPRI  
3412 Hillview Avenue  
Palo Alto, CA 94304-1395  
Phone: 650/855-2472  
Fax: 650/855-2002  
E-mail: jstringe@epri.com

**Joseph M. Abrardo**  
Global Products Manager  
Air Products & Chemicals  
5884 Krause Road  
Schnecksville, PA 18078  
Phone: 610/481-8902  
Fax: 610/481-7166  
E-mail: abrardjm@apci.com

**Allen G. Croff**, Associate Division  
Director  
Chemical Technology Division  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6178  
Phone: 865/574-7192  
Fax: 865/576-7468  
E-mail: croffag@ornl.gov

**Richard D. Doctor**  
Argonne National Laboratory  
9700 South Cass Ave.  
Argonne, IL 60439  
Phone: 630/252-5913  
Fax: 630/252-5210  
E-mail: rdoctor@anl.gov

**Thomas P. Dorchak**  
Federal Energy Technology Center  
626 Cochrans Mill Road  
P.O. Box 10940, Mailstop C04  
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania 15236  
Phone: 304/285-4305 or  
304/285-4664  
E-mail: ttorch@fetc.doe.gov

**Douglas E. Fain**  
Bechtel Jacobs Company LLC  
P.O. Box 4699, MS 7271  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-7271  
Phone: 865/574-9932  
Fax: 865/576-2930  
E-mail: fainde@ornl.gov

**Robert Glass**  
Lawrence Livermore National  
Laboratory  
7000 East Ave., P.O. Box 808,  
Mail Code L-352  
Livermore, CA 94550  
Phone: 925/423-7140  
Fax: 925/422-0049  
E-mail: glass3@llnl.gov

**Amitabh Gupta**

Praxair, Inc.  
175 East Park Drive  
P.O. Box 44  
Tonawanda, NY 14150  
Phone: 716/879-2194  
Fax: 716/879-7567  
E-mail: Ami\_Gupta@praxair.com

**Mary K. Firestone**

333 Hilgard  
University of California, Berkeley  
Berkeley, CA 94720-3110  
Phone: 510/642-3677  
Fax: 510/643-5098  
E-mail: mkfstone@nature.  
berkeley.edu

**Soil/Vegetation**

**Rich Birdsey and John Hom**

U.S. Forest Service  
5 Radnor Corporate Center, Suite 200  
100 Matson Ford Road  
Radnor, PA 19087-4585  
Phone: 610/975-4092  
Fax: 610/975-4095 or 4213  
E-mail: rbirdsey/ne@fs.fed.us  
jhom/ne@fs.fed.us

**Charles N. Flagg**

Bldg. 318  
75 Rutherford  
Brookhaven National Laboratory  
Upton, NY 11973  
Phone: 516/344-3128  
Fax: 516/344-3246 (fax)  
E-mail: flagg@bnl.gov

**Marilyn A. Buford**

Quantitative Ecology Research  
National Program Leader  
Vegetation Management and  
Protection Research Staff  
USDA Forest Service  
P.O. Box 96090  
201 14th Street SW  
Washington, DC 10090-6090  
Phone: 202/205-1343  
Fax: 202/205-2497  
E-mail: mbuford/wo@fs.fed.us

**Ron Follett**

Colorado State University  
301 South Howes, #424  
Fort Collins, CO 80523  
Phone: 970/490-8220  
Fax: 970/490-8213  
E-mail: rfollett@lamar.colostate.edu

**Inez Fung**

301 McCone Hall  
University of California, Berkeley  
Berkeley, CA 94720-4767  
Phone: 510/643-9367  
Fax: 510/643-5098  
E-mail: ifung@uclink4.berkeley.edu

**Roger C. Dahlman**

Environmental Sciences Division,  
Department of Energy, SC-74  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: 301/903-4951  
Fax: 301/903-5555  
E-mail: roger.dahlman@science.doe.gov

**George R. Hendrey**

Division of Environmental Biology  
and Instrumentation  
Brookhaven National Laboratory  
Bldg. 318  
Upton, NY 11973  
Phone: 516/344-3262  
Phone: 516/344-2060  
Fax: 516/344-2060  
E-mail: hendrey@bnl.gov

**Gary K. Jacobs**

Environmental Sciences Division  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008, 1 Bethel Valley Road  
Oak Ridge, Tennessee 37831-6036  
Phone: 865/576-0567  
Fax: 865/576-7287  
E-mail: jacobsgk@ornl.gov

**Dr. F. Blaine Metting**

Pacific Northwest National Laboratory  
902 Battelle Blvd.  
P.O. Box 999 P7-54  
Richland, WA 99352  
Phone: 509/372-0317  
Fax: 509/376-9650  
E-mail: blaine.metting@pnl.gov

**Julie D. Jastrow**

Environmental Research Division  
Building 203  
9700 South Cass Avenue  
Argonne National Laboratory  
Argonne, IL 60439  
Phone: 630/252-3226  
Fax: 630/252-8895  
E-mail: jdjastrow@anl.gov

**Dale W. Johnson**

Desert Research Institute  
7010 Dandini Blvd.  
Reno, NV 89512  
Phone: 702/673-7379  
Fax: 702/673-7485  
E-mail: dwj@dri.edu

**Dr. Rattan Lal**

Ohio State University  
422B Kottman Hall  
2021 Coffey Road  
Columbus, OH 43210  
Phone: 614/292-9069  
Fax: 614/292-7432  
E-mail: Lal.1@osu.edu

**Dr. Patrick Megonigal**

Department of Biology, MS-3E1  
George Mason University  
Fairfax, VA 22030-4444  
Phone: 703/993-1045  
Fax: 703/993-1046  
E-mail: jmegonig@gmu.edu

**Walter C. Oechel**

Global Change Research Group  
Department of Biology, PS-240  
San Diego State University  
5500 Campanile Drive  
San Diego, CA 92182  
Phone: 619/594-6613  
Fax: 619/594-7831  
E-mail: oechel@sunstroke.sdsu.edu

**Keith Paustian**

Colorado State University  
B248 Natural & Environmental  
Sciences  
Fort Collins, CO 80523  
Phone: 970/491-1547  
Fax: 970/491-1965  
E-mail: keithp@nrel.colostate.edu

**Mac Post**

Environmental Sciences Division  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6335  
Phone: 865/576-3431  
Fax: 865/574-2232  
E-mail: postwmiii@ornl.gov

**Kenneth E. Skog, Project Leader**

Timber Demand and Technology  
Assessment Research  
USDA Forest Products Laboratory  
One Gifford Pinchot Dr.  
Madison, WI 53705  
Phone: 608/231-9360  
Fax: 608/231-9508  
E-mail: kskog@facstaff.wisc.edu

**Ronald M. Thom**

Battelle Marine Sciences Laboratory  
1529 West Sequim Bay Road  
Sequim, WA 98382  
Phone: 360/681-3657  
Fax: 360/681-3681  
E-mail: ron.thom@pnl.gov

**Margaret S. Torn**

Center for Isotope Geochemistry  
Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
1 Cyclotron Road, Bldg. 90, MS-1116  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: 510/528-6046  
Fax: 510/486-5686  
E-mail: mstorn@lbl.gov

**Creighton D. Wirick**

Department of Applied Science  
1 Technology Street  
Brookhaven National Laboratory  
Upton, NY 11973  
Phone: 516/344-3063  
Fax: 516/344-3246  
E-mail: wirick@bnl.gov

**Lynn L. Wright**

Ecological Sciences Section  
Environmental Sciences Division  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008, Bethel Valley Road  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6422  
Phone: 865/ 574-7378  
Fax: 865/ 576-8143  
E-mail: wrightll@ornl.gov

**Oceans**

**Anna Palmisano**

Environmental Sciences Division  
Department of Energy, SC-74  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: 301/903-9963  
Fax: 301/903-8519  
E-mail: Anna.Palmisano@science.  
doe.gov

**Howard J. Herzog**

Energy Lab, Massachusetts Institute  
of Technology  
77 Massachusetts Ave., E40-471  
Cambridge, MA 02139-4307  
Phone: 617/253-0688  
Fax: 617/253-8013  
E-mail: hjherzog@MIT.EDU

**Peter Brewer**

Senior Scientist  
Monterey Bay Aquarium Research  
Institute (MBARI)  
P.O. Box 628  
7700 Sandholt Rd.  
Moss Landing, CA 95039-0628  
Phone: 408/775-1706  
Fax: 408/775-1645  
E-mail: brpe@mbari.org

**Sallie W. Chisholm**, Professor

Dept. of Civil & Environmental  
Engineering and Biology  
Bldg. 48-427  
Massachusetts Institute  
of Technology  
15 Vassar St.  
Cambridge, MA. 02139  
Phone: 617/253-1771  
Fax: 617/258-7009  
E-mail: chisholm@mit.edu

**Taro Takahashi**

Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory  
Columbia University  
Palisades, NY 10964  
Phone: 914/365-8537  
E-mail: taka@ldeo.columbia.edu

**Jim Bishop**

Earth Sciences  
Lawrence Berkeley National Lab  
1 Cyclotron Road Mailstop 90-1106  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: 510/495-2457  
E-mail: JKBishop@lbl.gov

**Ken Caldeira**

Lawrence Livermore National  
Laboratory  
7000 East Ave., P.O. Box 808,  
Mail Code L-103  
Livermore, CA 94550  
Phone: 925/423-4191  
Fax: 925/423-6388  
E-mail: kenc@llnl.gov

**Wolfgang R. Wawersik**

Sandia National Laboratories,  
New Mexico  
P.O. Box 5800  
1515 Eubank, SE  
Albuquerque, NM 87123  
Phone: 505/845-8627  
Fax: 505/844-9449  
E-mail: WRWAWER@sandia.gov

**Geological Formations**

**Nicholas B. Woodward**

Engineering and Geosciences Division  
Department of Energy, SC-15  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: 301/903-4061  
Fax:  
E-mail:

Nick.Woodward@science.doe.gov

**Sally Benson**

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
1 Cyclotron Road  
Mail Stop 90-1110  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: 510/486-5875  
Fax: 510/486-7714  
E-mail: SMBenson@lbl.gov

**Robert E. Smith**

Environmental Protection Agency  
Headquarters  
401 M Street, S.W.  
Washington, DC 20460  
Phone: 202-260-5559  
E-mail: smith.robert-eu@epa.gov

**Robert Burrus**

U.S. Geological Survey  
National Center, Room 4C302  
12201 Sunrise Valley Drive, MS 956  
Reston, VA 20192  
Phone: 703/648-6144  
Fax: 703/648-6419  
E-mail to: burruss@usgs.gov

**Akhil Datta-Gupta**

Department of Petroleum Engineering  
Texas A&M University  
College Station, TX 77843-3116  
Phone: 409/845-2241  
Fax:  
E-mail: datta-gupta@spindletop.  
tamu.edu

**Kevin Knauss**

Lawrence Livermore National  
Laboratory  
7000 East Ave., P.O. Box 808,  
Mail Code L-202  
Livermore, CA 94550  
Phone: 925/422-1372  
Fax: 925/422-0208  
E-mail: knauss1@llnl.gov

**Fred Stalkup**

Atlantic Richfield Corporation  
E-mail: fstalkup@ARCO.com

**Charles Byrer**

U.S. Department of Energy  
Federal Energy Technology Center  
P.O. Box 880  
3610 Collins Ferry Rd.  
Morgantown, WV 26507-0880  
Phone: 304/285-4547  
E-mail: cbyrer@fetc.doe.gov

**Laura Pyrak-Nolte**

Department of Physics  
Purdue University  
1396 Physics Building  
West Lafayette, IN 47907-1396  
Phone: 765/494-3027  
Fax: 765/494-0706  
E-mail: pyrak@physics.purdue.edu

**Paul Witherspoon**

Earth Sciences

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
1 Cyclotron Road, Mailstop 90-1116  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: 510/486-5082 or  
510/642-5390  
Fax: 510/527-1336  
E-mail: PAWitherspoon@lbl.gov

**Thomas W. Jeffries**, Director

Institute for Microbial and Biochemical  
Technology  
Forest Products Laboratory  
One Gifford Pinchot Drive  
Madison, WI 53706  
Phone: 608/231-9453  
Fax: 608/231-9262  
E-mail: twjeffri@facstaff.wisc.edu

**Karsten Pruess**

Earth Sciences

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
1 Cyclotron Road, Mailstop 90-1116  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: 510/486-6732 or  
510/486-6696  
Fax: 510/486-5686  
E-mail: K-Pruess@lbl.gov

**Al Lucier**

National Council for Air and Stream  
Improvement  
P.O. Box 13318  
79 T. W. Alexander Dr.  
Bldg. 4401, Suite 205  
Research Triangle Park,  
NC 27709-3318  
Phone: 919/558-1993  
Fax: 919/558-1998  
E-mail: ALucier@NCASI.org

**Michael York**

Department of Energy, FE-33  
1000 Independence Ave., S.W.  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: 202/586-5669  
Fax: 202/586-4341  
E-mail: Michael.York@hq.doe.gov

**Norm G. Lewis**

Institute of Biological Chemistry  
Washington State University  
P.O. Box 646340  
Pullman, WA 99163-6340  
Phone: 509/335-2682  
Fax: 509/335-7643  
E-mail: lewisn@wsu.edu

**Advanced Biological**

**Jennie C. Hunter-Cevera**

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
1 Cyclotron Road  
Mail Stop 70A-3317  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: 510/486-7359  
Fax: 510/486-7152  
E-mail: JCHunter-Cevera@lbl.gov

**Rolf Mehlhorn**

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
1 Cyclotron Road  
Mail Stop: 70-108B  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: 510/486-5068  
Fax: 510/486-7303  
E-mail: RJMehlhorn@lbl.gov

**David E. Reichle, Associate Director**

Life Sciences and Environmental  
Technologies  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6253  
Phone: 423/574-4333  
Fax: 423/574-9869  
E-mail: der@ornl.gov or  
reichlede@ornl.gov

**Rick Ornstein**

Battelle  
Pacific Northwest National Laboratory  
902 Battelle Blvd.  
P.O. Box 999  
Richland, WA 99352  
Phone: 509/375-2132  
Fax: 509/375-6904  
E-mail: rick.ornstein@pnl.gov

**Tony Palumbo**

Environmental Sciences Division  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-8646  
Phone: 865/574-8002  
Fax: 865/576-8646  
E-mail: palumboav@ornl.gov

**Sharon Shoemaker**

250 Cruess Hall  
University of California, Davis  
One Shields Ave.  
Davis, CA 95616  
Phone: 530/752-2922  
Fax: 530/752-6578  
E-mail: spshoemaker@ucdavis.edu

**Steven R. Thomas**

National Renewable Energy Laboratory  
1617 Cole Blvd.  
Golden, CO 80401  
Phone: 303/275-3858  
Fax: 303/275-3799  
E-mail: steven\_thomas@nrel.gov

**Bob Uffen**

SciCentral.com  
1125 North Utah Street  
Arlington, VA 22201  
Phone: 703/528-8961  
E-mail: uffenpir@erols.com or  
princ@aol.com

**Rodney DeGroot**

Forest Products Laboratory  
One Gifford Pinchot Dr.  
Madison, Wisconsin 53705-2398  
Phone: 608/231-9461  
Fax: 608/231 9592  
E-mail: DeGroot\_Rodney\_C/fpl@fs.fed.us

**John Zerbe**

Forest Products Laboratory  
One Gifford Pinchot Dr.  
Madison, Wisconsin 53705-2398  
Phone: 608/ 231-9353  
Fax: 608/231-9508  
E-mail: Zerbe\_John\_I/fpl@fs.fed.us

**Robert J. Fellows**

Pacific Northwest National Lab  
902 Battelle Blvd.  
P.O. Box 999 / MS K2-21  
Richland, WA 99352  
Phone: 509/375-2247  
Fax: 509/375-6666  
E-mail: robert.fellows@pnl.gov

**Rodney Croteau**

Washington State University  
Clark 291  
P.O. Box 646340  
Pullman, WA 99164-6340  
Phone: 509-335-1790  
E-mail: croteau@mail.wsu.edu

**Advanced Chemical**

**James Ekmann**

Deputy Associate Director  
Office of Systems and Environmental  
Analysis  
Federal Energy Technology Center  
P.O. Box 10940, MS 922-178C  
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania 15236  
Phone: 412/386-5716  
Fax: 412/386-6290  
E-mail: ekmann@fetc.doe.gov

**Alan M. Wolsky**

Energy Systems Division  
Argonne National Laboratory  
9700 South Cass Ave, ES/362  
Argonne, IL 60439-4815  
Phone: 630/252-3783  
E-mail: awolsky@anl.gov

**Shih-Ger Chang**

Environmental Energy Tech  
Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
1 Cyclotron Road, Mailstop 70-108B  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: 510/486-5125  
Fax: 510/486-5401  
E-mail: SGChang@lbl.gov

**Klaus Lackner**

ALDSSR, MS B260  
Los Alamos National Laboratory  
Los Alamos, NM 87545  
Phone: 505/667-5694  
Fax: 505/665-4361  
E-mail: ksl@lanl.gov

**John F. Clarke**

Battelle Washington Operations  
9001 D Street, SW, Suite 900  
Washington, DC 20024-2115  
Phone: 202/646-5280  
Fax: 202/646-7824  
E-mail: J.F.Clarke@pnl.gov

**Kim Magrini**

National Renewable Energy Laboratory  
1617 Cole Blvd., Mail Stop 1613  
Golden, CO 80401  
Phone: 303/275-3706  
Fax: 303/275-2905  
E-mail: kim\_magrini@nrel.gov

**Robert H. Socolow**

Energy and Environmental Studies  
H104 Engr Quad  
Princeton University  
Princeton, NJ 08544  
Phone: 609-258-5446  
Fax: 609-258-3661  
Email: socolow@princeton.edu

**Marvin Poutsma**, Director

Chemical and Analytical Sciences  
Division  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6129  
Phone: 865/574-5028  
Fax: 865/574-4902  
E-mail: poutsmaml@ornl.gov

**Joan Ogden**

H113 Engrg Quad  
Energy and Environmental Studies  
Princeton University  
Princeton, NJ 08544  
Phone: 609/258-5470  
Fax: 609/258-3661  
E-mail: ogden@princeton.edu

**Cross-Cut/Integration**

**John C. Houghton**

Environmental Sciences Division  
Department of Energy, SC-74  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: 301/903-8288  
Fax: 301/903-8519  
E-mail:

John.Houghton@science.doe.gov

**Terry Surles**

Lawrence Livermore National  
Laboratory  
7000 East Ave., P.O. Box 808, Mail  
Code L-640  
Livermore, CA 94550  
Phone: 925/423-1415  
Fax: 925/423-2395  
E-mail: surles1@llnl.gov

**Robert L. Kane**

Office of Planning/Environment  
Analysis  
Department of Energy, FE-26  
Department of Energy, Headquarters  
1000 Independence Ave., S.W.  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: 202/586-4753  
Fax: 202/586-1188  
E-mail: Robert.Kane@hq.doe.gov

**Marylynn Placet**

Battelle Washington Operations  
Pacific Northwest National Laboratory  
901 D Street, Suite 900  
Washington, DC 20024-2115  
Phone: 202/646-5249  
Fax: 202/646-7825  
E-mail: m.placet@pnl.gov

**R. G. (Gil) Gilliland**, Associate Director  
Energy and Engineering Sciences  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6248  
Phone: 865/574-9920  
Fax: 865/576-6118  
E-mail: ig7@ornl.gov or  
gillilandrg@ornl.gov

**David E. Reichle**, Associate Director  
Life Sciences and Environmental  
Technologies  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6253  
Phone: 865/574-4333  
Fax: 865/574-9869  
E-mail: der@ornl.gov or  
reichlede@ornl.gov

#### **DOE Headquarters**

**Martha Krebs**, Director  
Office of Science  
Department of Energy, SC-1  
1000 Independence Ave., S.W.  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: 202/586-5430  
Fax: 202/586-4120  
E-mail: Martha.Krebs@science.doe.gov

**Robert Kripowicz**  
Assistant Secretary for Fossil Energy  
Department of Energy, FE-1  
1000 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: 202/586-4695  
Fax:  
E-mail: Robert.Kripowicz@hq.doe.gov

**Michael L. Knotek**  
Office of the Secretary of Energy  
Department of Energy, S  
1000 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: 202/586-3500  
Fax: 202/586-7210  
E-mail: Michael.Knotek@hq.doe.gov

**Ari Patrinos**, Associate Director  
Office of Biological and Environmental  
Research  
Department of Energy, SC-70  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: 310/903-3251  
Fax: 301/903-5051  
E-mail: Ari.Patrinos@science.doe.gov

**Jerry Elwood**, Acting Director  
Environmental Sciences Division  
Department of Energy, SC-74  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: 301/903-3281  
Fax: 301/903-8519  
E-mail: Jerry.Elwood@science.doe.gov

**Dr. Ehsan U. Khan**  
Office of Planning and Analysis  
Office of Energy Research  
Department of Energy, SC-5  
1000 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: 202/586-4785  
Fax: 202/586-7719  
E-mail: Ehsan.Khan@oer.doe.gov

**Jeffrey S. Summers**  
Office of Fossil Energy  
Department of Energy, FE-23  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: 301/903-4412  
Fax:  
E-Mail: jeff.summers@hq.doe.gov

**Lawrence D. (Douglas) Carter**  
Office of Fossil Energy  
Department of Energy, FE-26  
1000 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: 202/586-9683  
Fax: 202/586-9684  
E-Mail: Douglas.Carter@hq.doe.gov

**Frank M. Ferrell Jr.**  
Office of Fossil Energy  
Department of Energy, FE-23  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: 301/903-3768  
Fax:  
E-mail: Frank.Ferrell@hq.doe.gov

**Mindi Farber**  
Energetics, Inc.  
501 School St SW # 500  
Washington, DC 20024-2754  
Phone: 202/479-2748, ext. 107  
Fax: 202/479-0229  
E-mail: mfarber@energeticsinc.com

**Support**

**Brenda W. Campbell**  
Life Sciences and Environmental  
Technologies  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6253  
Phone: 865/574-4333  
Fax: 865/574-9869  
E-mail: campbellbw@ornl.gov

**Publication Team**

Computing, Information, and  
Networking Division  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory

**Deborah M. Counce**  
E-mail: councedm@ornl.gov

Sandi Lyttle

Vicki Beets

Jamie Payne

Rosemary Adams

Erica Atkin

Judy Benton

Judy Campbell

Jane Parrot

Mary Tinnel

Angela Wampler

**Carolyn H. Krause**  
Public Affairs  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6144  
Phone: 865/574-7183  
Fax: 865/574-1001  
E-mail: krausech@ornl.gov

**Rich Scheer**  
Energetics, Inc.  
501 School St SW # 500  
Washington, DC 20024-2754  
Phone: 202/479-2748, ext. 105  
Fax: 202/479-0229  
E-mail: rscheer@energeticsinc.com

## **Appendix B**

### **DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS OF ECOSYSTEMS AND RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT NEEDS**



## Appendix B

### DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS OF ECOSYSTEMS AND RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT NEEDS

#### 1. **Forests** (Rich Birdsey, Mac Post, Marilyn Buford, Ken Skog)

Long-term baseline estimates show that increases in biomass and organic matter on U.S. forest lands from 1952–1992 added 281 MMTC/year of carbon to forest ecosystems (25% of U.S. emissions for the period). Projections suggest continuing increases averaging 177 MMTC through 2040. For the period 1990–92 approximately 250 MMTC/year were sequestered in standing trees (~50%), and forest floor/coarse woody debris/ soils (~50%). The gain in forests is net of wood removed for products, and net of mortality from all causes including fire, pests, and disease. Carbon in wood used for products in 1990 was added to the pool of carbon in products in use, and products in landfills—for an additional net increase of carbon in products of about 60 MMTC/year.

Research on basic processes, measurement and monitoring, implementation methods and risk assessment in the forestry sector can provide cost-effective, environmentally sound methods in which to sequester more carbon. But, evaluation of the most effective forestry sector methods requires life cycle analyses that compare tradeoffs among alternate ways to use land area (forest and nonforest) for products for sequestration, and among alternate products (forest- and nonforest-based) to satisfy end use-needs. With that caveat, it is clear that research in a number of areas can improve forest sector contributions to sequestration. Areas where research is needed to improve cost effectiveness and environmental effects knowledge include: afforestation of marginal cropland; reducing deforestation; reforestation and improved forest management for sequestration; substituting wood products for more energy intensive products; reducing energy use in timber growing, harvesting, product production, and in end use; reducing wildfires; use of biomass fuel in place of fossil fuel with regrowth of biomass; increasing the amount of carbon in durable wood products and uses; increasing paper and wood recycling; planting trees in urban and suburban areas; enhancing soil carbon through species selection and management practices, including understory and ground cover management.

#### **Current capabilities**

Research is conducted in a broad range of forest sector disciplines that contribute to an understanding of, and means to alter, carbon accumulation in forests and forest products. These include soil science, tree physiology, tree genetics, ecological systems, forest pathology, forest entomology, forest mycology, fire science, forest mensuration, silviculture, forest management, forest economics, forest operations, wood products technology, and pulp and paper science.

#### **Future needs**

Research needs to be focused on (1) understanding basic biological, industrial, and socioeconomic processes that can increase sequestration in the forestry

sector, (2) measurement, monitoring, and modeling of ecosystem function and the forestry economic sector to evaluate the effectiveness of means to alter sequestration, (3) evaluation of alternative combinations of alterations to the forestry sector to increase sequestration and compare them to other uses of land and use of nonwood products for end-use needs (life cycle assessment), and (4) evaluation of risks of unwanted changes to ecosystem functions.

### **Strategies and objectives**

Afforestation of marginal cropland and pasture. Substantial gains in carbon storage in biomass and soils on afforested lands are possible. This technology is limited primarily by the availability of suitable land (for ecological or economic reasons), nursery capacity, willingness of landowners to participate, and availability of technical assistance. Size of program and cost estimates vary widely because of differences in how and where proposed programs would be implemented and because of differences in carbon accounting. If the new forest land is managed for wood products, then the disposition of carbon in wood products, byproducts, and disposal must also be considered.

Improved forest management. There are opportunities to improve carbon storage by changing silvicultural practices on certain sites and forest conditions. The magnitude of increased carbon storage may be difficult to quantify since silvicultural practices are usually developed and applied for another purpose, such as increasing timber growth, and will not necessarily increase biomass growth and soil carbon storage. Nevertheless, some forest stands may not be growing at biologically potential rates because of suboptimal stocking levels. These stands offer the best opportunities for enhanced carbon storage. Also, silvicultural practices may be designed to maximize the amount of carbon eventually stored in harvested wood products.

Reduce conversion of forest land to nonforest use (reduce deforestation).

Conversion of forest land to nonforest use usually means permanent loss of all or a substantial part of live biomass and reduction of organic matter in soils and the forest floor. CO<sub>2</sub> and other greenhouse gases are emitted when the removed biomass and organic matter is burned or decomposes. Some carbon may be sequestered in wood products if the removed biomass is utilized. Protecting and conserving forests should maintain or increase carbon pools in the short term, as long as natural disturbance rates do not reach catastrophic levels.

Increase sequestration of carbon in wood and paper products. Wood harvested from forests remains sequestered and is emitted to varying degrees depending on how products are made, used, and disposed of. Sequestration in products and uses can be increased by altered processing methods, shifts in products used, shifts in end-use durability, and shifts in landfill management. Sequestration in forests and products can be increased by coordinated understanding of forest ecosystems and products utilization.

### **Objectives**

#### **Above-ground**

- Increase and maintain area of forest cover.
- Maximize biomass accumulation.

- Maximize average standing stock of biomass.
- Increase carbon retention in wood products and landfills.

### **Objectives**

#### **Below-ground**

- Increase and maintain area of forest cover.
- Increase soil organic matter on depleted soils.
- Minimize soil and litter disturbance during forest operations.
- Employ management techniques that increase soil organic matter in existing forest.

### **Research and development needs understanding**

#### **Above-ground**

- Develop genetically improved plantation species to maximize growth and wood density.
- Develop silvicultural practices (e.g., stocking control, understory management, and prescribed burning) that maximize biomass accumulation.
- Enhance wood and paper products characteristics that increase sequestration (e.g., durability, lignin, recyclability).
- Improve understanding of the interactions between natural disturbances (weather, fire, pests), management practices, and forest protection, with regard to impacts on long-term carbon storage.
- Determine socioeconomic causes (e.g., social institutions) of deforestation.

#### **Below-ground**

- Develop silvicultural practices and/or selections of species or genotypes that result in a higher humification efficiency (i.e., increase the fraction of dead organic matter that is converted into stable soil humus during decomposition). Much of the litter applied to the surface, including most wood, never enters the soil as humus. Material that enters via the soil has a higher humification efficiency. Material that has a higher lignin content has a higher humification efficiency. Research is needed to assess species or management that affects allocation and tissue composition on soil carbon accumulation.
- Litter and soil decomposition is affected by a number of physical, chemical, and biological factors. Physical factors amenable to management include soil temperature and moisture. Chemical factors include nutrient content and pH. Biological factors include microorganisms, micro- and macro-invertebrates. Research to determine manipulations of these factors to decrease decomposition rates without drastically affecting tree growth is required. Research to create deeper rooting zones would also be important.

### **Measurement**

#### **Above-ground**

- For major ecoregions, quantify the potential biomass gains from converting agricultural use to forest using different stand establishment techniques and species (comparative cross-sectional studies; existing long-term research sites).
- Identify existing forest conditions that result in suboptimal biomass accumulation.

- Compare carbon mitigation of burning wood, recycling wood/paper, shifting to longer-lived uses, landfilling (with limited decay).
- For monitoring and verification of changes in above-ground carbon storage, improve and integrate use of data from forest inventory, remote sensing, and Ameriflux collection methods.

#### **Below-ground**

- For major ecoregions, quantify the potential soil carbon (including organic layers) gains from converting agricultural use to forest using different stand establishment techniques and species (comparative cross-sectional studies; existing long-term research sites).
- For monitoring and verification of changes in below-ground carbon storage, improve national forest inventory collection of periodic data on soil organic matter, litter, and coarse woody debris.

#### **Implementation**

##### **Above-ground**

- Develop and use national models to identify high sequestration combinations of genetically improved species, forest management intensities, products utilization, and landfill management.
- Perform life cycle analyses for major tree species, silvicultural systems, and wood products. Note that this involves analysis of energy inputs throughout the life cycle.

##### **Below-ground**

- Develop methods to improve the efficiency of the humification process for logging residue.

#### **Assessment**

- Evaluate the impact of changes in forest growth/sequestration on essential ecosystem functions.
- Evaluate the risk that disturbances to forests (e.g., fire, pests) and climate change induced changes in productivity or species viability may thwart various activities to increase sequestration.

#### **General**

- Develop interagency coordination of research and interagency coordination of strategies to increase sequestration.

#### **Links to other ecosystems**

- Use comparative studies to evaluate carbon tradeoffs from converting agricultural use to forest use.
- Understand the socioeconomic tradeoffs of converting agricultural use to forest use.
- Determine the impacts of deforestation to agricultural or developed use on major forest ecosystem carbon pools.

## 2. Agricultural and Grassland Ecosystems (Keith Paustian, Julie Jastrow, Margaret Torn, Ron Follett, Mary Firestone)

The carbon sequestration potential in agricultural and grassland ecosystems is primarily centered in the soil. Standing stocks of above-ground biomass are modest (typically < 10 Mg C/ha) compared to forests and, in the case of annual crop systems, may be entirely absent for part of the year. In contrast, grassland and agricultural soils may contain several hundred mg/ha of carbon, comparable to amounts above-ground in densely forested communities.

The high levels of carbon achievable in grassland and agricultural soils are the result of the accumulation of plant and microbial-derived residues which become increasingly recalcitrant through recurring cycles of decomposition by soil organisms. In addition, association of organic matter with soil minerals, through binding to colloidal surfaces and occlusion within soil aggregate structures, reduces their accessibility to microbial decay, enhancing organic matter accumulation.

Soil carbon levels are determined by the balance of carbon additions from roots and above-ground litter and the decomposition rates of the organic matter present in soils. Hence, carbon sequestration (i.e., increasing standing stocks of carbon) can be promoted by increasing carbon input rates, decreasing decomposition rates, or both. Carbon input rates are a function of the net productivity of plants, the allocation of that productivity between removals (i.e., harvest, fire) and residues returned to soil, and organic matter imports (e.g., manure, sludge). Soil organic matter decomposition rates depend on the composition and activity of soil organisms, which are influenced by their abiotic environment (temperature, moisture, aeration, mineral nutrients, pH), the physiochemical quality of the organic substrates (its chemical composition, particle size) and the accessibility of these substrates to soil organisms (influenced by soil texture and soil structure relationships). Ecosystem management to increase carbon stocks will be based on the manipulation of these controls on inputs and decomposition rates.

### **Current carbon sequestration capabilities of grassland and agricultural ecosystems**

Cropland currently occupies about 150 Mha of land area in the U.S. (contiguous 48 states) with an additional 14 Mha of formerly cultivated lands in grassland and forest set-asides (mainly Conservation Reserve Program Lands). Agricultural and set-aside lands represent about 20% of total land area of the U.S. Soil carbon stocks (0–1 m) under cropland are on the order of 15–20 Pg (based on extrapolations from surface soil estimates (0–30 cm) by Kern and Johnson 1993), compared to the 60–80 Pg total for all ecosystems in the contiguous U.S. (Kern 1994, Waltman and Bliss 1997). Historically, these lands have suffered a net loss of carbon, on the order of 5–6 Pg, following conversion of the native ecosystems to cropland. More recently, increased productivity and improved management practices have probably reversed this trend such that overall carbon levels have now stabilized or begun to increase (Cole et al. 1993, Lal et al. 1998). Existing management practices which are responsible for improving carbon levels include reduced tillage intensity, productivity increases through genetic improvements

and increased management inputs (fertilizer, pesticides, irrigation); intensified crop rotations (e.g., reduced summer-fallow); and set asides of marginal cropland to perennial vegetation, mainly grasses (Paushtian et al. 1997). Recent estimates of the potential for carbon sequestration in U.S. agricultural soils, using existing technologies, are on the order of 50–200 Tg/year over the next 2–3 decades (Bruce et al. 1998, Lal et al. 1998). The range of these estimates reflects both uncertainties in carbon accumulation rates for different practices and soil/climate conditions and uncertainty in the projected rates and extent of adoption of carbon conservation practices.

Grasslands include both extensively managed native rangelands as well as intensively managed pastures. In the lower 48 states, there are about 160 Mha of nonfederal rangelands and 50 Mha of pastures (1992 National Resource Inventory). Conventional management factors that can impact soil carbon levels on grasslands include grazing management, burning, species selection, and production inputs (i.e., fertilizer, irrigation). Intensively-managed grasslands (i.e., pastures), where productivity and management inputs are relatively high, probably have the greatest opportunities for increasing soil carbon through improved practices such as rotational grazing and application of fertilizers (Nyborg et al. 1997). On rangelands, traditional management is largely restricted to manipulating grazing intensity, which has variable impacts on soil carbon. In general, where vegetation cover and production of rangelands are not adversely affected by grazing, there is little change in SOM (Burke et al. 1997, Milchunas and Lauenroth 1993). Compared to agricultural lands, there is less field data upon which to base estimates of current carbon sequestration potential in grasslands. Bruce et al. (1998) estimated potential rates of sequestration for U.S. pastureland at 10 Tg/year. The greatest opportunities for carbon sequestration in rangelands involves rehabilitation of degraded areas. Unfortunately there is no existing national data base from which to estimate rangeland conditions and the potential for improvement of degraded rangelands. Widespread but slow rates of carbon sequestration may be occurring in many grasslands due to CO<sub>2</sub> fertilization and increased anthropogenic nitrogen deposition, but reliable estimates are currently lacking.

### **Strategies and objectives for carbon sequestration in grassland and agricultural ecosystems**

Strategies for increasing carbon stocks in these soils revolve around maximizing the amount of carbon that can be delivered to the soil and subsequently maximizing its residence time in the soil (by reducing rates of decomposition). Ultimately nearly all carbon that enters the soil is recycled back to the atmosphere, but the amount of carbon in the soil will increase in direct proportion to its mean residence time. Since croplands and grasslands represent the primary food production systems for society, it's important that carbon sequestration strategies be compatible with the maintenance of food and feedstock supplies. Fortunately, many measures to increase primary productivity also increase plant residue production, and increasing soil carbon levels are generally beneficial for maintaining highly productive systems. However, tradeoffs do exist. For example, increasing the yield component of crop plants without increasing total net productivity will come at the cost of reducing carbon inputs to soil, and

retirement of cropland to perennial grassland (or trees) may yield higher carbon sequestration rates but with a loss of food production capacity.

A variety of strategies can be conceived to increase net primary productivity and carbon inputs to soil, through increased photosynthetic efficiency, increased nutrient and water use efficiency, and shifts in allocation of photosynthate to the below-ground component. For extensively managed grasslands (rangelands), strategies to increase carbon inputs would be based largely on restoring degraded, poorly managed areas through control of invasive species, elimination of severe overgrazing, and active restoration on severely degraded rangelands. In pastures and croplands, a wider variety of more management-intensive strategies exist, including improved grazing management (e.g., rotational grazing); fertility management; pest control; species selection; and genetic improvements, including plant bioengineering.

On the decomposition side, strategies include manipulating the abiotic environment in favor of plant growth vs microbial (decomposer) activity, while still maintaining the function of the soil microbial community. For example, increasing water use efficiency of plant production (e.g., reduced summer-fallow, higher plant density, more efficient plant water extraction), reduces “excess” water, producing drier soils and reduced microbial activity. Many grass and crop species have lower temperature optima than the majority of microflora. Thus somewhat cooler temperatures (e.g., with use of surface mulches) may reduce decomposition rates while optimizing plant carbon inputs. Soil organic matter typically shows a substantial increase in age with depth (e.g., Paul et al. 1997) due, in part, to lower rates of decay at depth, from lower temperatures, reduced aeration and other factors. Thus, developing and/or using deeper rooting plants can place more carbon in locations where its residence time is increased. The susceptibility of plant residues to decay is influenced by their chemical composition, so that increasing the amounts of recalcitrant substances (e.g., lignin, polyphenols) in residues could enhance carbon storage. Decomposition rates in soils are inhibited by the close association of organic substances with mineral colloids (clays, oxides) and the occlusion of organic matter within soil aggregates. Tillage tends to reduce aggregate stability; thus reducing or eliminating tillage can help maintain the physical protection capacity of soils. Development of reduced and/or zero-tillage systems for a wider variety of crops and environments is an important strategy. Increased use of perennial grasses and legumes, alone or in rotation with annual crops, is effective in building soil carbon stocks. Other opportunities might include the use of artificial colloidal amendments to sorb and “protect” organic matter in soils. Finally, direct manipulation of microbial communities through bioengineering could conceivably be used to reduce decomposition rates, although the unlikelihood of success (i.e., a reduced ability to metabolize organic matter would make for poorly competitive organisms) and the potential for undesirable side effects (i.e., disruption of the biogeochemical cycling function of soils) argue against the desirability of such strategies.

Strategies to sequester carbon in agricultural and grassland ecosystems also need to factor in the carbon cost in terms of fossil fuel subsidies (e.g., fertilizer and herbicide production, farm machine use, irrigation pumping) for various

production practices, as well as the potential effects on other soil-emitted greenhouse gases, chiefly  $N_2O$  and  $CH_4$ . Previously described strategies directed at increasing primary production efficiency (i.e., increased nutrient and water use efficiency), increased use of nitrogen fixation by legumes in crop rotations (to replace fertilizer nitrogen), increase dependence on mycorrhizae and adoption of zero-tillage systems (Frye 1984) would reduce fossil carbon requirements.

Agricultural ecosystems are usually net sources of  $N_2O$ , particularly from soils with high amounts of inorganic nitrogen. In addition, methane is generated by ruminant livestock and also by waterlogged soils, notably rice paddies. While  $CO_2$  is much more abundant in the atmosphere,  $N_2O$  and  $CH_4$  are, molecule for molecule, more potent greenhouse gases relative to  $CO_2$ . The impact of carbon-sequestering practices on the potential emissions of these other gases, therefore, cannot be ignored. Although the secondary effects of carbon-conserving practices are often difficult to quantify, any proposed practice should be carefully assessed to ensure that the benefits in carbon stored are not seriously reduced by the emission of other gases.

### **Research and development needs**

Research is needed to promote a better understanding of key soil processes, in order to assess how and to what degree they can be manipulated to promote carbon sequestration. In addition, there are major R&D needs that relate to the estimation and quantification of current and future carbon stocks as a function of environmental and management factors. These later needs cut across all the major ecosystem types.

For specific R&D priorities related to understanding controls on primary productivity and plant allocation, we refer to the section under **Biomass Croplands**. R&D priorities related to soil processes and controls and inventories of current and future carbon stocks are outlined below:

#### **Research needs for fundamental understanding of soil processes and controls**

- A. Increase depth of soil carbon
  - 1) Species-soil-climate interactions controlling root depth distribution
  - 2) Controls on decomposition at depth
  - 3) Deep movement of organic and inorganic carbon
  - 4) Effect of tillage systems on rooting depth
- B. Increase root mass
  - 1) Controls on above-ground to below-ground carbon allocation for different plants
  - 2) Species selections that dramatically increase root mass
  - 3) Nutrient controls and feedback on productivity
  - 4) Adaptations to  $CO_2$  increases, temperature increases, and pH tolerance
- C. Transform Labile carbon to Recalcitrant carbon
  - 1) Isolation and characterization of recalcitrant organic matter
  - 2) Controls on formation of recalcitrant SOM
  - 3) Role of soil structure in SOM physical protection
  - 4) Role of soil minerals and cations on chemical protection of SOM
  - 5) Effect of litter quality on decomposition rate

- 6) Effect of rhizodeposition and exudation on decomposition rate
- 7) Effects of microbial community structure on SOM cycling and stabilization
- D. Create less favorable abiotic environment
  - 1) Soil moisture-microbial community interactions affecting decomposition
  - 2) Community and biome variability in thermal responses of microorganisms
  - 3) Effect of nitrogen addition (as fertilizer, deposition, biological nitrogen-fixation) on decomposition

**Research needs for improving inventories of carbon stocks in agricultural and grassland ecosystems**

- A. Dynamic inventories of land cover and land management system distributions
  - 1) Development of coverages with improved spatial resolution to differentiate fragmented land covers
  - 2) Improved differentiation of crop and grassland species assemblages
  - 3) Remote sensing techniques to resolve different management regimes within landcover/vegetation types (e.g., tillage management, cover crops, grazing intensity)
- B. Survey data
  - 1) Global metadata compilation of national land use/management information
  - 2) Standardization and/or cross comparison of survey/inventory approaches and definitions
  - 3) Synthesis (within United States) and cross validation of national level survey data (e.g., USDA/NRI, FS, BLM, USDA/ERS)
- C. Information on distribution and characteristics of soils
  - 1) More information on soil carbon concentrations at depth
  - 2) Synthesis and integration of data from distributed pedon data holders (e.g., universities, state agencies)
  - 3) Standardization (international) of attributes (e.g., carbon analytical methods, bulk density, texture, drainage, and depth) and techniques needed to estimate soil and litter carbon stocks and soil bulk density (e.g., as part of USDA/NRCS and ISRIC collaboration).
  - 4) In situ, nondestructive determinations of soil carbon

**Needs for quantification and prediction of carbon sequestration**

- A. Development of modeling approaches
  - 1) Testing and refinement of models for less studied systems; for example, flooded and poorly drained soils, highly weathered soils (e.g., Ultisols, Oxisols), volcanic-derived soils
  - 2) Representation (in simulation models) of SOM fractions that are analytically determined, concomitant with experimental science to improve functionally meaningful characterization of SOM
- B. Enhancement of SOM monitoring networks
  - 1) In field relocateable, resampling points designed to minimize spatial variability, tied into existing monitoring systems (e.g., NRI). Measure change under a variety of cropping/grassland systems (steady-state/aggrading/degrading) in a variety of climates and soil types

- 2) Increased deployment of ecosystem CO<sub>2</sub> flux systems, coordinated so as to leverage information from existing long-term experimental sites (e.g., establish new flux measurements for soil, crop and management variables where long-term experimental records exist) and intensified soils research at existing CO<sub>2</sub> flux tower facilities
- C. Coordinate and synthesize spatially referenced data coverage for important model driving variables.

## References

Bruce, J. P., M. Frome, E. Haites, H. H. Janzen, R. Lal, and K. Paustian. 1998. Carbon Sequestration in Soil. Soil Water Conservations Society White Paper, 23 p.

Burke, I. C., W. K. Lauenroth, and D. G. Milchunas. 1997. Biogeochemistry of managed grasslands in central North America. In: E. A. Paul, K. Paustian, E. T. Elliott, and C. V. Cole (eds). *Soil Organic Matter in Temperate Agroecosystems: Long-term Experiments in North America*. pp. 85–102, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, USA.

Cole, C. V., K. Paustian, E. T. Elliott, A. K. Metherell, D. S. Ojima, and W. H. Parton. 1993. Analysis of agroecosystem carbon pools. *Water, Air and Soil Pollution*, 70:357–371.

Frye, W. W. 1984. Energy requirement in no-tillage. In: Phillips, R. E. and Phillips, S. H. (eds.). *No Tillage Agricultural Principles and Practices*. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, pp. 127–151.

Kern, J. S. 1994. Spatial patterns of soil organic carbon in the contiguous United States. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* 58: 439–455.

Kern, J. S. and M. G. Johnson (1993). Conservation tillage impacts on national soil and atmospheric carbon levels. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* 57: 200–210.

Lal, R., J. M. Kimble, R. F. Follett, and C. V. Cole. 1998. *The Potential of U.S. Cropland to Sequester Carbon and Mitigate the Greenhouse Effect*. Ann Arbor Press, Chelsea, MI, 128 p.

Milchunas, D. G. and W. K. Lauenroth. 1993. Quantitative effects of grazing on vegetation and soils over a global range of environments. *Ecol. Monog.* 63:327–366.

Nyborg, M., M. Molina-Ayala, E. D. Solberg, R. C. Izaurrealde, S. S. Malhi, and H. H. Janzen. 1997. Carbon storage in grassland soils as related to N and S fertilizer. pp. 421–432 In: Lal, R., J. Kimble, R. Follett, and B. A. Stewart (eds). *Management of Carbon Sequestration in Soil*. CRC Press, Boca Raton.

Paustian, K., H. P. Collins, and E. A. Paul. 1997. Management controls on soil carbon. In: E. A. Paul, K. Paustian, E. T. Elliott, and C.V. Cole (eds). *Soil Organic Matter in Temperate Agroecosystems: Long-term Experiments in North America*. pp. 15–49, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, USA.

Paul, E. A., R. F. Follett, S. W. Leavitt, A. D. Halvorson, G. A. Peterson, and D. J. Lyon. 1997. Radiocarbon dating for determination of soil organic matter pool sizes and dynamics. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* 61:1058–1067.

Waltman, S.W. and N.B. Bliss. 1997. Estimates of SOC content for the U.S. USDA/NRCS, Lincoln, NE.

### 3. Biomass Crop Lands (Lynn Wright, Sandy McLaughlin, Jerry Tuskan, Don Reimensneider, and Carl Trettin)

Biomass production and harvesting systems are being developed to optimize above-ground plant productivity per unit area in a way that conserves and improves soil resources, maintains or improves water quality and wildlife habitat, provides profit potential to the landowner, and supplies low-cost, uniform feedstocks to energy providers as a means of displacing fossil fuel. The crops under development for this land use are primarily perennial crops, including several grass and tree species worldwide. These crops are grown using agronomic techniques such as cultivation or herbicide use for site preparation, fertilization, pest and disease control for crop maintenance, and periodic removal of the above-ground portion of the crop. The grass species are harvested annually or more frequently while the tree crops have 3-10 year harvest intervals. It is generally assumed that the trees or grasses will be grown in relatively large blocks for ease of harvest, handling, and utilization. Alternative methods of biomass production include mixing annual and perennial crops (agroforestry), using shelterbelts or riparian zones to produce biomass, and mixing species in production stands.

A critical assumption for carbon sequestration analysis is that these perennial crops will be established on idled or surplus crop or pasture land, on cropland that is occasionally flooded, or on lands marginally profitable for annual crop production because of poor soil quality, erosion sensitivity, nutrient degradation, or other reasons. The rate of conversion of agricultural cropland to biomass cropland will be economically and policy driven but is also dependent on the development of new, more efficient biomass production and bioenergy conversion technologies. In some areas of Europe, idled agricultural cropland is already being converted to biomass crop production for energy end-use. In other places, such as the United States, the biomass cropping systems described above are being used to produce fiber products with energy production as a by-product.

#### **Current carbon sequestration capabilities of biomass cropland**

The greatest carbon emission reduction gain from biomass cropland will be obtained when economic or policy conditions result in the use of biomass cropland to produce feedstocks that substitute for carbon emitting fossil fuels such as coal and oil. Since adequate economic and policy drivers are not yet in place in most areas of the world, very little land currently is managed as biomass cropland. In the United States about 50,000 ha have been converted from agricultural cropland to production of woody crops. Several million ha of cropland were converted to switchgrass and other grass mixtures as part of the Conservation Reserve Program in the United States from the mid-1980s to mid-1990s. However, those lands have not received fertilization or pest control and thus are not highly productive. Similar types of land conservation programs were instituted in Europe for similar reasons. In addition, many parts of the former Soviet Union have large amounts of idled cropland reverting to natural ecosystems with the change from centrally managed to private managed agricultural systems. For purposes of a carbon sequestration analysis, some combination of the current carbon sequestration capabilities of annual crop systems and pastureland should be used as the biomass cropland baseline.

### **Strategies and objectives for biomass cropland carbon sequestration**

Since biomass cropland systems are at a very early stage of development, the opportunity exists to select and develop perennial plant species and management systems that optimize both above-ground production and below-ground carbon sequestration while providing profit to the landowner. The primary research strategy here is to increase the per unit land area rate of carbon fixation in the above-ground (economic) portion of the perennial plant biomass by 2 to 4 times. A policy/economic strategy is to develop markets for biomass crops to assure periodic removal of the crops for sequestration in bioproducts (e.g., wood products, bioplastics, etc.) and bioenergy (fossil carbon substitution). Development of the markets could be enhanced by genetically improving the characteristics of perennial biomass crops for bioenergy or bioproduct utilization

One risk associated with biomass croplands is public acceptance of land use change. Because of this, biomass croplands will have to provide more than just carbon sequestration and energy benefits in order to be accepted. Some level of optimization of carbon sequestration and plant productivity may have to be sacrificed in order to assure that water quality, soil conservation, and wildlife benefits are provided as an inherent component of biomass cropland ecosystems. Thus realizing the high rates of carbon sequestration that deployment of biomass production systems can offer additionally requires; (1) land use policy that facilitates biomass cropland implementation without violating strongly held ideas about land use, (2) multiple environmental benefits associated with the land use change and, (3) achievement of high carbon fixation and storage rates with low fossil carbon inputs.

The amount of carbon sequestration in biomass cropland will ultimately depend on the scale of land use conversion that occurs. Conversion of between 10 and 15% of current crop and pasture land worldwide to biomass production appears to be a feasible goal that would not substantially impact food and fiber production and which could provide observable regional environmental benefits.

### **Research and development needs**

All plant productivity research could benefit from improving our understanding of plant and soil processes. Research on plant process understanding must integrate with genetic improvement and crop management activities focusing on carbon sequestration impact. Genetically improved stock should optimally combine high-yield potential, with disease and pest resistance, high water-use and nutrient efficiency and optimal feedstock properties for conversion. Genetic potential needs to be achieved in concert with crop management techniques that minimize carbon inputs but assure sustainability of yields over time. Functional genomics will use molecular genetics to identify and modify plant growth and development processes, including individual gene expression, host-microbial interactions, all physiological responses, and plant assembly mechanisms. Integrated physiology, entomology, pathology, and agronomic studies are needed to elucidate plant growth and stress resistance mechanisms (i.e., studies focused on CO<sub>2</sub> fixation and respiration processes, carbon allocation, efficiency of carbon capture per unit of nutrients and water available, and pest and disease resistance are required). The selection and deployment of improved planting stock and crop management techniques must be optimized for each soil type and climatic zone.

Similar to most plant ecosystems, process understanding is critical to improving below-ground carbon sequestration in biomass croplands starting with improving our understanding of the processes controlling the movement of above-ground carbon to soil carbon pools. Carbon storage process studies should include; (1) determination of how carbon fractionation influences labile and recalcitrant forms of carbon, (2) quantification of how existing carbon levels affect storage rates and, (3) determination of factors affecting the rate and form of downward carbon migration in soils. The process research should be supplemented with extensive surveys documenting how carbon forms vary with soil type, depth, temperature, physical properties, and chemistry as well as types of crops and cropping strategy. In evaluating crops and cropping approaches it will be important to link effects of nitrogen management and tillage practices to carbon storage rates, stability of carbon gains over time, and the equilibrium conditions. Finally, a better understanding how climate change events (such as nitrogen deposition, regional ozone levels, changing precipitation patterns, and overall global warming) may feedback to affect carbon inputs and storage will add valuable information for predicting long-term effects.

The measurement and quantification research that would non-destructively determine carbon sequestration in the soil in biomass croplands would be very beneficial. Remote sensing approaches could also improve our ability to survey large areas of land thus predicting levels of standing biomass. Research to improve our understanding of the linkage between above- and below-ground carbon gains would be helpful in estimating soil carbon gains based on tons of biomass harvested annually.

Implementing the strategy for increasing carbon sequestration in biomass cropland requires the initiation of research that will lead to (1) technologies that are economically viable and environmentally sound and (2) analytical techniques that will assist policy makers in determining optimal land use allocation strategies for achieving carbon sequestration goals. Carbon sequestration will not increase in any ecosystem unless there are appropriate economic and policy drivers.

One risk associated with biomass croplands is public acceptance of land use change. This is part of the reason why biomass croplands will have to provide more than just carbon sequestration and energy benefits in order to be accepted by the public. Thus some level of optimization of carbon sequestration and plant productivity may have to be sacrificed in order to assure that water quality, soil conservation, and wildlife benefits are provided as an inherent component of biomass cropland ecosystems.

### **Linkages**

Biomass cropland R&D will be similar to that proposed for traditional agricultural crops, intensively managed forests, and managed grasslands since in all cases, a major goal is the production of biomass for removal from the site. Improvement of plant growth on degraded ecosystems could also share some similarities in approach with biomass croplands, since stress tolerance will be a component of both systems.

Biomass and agricultural cropland R&D will differ in that the former will focus primarily on perennial plants and the latter on annual plants and that most of the products from biomass crops will have a longer sequestration residence time. Basic plant research may be able to address some topics common to both, but perennial and annual plants have very different requirements for survival, and thus many differences in basic plant mechanisms.

Biomass cropland and managed forest or grassland ecosystems will differ by the fact that biomass crops will likely be established on former agricultural lands that are carbon depleted, while forest and grassland soils will likely have less opportunity for soil carbon increases.

A major cross cutting issue is to develop appropriate decision models and analytical techniques for optimizing land use allocation under various economic and policy scenarios. In the context of this report, consistent decisions have to be made on accounting for carbon removed from sites, considering portions that return to the atmosphere with no fossil substitution and portions that are sequestered or substitute for fossil carbon.

#### 4. Wetlands (Carl Trettin, Ron Thom, Patrick Megonigal, Walter Oechel)

Global wetlands cover about 7% of the total land surface, and contribute about 10% of the total global net primary productivity (NPP). Many systems have a high turnover rate (production:biomass) indicating loss and export rates are high. In addition, loss to sedimentation in deep portions of lakes and oceans may be great. Wetlands produce 40% of the global methane emissions. The degree to which wetlands produce methane is intimately tied to the hydrology of the system. Systems, such as rice paddies, that are wet much of the time, have greater methane emission rates. Marshes and some other wetland systems can be nutrient limited. Wetlands have the highest carbon density among all terrestrial ecosystems. Because of their low drought stress, high nutrient availability, and ability to expand below-ground biomass in enriched conditions, wetlands have a relatively great capacity to sequester additional carbon dioxide.

Wetlands sequester carbon through accretion of sediments and organic matter. Accretion is great in coastal systems where sediment input to estuaries is high. Marshes, in particular, form land through progradation. Very limited studies have shown that coastal marshes under enriched CO<sub>2</sub> conditions, can sequester more carbon in the below-ground biomass. Carbon sequestration through peat formation is an active process especially in boreal systems. Because of their position at the interface between land and water bodies, wetland export large quantities of carbon to deeper portions of lakes, estuaries and oceans, where carbon can be sequestered through burial.

Wetland soils contain a significant proportion of the terrestrial soil carbon (20–25%), despite the relatively small proportion of the total land area occupied. In North America, approximately 50% of the wetlands are forested. They are an important carbon sink, and a major source of atmospheric methane. Carbon dynamics in wetland soils also affect non-point pollutants, ground and stream water chemistry, and biogeochemical processes. Although soil carbon in wetlands is recognized as being an important component of global carbon budgets and future climate change scenarios, relatively little work has been done to consider the role of terrestrial ecosystems in managing carbon sequestration. Wetlands are among the most productive ecosystems in the world. They also have properties that reduce the rate of organic matter turnover from the ecosystem. Hence wetlands inherently have the two primary factors controlling carbon sequestration, (1) high rates of organic matter input, and (2) reduced rates of decomposition. There is considerable opportunity for managing that capability to affect enhance carbon sequestration while sustaining the other valued ecosystem functions. However, considerable research is needed to provide the knowledge foundation for the resource management decisions.

In the United States, 50% of wetlands have been lost or converted to other uses (e.g., crop and grazing lands). Globally the loss is undocumented, but could easily be as great. Sea level rise is causing net loss of some coastal wetlands, and carbon sinks in temperate and boreal wetlands have decreased by 50% (from 0.2 to 0.1 GtC year<sup>-1</sup>) due to development and resource extraction. Loss in tropical systems could likely exceed this amount. The leading causes of wetland loss are conversion, deforestation, development, and hydrological modifications.

Because of the global losses of wetlands, restoration of damaged, degraded and converted ecosystems represents a major opportunity to improve sequestration in wetlands. We estimate that restoring 25% of the wetlands would result in an increase in carbon sequestration. Hydrological controls could be effectively used to produce a positive balance in favor of carbon sequestration vs methane emission. Some wetland system are nutrient (nitrogen) limited to some degree. Hence, fertilization or other methods to introduce nitrogen into these systems could increase primary productivity and enhance carbon storage. Reduction in the rate of sea level rise would reduce the rate of conversion of intertidal wetlands to subtidal mud bottom. Massive restoration efforts presently underway on the Mississippi River delta through the Coastal Wetland Protection, Preservation and Restoration Act (CWWPRA) represent an excellent opportunity to evaluate the effects of large scale restoration on carbon sequestration and comparison of forest, shrub, and herbaceous wetlands.

### Strategies

- Identify degraded wetlands and develop management/conservation strategies to rehabilitate processes that sequester soil carbon. These lands have the inherent characteristics to sequester large amounts of carbon; reestablishing anaerobic processes and managing inputs have the potential for large amounts of long-term carbon storage. Especially important opportunities exist in prior-converted agricultural lands.
- Implement vegetation management strategies that sustain the soil carbon resources while producing woody crops.
- Increase soil carbon storage by identifying sites that have high productivity potential through managing water and nutrient resources.
- Conserve wetland landscapes that are inherently effective at carbon storage.
- Mitigate carbon loss through created wetland systems.

### Objectives

- Increase soil carbon sequestration in managed wetlands to rates above the norm for natural or unmanaged systems.
- Increase acreage of wetlands within selected landscapes thereby enhancing both above and below-ground carbon storage.
- Increase the volume of wood products derived from the resource that enter stable products classes.
- Implement planning / decision systems that consider carbon sequestration at the landscape level.
- Consider the value of carbon sequestration in designing mitigation projects.

There may be inherent limits on the potential for any given wetland to simultaneously have both very high productivity and extremely slow decomposition rates. Such limits will be important to understand if we wish to manipulate wetlands to enhance carbon sequestration. One limit that is incompletely understood in wetlands is the link between carbon and nitrogen cycling. Plants require a substantial nitrogen supply to support high photosynthesis rates. Most of the annual nitrogen demand in wetlands is supplied by decomposition of soil organic matter, a process that produces both plant available nitrogen and CO<sub>2</sub>. Thus, wetlands cannot necessarily support high rates

of photosynthesis and low rates of decomposition simultaneously. A basic research needed in wetlands is understanding how nutrient inputs and hydrology can be managed to optimize net ecosystem production in wetlands.

Coastal marshes have high rates of primary production due to tidal subsidies of water and nutrients, and high rates of carbon sequestration in soils due to low decomposition rates and burial by sediments. Global sequestration in these systems is perhaps 0.025 to 0.05 Pg carbon per year. One of the largest coastal marsh systems is the Mississippi River delta, which has an area of ~30,000 km<sup>2</sup>, roughly 10% of all coastal marshes. Both natural and artificial impacts are causing annual losses of 66 km<sup>2</sup> of freshwater and saltwater wetlands in the basin, and efforts to slow these losses are underway. Halting the current losses would save about 0.03 Tg y<sup>-1</sup> in soil carbon sequestration. Restoring these wetlands would increase this amount by perhaps 20-fold.

### **R&D Needs**

#### **Above-ground**

- Improve the understanding of the processes controlling vegetative production and community dynamics.
- Improve the understanding of the hydrologic controls on above and below-ground carbon allocation and carbon uptake vs emission.
- Develop a modeling framework to consider the role of wetlands in carbon sequestration at the landscape scale.
- Develop an understanding of how wetland plants (i.e., trees) will respond to increased levels of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>.
- Develop techniques to sustainably manage wetland ecosystems.
- Determine the differences among forest and herbaceous communities in carbon sequestration.

### **R&D Needs**

#### **Below-ground**

- Improve the understanding of the processes controlling biomass allocation to roots among different wetland species.
- Develop an understanding of the role of mychorizae in carbon fixation and plant productivity.
- Determine how different land management practices affect soil carbon storage.
- Determine the feedback of changes in soil carbon storage on ecosystems functions (e.g., habitat, water quality, hydrology).
- Determine the interactions of nutrient levels, temperature, redox and organic matter quality on carbon turnover and sequestration.
- Determine the organic matter sources affecting soil carbon storage.
- Role of fire in limiting carbon sequestration.
- Explore opportunities for creating wetland/carbon storage systems as an integral components of the landscape. Such a system would provide environmental benefits (e.g., water quality, habitat, recreation) and provide long-term carbon storage.
- Improve the understanding of the hydrologic controls on processes controlling carbon sequestration.

### **Linkages**

Wetlands are inherent to most landscapes where soil carbon storage is important. Accordingly, whether the management system is on the upland, adjoining the wetland, or directly within the wetland, wetlands are probably involved in attempts to affect carbon sequestration on the land. The linkages are controlled primarily by the movement of water. Hence understanding the functional linkages among ecosystems or management zones is critical to developing sustainable management systems. Wetlands effect soil carbon storage primarily as a result of reduced rates of organic matter turnover caused by anoxia. Factors affecting hydrology or aeration may affect the processes controlling soil carbon storage. Accordingly, there are direct linkages to land use (i.e., water use, waste disposal, urbanization) that must be considered at the landscape scale. Altered climates factors including temperature, precipitation, and atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> should be expected to change wetland processes and carbon storage. Studies of the effects of climate change factors on wetlands have largely been ignored. Accordingly, there is a critical need to develop an understanding of climate change influences on wetland processes so that those influences can be considered in conjunction with current and planned management approaches.

There is considerable interest in the United States in mitigating wetland loss through banking and project-specific approaches. The carbon sequestration function is not currently considered as part of the wetland value. Hence, it is likely that carbon losses are occurring with questionable prospects for long-term parity. Accordingly, there is an opportunity to design mitigation systems to provide, and perhaps enhance, carbon sequestration functions. Wetlands are productive ecosystems. There is considerable opportunity to enhance that productivity while sustaining valued ecosystem functions at the landscape scale. However, development of integrated assessment systems based on knowledge of ecosystem processes is required.

## 5. Deserts and Degraded Lands (F. Blaine Metting and Rattan Lal)

Deserts and degraded lands are considered together because restoration of these ecosystems to sequester carbon can require highly manipulative strategies. Many of the same strategies can be applied to both systems, with some modifications.

The definition and areal extent of degraded lands is somewhat difficult to assess. Included under different definitions are both “natural” and anthropogenic degradation. Worldwide, there are approximately  $1965 \times 10^6$  ha of degraded soils, 4% from physical degradation, 56% from water erosion, 28% from wind erosion and 12% from chemical degradation. With proper management these soils have the combined potential to sequester between 0.81 and 1.03 Gt C/year. Categories include saline, sodic, saline-sodic, mine spoils, and eroded or severely eroded soils.

Erosive processes are as a consequence of overly intensive tillage often combined with climate change and other inappropriate practices, such as use of marginal lands and steep topographies, and over grazing. One result is desertification. Estimates of land areas subject to degradation and desertification vary from  $\sim 1-2.5 \times 10^9$  ha. Annual desertification rates vary from  $\sim 5-27 \times 10^6$  ha, half of which is occurring on rangelands.

Depending on the basis for their definition (i.e., evapotranspiration or other aridity indices, vegetation, soil taxonomy), deserts account for between 11-12% of the Earth's land surface. Estimates vary from  $10^8$ -to- $2^+ \times 10^9$  ha and include hyper-arid regions receiving <200 mm annual precipitation (ppt.) and arid areas with <200 mm of winter ppt. or <400 mm total annual ppt. Addition of semi-arid areas receiving 200-500 mm of winter ppt. or 400-600 mm of summer rainfall increases the areal extent of deserts to  $\sim 5 \times 10^9$  ha. The principal feature of these regions is their negative water balance, which is reflected by generally sparse and often seasonal plant cover and low primary production. With open or absent plant canopies, much of the soil surface of deserts is exposed to full sunlight. One result is the evolution of unique microbial ecosystems dominated by autotrophic bacteria, microalgae and/or lichens known variously as cryptobiotic or algal crusts and desert pavement. Organic carbon stocks are much smaller than other ecosystems, but desert soils (primarily in the Aridosol soil order) often contain significant concentrations of inorganic carbon, principally as caliche. Other features of desert soils are:

- Aridosols occupy  $\sim 1.7 \times 10^9$  ha
- Average carbon density of desert soils  $\sim 3-3.5$  kg/m<sup>2</sup>/m depth
- World wide desert soil stock  $\sim 59$  Gt total C, 4.7 Gt N
- Global caliche accretion rate  $\sim 0.05$  Gt C/year

### Strategies for enhanced carbon sequestration

Strategies for enhanced carbon sequestration have different objectives for deserts and degraded lands. For deserts, enhanced sequestration strategies are largely innovative uses of otherwise under utilized resources. Restoration of degraded lands and strategies to minimize or reverse desertification processes, on the other

hand, are as much aimed at reversing loss of carbon to the atmosphere as they are to enhancing sequestration. With the exceptions of the use of saline and brackish groundwater resources for (1) crop irrigation or (2) microalgal mass culture, strategies for deserts and degraded lands largely focus on below-ground sequestration. The greatest potential may be the discovery and application of innovative ways to enhance the accumulation of inorganic carbon stocks.

1. Control desertification (minimize, reverse) and restore degraded lands by means of improved land management practices
2. Delineate “bright” (trigger) spots for desert carbon sequestration. That is, identify area(s) to focus short-to-mid term desert carbon sequestration efforts.
3. Exploit under utilized desert resources to create wetlands and large-scale aquaculture projects with saline and brackish surface and groundwaters
4. Use existing plant and microbial resources together with biotechnology and genetic engineering:
  - Screen, identify and adapt C4 and CAM plants
  - Engineer enhanced water use efficiency, salt tolerance, high pH tolerance into select species for desert regions
  - Engineer for desired root physiology/metabolism and architecture
  - Encourage and manipulate surface and rhizosphere microbial communities to enhance sequestration
5. Expand the use of land application of organic and inorganic soil amendments:
  - Organic matter
  - Inorganic nutrients (e.g., Ca to enhance caliche development)
  - Microbial inocula to promote the development of desert crusts

### Objectives

The objectives of the strategies for enhanced soil carbon sequestration in deserts and for restoration of degraded lands are to:

1. conserve soil and water, enhance water use efficiencies
2. utilize neglected and underutilized resources
3. strengthen/direct desired biogeochemical cycles/processes
4. enhance vegetal cover and effective carbon sequestration by plants and microbial communities

### Research and development needs

Research and development needs for enhanced carbon sequestration in deserts and degraded lands falls within seven categories. These include research to establish global databases in biotechnology and land management, and to better understand natural plant, microbial, and soil processes and their interrelationships in arid and disturbed ecosystems. Specific research and development needs include:

1. *Quantify and categorize the extent and severity of degraded lands on a global scale.* The availability and quality of this information is inadequate. Campaigns to collect, archive and make available data are required to better

understand the extent of degraded lands and for developing effective and prioritized international research programs.

2. *Understand mechanisms and processes controlling carbon pools and fluxes in deserts and degraded lands.* A number of basic biogeochemical mechanisms important to establishing a solid, fundamental understanding of environmental and ecological processes in deserts and degraded lands are poorly understood. Research is needed to better understand the following:

- Aeolian/dry deposition processes and effects on carbon sequestration
- Inorganic carbon formation and movement and the role of Ca
- Influence(s) of soil physical properties on carbon sequestration in arid regions, including the roles of texture, clay mineralogy, and soil structure and aggregation
- Biogeochemical cycles/controls of carbon sequestration and movement, including N, P, S, Fe, Ca and Cl
- The microbial ecology of desert soil surfaces and rhizosphere microbial communities
- Physical, mechanical, and species-mediated weathering of exposed subsoil or parent material on eroded sites

3. *Management practices for desertification control and soil restoration*  
Desert lands are, by definition, water limited. Thus, fewer than 10% of arid regions are cropped. Therefore, key management strategies for utilizing deserts and reversing desertification must focus on minimizing the water deficit. Important objectives are:

- The use of appropriate plant species. In particular, many arid land plants have evolved special photosynthetic mechanisms for enhanced water use efficiency. These include the C4 photosynthetic fixation pathway and the crassulacean acid metabolism (CAM) pathway. There are many advantages to growing C4 and CAM plants in arid regions based on their improved water and soil nutrient use efficiencies at high temperatures. Research is needed to improve understanding of global biodiversity of C4 and CAM plants that could be screened for innate carbon sequestration traits of interest and used in field research projects.
- Supplementary irrigation and the use of under utilized saline and brackish surface and ground waters. Growing crops or mass culturing microalgae that tolerate saline and alkaline water is another strategy for which expanded research efforts are required.
- Research focused on techniques for soil erosion control, particularly as suited to arid lands is required. This research needs to be integrated with management efforts to optimize soil fertility, residue use, salinity control and the possible use of novel microbial and chemical amendments.

4. *Molecular biology and plant genetic engineering*  
Biotechnology to improve plant performance in desert environments is needed and should focus on:

- Development of genetic transformation tools and methods in new plant species for desert growth and carbon sequestration, including C4 and CAM plants.
- Genetic engineering of desired traits into existing crop and forage plants, including salinity tolerance, water use efficiency, etc. One approach is to engineer desirable C4 and CAM metabolic traits into C3 crop plants.

5. *Microbial biology*

Microorganisms and microbial communities in and on desert soils are unique in comparison to agricultural and forest soils. In some arid and hyper-arid settings, microbial communities are the only mechanism for biological CO<sub>2</sub> fixation. They are also responsible for nitrogen input via biological N<sub>2</sub> fixation and for weathering of primary minerals and nutrient release. Fundamental research is needed in desert plant rhizosphere microbial community function and diversity of cryptobiotic communities (i.e., desert pavement, and lichen and microlagal crusts). In addition, applied research to develop and demonstrate microbial inoculants for rhizosphere and soil crust manipulation and development is needed.

6. *Desert ecology*

Ecosystem-scale research is required to better understand integrated ecological roles of desert plant and animal communities, including the role and global significance of arthropods in soil carbon cycling and sequestration. Ecological research is also needed to determine the appropriateness and extent of expansion or modification of grazing practices in arid and semi-arid regions.

7. *Economic, social and policy research*

In all cases, research is required for cost-benefit and risk analysis for all technical and management options for enhanced soil carbon sequestration in deserts and degraded lands. This includes the need for life cycle analysis all approaches to determine the overall energy and carbon budgets for implementation.

## Bibliography

Lal, R., H. M. Hassan, and J. Dumanski. 1998. Desertification control to sequester carbon and mitigate the greenhouse effect. Contributed Discussion Paper, Workshop on Soil carbon Sequestration. Pacific Northwest National Laboratories, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Council for Agricultural Science & Technology, December 3-5, 1998 (*unpublished*).

Metting, F. B. and J. L. Smith. 1998. Science needs and new technology for soil carbon sequestration: a discussion paper. Contributed Discussion Paper, Workshop on Soil carbon Sequestration. Pacific Northwest National Laboratory, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Council for Agricultural Science & Technology, December 3-5, 1998 (*unpublished*).

J. Skujins (Ed.). 1991. *Semiarid Lands and Deserts. Soil Resource and Reclamation*. Marcel Dekker, New York.

Schlesinger, W. H., G. M. Marion, and P. J. Fonteyn. 1989. Stable isotope ratios and the dynamics of caliche in desert soils. In: Rundel, P. W., J. R. Ehleringer, and K. A. Nagy (Eds.). *Stable Isotopes in Ecological Research*. Springer-Verlag, Inc., New York.

## 6. Urban and Suburban Forested Areas (John Hom, David Nowak, Richard Pouyat, Marilyn Buford)

Carbon storage by urban forests nationally is estimated between 400–900 million tons (above-ground tree and shrub biomass only, Nowak 1995). Within the urban area, the largest carbon tree storage is found in institutional lands dominated by vegetation (e.g., parks, preserves, cemeteries, golf courses), in residential land use (1–3 family residential buildings), multiresidential areas (apartments) and vacant lots. Small trees account for the majority of the trees in urban areas. In comparison, U.S. forested ecosystems store approximately 52.5 billion tons of carbon (Birdsey 1992) and have 3–4 times higher live carbon/ha than urban forests, due to the lower average percent tree cover in urban sites (~28%). The estimates of suburban forest carbon storage are not well known, and are sometimes included in carbon estimates for urban forests, as they fall between the inventories of rural and urban forests.

Land use is one of the most significant factors affecting urban vegetation. Urbanization eliminated 10 million ha of agricultural and forested land in the United States between 1960 and 1980 (Alig and Healy 1987). It is estimated that 80% of the U.S. population will live in urban areas by the year 2025, up from 74% in 1986 (Alig and Healy 1987). Urban areas account for less than 1% of the total terrestrial life zones. The total amount of land dedicated to urban uses was 26 million hectares in 1992 (World Resource 1996).

Soil carbon densities for urban soils are relatively high compared to other biome types, higher than temperate forest soils, and comparable to wet boreal forest (17.5 and 23.7 kg/m<sup>2</sup>, Pouyat, personal communication). Data suggest that long term urban forests soils may store more carbon than in rural forest soils with less labile carbon and greater passive carbon pools (Groffman et. al. 1995).

Urban forests are unique as they perform the dual function of directly sequestering atmospheric carbon and by indirectly conserving energy use of structures through shading, reducing the “heat island effect” by transpirational cooling, and reducing turbulent transfer losses. It was estimated that planting 10 million urban trees annually over the next 10 years would sequester and offset the production of 363 million tons of carbon over the next 50 years, with 20% due to direct carbon sequestration and 80% due to avoided carbon emission from energy conservation under optimal tree location. The total sequestration and energy offset of carbon reduction under this scenario is less than 1% of the carbon emissions projected for the United States over the same 50 year period (Nowak 1995).

### Strategies

Urban forest planning and management to direct urban forest structure to desired outcome of increasing forest cover, increase rate of carbon capture, and long-term maintenance of standing stock within space and land-use limitations.

Sustain or enhance existing tree health to maximize sequestration while minimizing losses due to tree mortality (hold on to existing carbon).

Establish properly selected and located urban trees in available planting areas. Planning to maximize building energy conservation will yield greatest relative carbon benefit.

**Objectives**

**Above-ground**

1. Increase and maintain area of urban and suburban forested areas
2. Maximize biomass accumulation within space and land use limitations
3. Minimize mortality losses under multiple stress conditions within urban environment
4. Increase net carbon retention in maintenance (pruning), landfill (disposal), and recycling (leaf and chipping) practices.

**R&D needs**

**Above-ground**

Identify and select tree species and genotypes, for the urban and suburban environment that meets objectives of increasing sequestering carbon and reducing emissions.

Evaluate physiological responses and carbon allocation of urban trees and shrubs to those in rural environments. Urban trees are exposed to elevated CO<sub>2</sub> and temperature gradients within an urban-suburban environment as well as multiple stress interaction with ozone and atmospheric deposition of nitrogen and sulfur compounds.

Identify policy and management issues that would lead to preserving existing urban forests and increasing tree planting: energy conservation, economic development, natural resources planning, social-economic values.

Full life-cycle analysis on carbon budget of urban and suburban forests to increase carbon sequestration and reduce emissions. Trees in the urban environment require greater energy inputs in establishment, maintenance and disposal (fertilizer, site prep, pruning, leaf litter, chipping, transport and disposal). Trees offset energy use by energy conservation on buildings through shading, reduction of heat island effect, and turbulent transfer losses.

**Objectives**

**Below-ground**

1. Increase and maintain urban and suburban forest cover
2. Increase soil carbon densities
3. Employ planning and management practices to minimize soil, litter disturbance and maximize soil carbon retention

**R&D needs**

**Below-ground**

Will urban land uses result in greater soil carbon storage? Soil carbon densities for urban soils are relatively high compared to other biome types. Long term urban forests soils may store more carbon than in rural forest soils.

Determine litter quality changes and soil decomposition rates in the urban environment. The urban environment receives elevated chemical and atmospheric inputs. This can produce changes in litter quality by air pollution (ozone) or exotic plant species. Temperature increases in the urban environment and greater nitrogen deposition will increase decomposition rates. Heavy metal and air pollution damage to plant tissue should decrease decomposition rates. Changes in microbial and soil invertebrate composition across urban to rural environments may change rates of decomposition.

Develop urban land use management practices to increase soil carbon. Management practices, such as irrigation and fertilization make up for site limitations restricting plant and root growth.

Investigate effects of drastic soil disturbances that occur in urban areas on soil carbon

Links to other ecosystems:

1. Determine the net conversion of land use (i.e., agricultural and forested lands to suburban and urban forested lands).
2. Determine extent of urban land uses in other vegetation life zones (e.g., coastal areas, wetlands conversion to urban and suburban use).

## References

Alig, R. J. and R. G. Healy. 1987. Urban and built-up land area changes in the United States: An empirical investigation of determinants. *Land Economics*: 63:215-226.

Birdsey, R. A. 1992. Carbon storage and accumulation in U.S. forest ecosystems. Gen. Tech. Rep. WO-59. Washington, DC: USDA, Forest Service. 51 p.

Groffman, P. M., R. V. Pouyat, M. J. McDonnell, S. T. A. Pickett, and W. C. Zipper. 1995. Carbon pools and trace gas fluxes in urban forest soils. In: Lal, R., Kimble, J., Levine, E., Stewart, B. A. eds. *Advances in soil science: Soil Management and Greenhouse Effect*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC press 147-158.

Nowak, D. J. 1995. Atmospheric carbon dioxide reduction by Chicago's urban forests. In: Chicago's urban forest ecosystem: results of the Chicago Urban Forest climate Project. Gen. Tech. Rep. NE-186. Radnor, PA USDA, Forest Service, Northeastern Forest Experiment Station:83-94.

World Resources Institute. *World Resources* (Oxford University Press, New York, 1996).

**Table B.1 Assessment of carbon storage and sequestration by urban forests in the United States**

Region	Urban land <sup>1</sup>	Urban tree cov <sup>2</sup>	Total C stored <sup>3</sup>	Total C gr. seq <sup>4</sup>	Total C net seq <sup>5</sup>	Per meter stored <sup>6</sup>	Per meter gr. seq <sup>7</sup>	Per meter net seq <sup>8</sup>
NE	48,646	15,814	131,876,000	4,668,000	679,000	2,718	95.9	13.8
NC	51,724	17,118	142,748,000	5,052,000	735,000	2,768	97.6	14.3
SE	46,413	15,562	129,775,000	4,593,000	668,000	2,792	98.8	14.3
SC	65,930	15,926	132,807,000	4,701,000	684,000	2,026	71.4	10.4
RN	5,331	2,402	20,028,000	709,000	103,000	3,756	132.9	19.3
RS	22,447	2,447	20,407,000	722,000	105,000	914	32.1	4.7
PSW	27,348	2,949	24,589,000	870,000	127,000	890	31.9	4.7
PNW	7,958	2,537	21,155,000	749,000	109,000	2,669	94.1	13.6
GP	4,710	907	7,562,000	268,000	39,000	1,606	56.8	8.2
Misc <sup>9</sup>	492	142	1,183,000	42,000	6,000	2,397	85	12.4
U.S. <sup>10</sup>	281,000	75,803	632,129,000	22,373,000	3,255,000	na	na	na

Ref. David J. Nowak, Daniel E. Crane, and Jack C. Stevens, personal communications-DRAFT  
Note: all urban tree carbon numbers are for aboveground only

<sup>1</sup> urban land in km<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup> urban tree cover in km<sup>2</sup>

<sup>3</sup> total carbon stored in metric tons (t)

<sup>4</sup> total gross annual carbon sequestration in metric tons (t/year)

<sup>5</sup> total net annual carbon sequestration in metric tons (t/year)

<sup>6</sup> carbon stored per acre of land (g/m<sup>2</sup>)

<sup>7</sup> gross annual carbon sequestration per acre of land (g/m<sup>2</sup>/yr)

<sup>8</sup> net annual carbon sequestration per acre of land (g/m<sup>2</sup>/yr)

<sup>9</sup> Miscellaneous land-urban land that crossed state borders and could not be assigned to an individual states

<sup>10</sup> U.S. total

na-not analyzed

**U.S. Regions:**

Northeast (NE): NY, PA, MD, WV, DE, NJ, CT, RI, MA, NH, VT, ME, DC

North Central (NC): MN, IA, MO, IL, WI, MI, IN, OH

Southeast (SE): VA, NC, SC, GA, FL

South Central (SC): KY, TN, AL, MS, AR, LA, OK, TX

Rockies-north (RN): MT and ID.

Rockies-south (RS): NV, UT, AZ, CO, WY, NM

Pacific SW (PSW): CA

Pacific NW (PNW): OR, WA

Great Plains (GP): ND, SD, NE, and KS

**Table B.2. Urban soil carbon storage**

Life zone groups	Area* (x 10 <sup>12</sup> m <sup>2</sup> )	Carbon density(kg m <sup>2</sup> )	Soil carbon (x 10 <sup>15</sup> g)
Tropical forest-moist	5.3	11.4	60.4
Temperate forest-warm	8.6	7.1	61.1
Boreal forest-wet	6.9	19.3	133.2
Warm desert (1)	14.0	1.4	19.6
Wetlands (2)	2.8	72.3	202.4
Urban (3)	0.26	20.6	5.4
Urban -15% (4)	-	17.5	4.6
Urban +15%	-	23.7	6.2

\* After Olson

1. Ratio of warm desert to cool desert after Walter
2. Carbon density for cultivated land and wetland after Schlesinger
3. After Hyun-Kil Jo and E. G. McPherson
4. Assuming error of + and - 15% to give range of urban soil carbon data

Hyun-Kil Jo and E. G. McPherson. *Carbon Storage and Flux in Urban Residential Greenspace* (J. of Environmental Management, 1995)

Olson, J. S., Pfuderer, H. A. and Chan, Y.-H. *Changes in the Global Carbon Cycle and the Biosphere*, ORNL/EIS-109 (Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Tennessee, 1978).

Olson, J. S. in *Carbon Dioxide Review* (ed. Clark, W.) (Oxford University Press, New York 1982).

Schlesinger, W. H. in *The Role of Terrestrial Vegetation in the Global Carbon Cycle: Methods for Appraising Changes* (Wiley, New York, in the press).

Walter, H. *Vegetation of the Earth* (Springer, New York, 1973).

World Resources Institute. *World Resources* (Oxford University Press, New York, 1996).



**Appendix C**

**ATTENDEES AT DOE WORKSHOP  
ON RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT  
PRIORITIES FOR CARBON SEQUESTRATION**



## Appendix C

### ATTENDEES AT DOE WORKSHOP ON RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES FOR CARBON SEQUESTRATION

**September 14-15, 1999  
Gaithersburg, Maryland**

**Abrardo, Joseph M.**  
Air Products and Chemicals, Inc.  
7201 Hamilton Blvd.  
Allentown, PA 18195  
Phone: (610) 481-8902  
Fax: (610) 481-7166  
E-mail: abrardjm@apci.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Ahnell, Arden D.**  
BP Amoco  
BP Amoco Business Center  
28100 Torch Parkway, Ste. 500  
Warrenville, IL 60555-4015  
Phone: (630) 836-5771  
Fax: (630) 836-5686  
E-mail: ahnell@bp.com  
Breakout: Geological

**Allmaras, Raymond R.**  
US Department of Agriculture-ARS  
439 Borlaug Hall  
1991 Upper Buford Circle  
St. Paul, MN 55108  
Phone: (612) 625-1742  
Fax: (651) 649-5175  
E-mail: allmaras@soils.umn.edu  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Aminian, Kashayar**  
WVU College of Engineering and  
Mineral Resources  
P. O. Box 6070  
Morgantown, WV 26506-6070  
Phone: (304) 293-7682 ext. 406  
E-mail: kaminian@wvu.edu  
Breakout: Geological

**Anderson, Carl W.**  
Brookhaven National Laboratory  
Biology Department  
Building 463  
50 Bell Avenue  
Upton, NY 11973-5000  
Phone: (516) 344-3375  
Fax: (516) 344-6398  
E-mail: cwa@bnl.gov

**Anderson, Margot**  
US Department of Agriculture  
USDA/OCE/GCPO  
1400 Independence Avenue, SW,  
Stop 3814  
Washington, DC 20250-3814  
Phone: (202) 720-6698  
Fax: (202) 401-1176  
E-mail: manderson@oce.usda.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Aycaguer, Anne-Christine**

ARCO  
333 S. Hope Street, PAC 1682  
Los Angeles, CA 90071  
Phone: (213) 486-0777  
Fax: (213) 486-2021  
E-mail: aaycagu@mail.arco.com  
Breakout: Geological

**Bajura, Richard A.**

WVU National Research Center for Coal  
and Energy  
P. O. Box 6064  
Morgantown, WV 26506-6064  
Phone: (304) 293-2867 ext. 5401  
Fax: (304) 293-3749  
E-mail: rbajura@wvu.edu  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Baker, R. Tom**

Los Alamos National Laboratory  
CST-18, MS J514  
Los Alamos, NM 87545  
Phone: (505)-667-9274  
Fax: (505) 667-9905  
E-mail: weg@lanl.gov

**Balthaser, Rick R.**

US Department of Energy/Albuquerque  
Operations Office  
MS TDD  
P.O. Box 5400  
Albuquerque, NM 87185-5400  
Phone: (505) 845-4466  
Fax: (505) 845-4430  
E-mail: rbalthaser@doeal.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Beecy, David**

US Department of Energy  
Office of Fossil Energy, FE-23  
19901 Germantown Rd.  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: (301) 903-2787  
Fax: (301) 903-8350  
E-mail: David.Beecy@hq.doe.gov

**Benson, Sally M.**

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
One Cyclotron Rd., M/S 90-1116  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: (510) 486-5875  
E-mail: smbenson@lbl.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Berc, Jeri**

US Department of Agriculture/  
Natural Resources Conservation  
Service  
P.O. Box 2890  
Room 5208-S  
Washington, DC 20013  
Phone: (202) 720-2534  
E-mail: jeri.berc@usda.gov

**Bergman, Perry D.**

National Energy Technology Laboratory  
P. O. Box 10940  
Pittsburgh, PA 15236  
Phone: (412) 386-4890  
Fax: (412) 386-5917  
E-mail: Bergman@fetc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Betts, Kellyn S.**

Environmental Science & Technology  
Magazine  
1155 Sixteenth Street, NW  
Washington, DC 20036  
Phone: (202) 872-6195  
E-mail: k\_betts@acs.org  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Biggerstaff, Margie D.**

US Department of Energy  
1000 Independence Avenue, SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: (202) 586-3867  
E-mail: margie.biggerstaff@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Bird, Gordon W.**

Alberta Research Council  
250 Karl Clark Road  
Edmonton, Alberta  
T6N 1E4  
Canada  
Phone: (780) 450-5265  
Fax: (780) 450-1490  
E-mail: bird@arc.ab.ca

**Bishop, James K. B.**

DOE Center for Research on Ocean  
Carbon Sequestration  
Earth Sciences Division  
Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
1 Cyclotron Road, MS 90-1116  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: (510) 495-2457  
Fax: (510) 486-5686  
E-mail: JK\_Bishop@lbl.gov  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Bonnie, Robert**

Environmental Defense Fund  
257 Park Ave., South  
New York, NY 10010  
E-mail: Robert\_Bonnie@edf.org

**Borey, Roland B.**

Texaco  
1111 Bagby Street  
Houston, TX 77002  
Phone: (713) 752-6629  
Fax: (713) 752-3870  
E-mail: boreyrb@texaco.com  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Brandenburg, Charles F.**

Gas Research Institute  
8600 Bryn Mawr Ave.  
Chicago, IL 60631  
Phone: (773) 399-8324  
Fax: (773) 399-4609  
E-mail: cbranden@gri.org  
Breakout: Geological

**Breshears, David D.**

Los Alamos National Laboratory  
Environmental Science Group,  
MS J495  
Los Alamos, NM 87545  
Phone: (505) 665-2803  
Fax: (505) 665-3866  
E-mail: daveb@lanl.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Brown, Donald W.**

Group EES-4, MS-D443  
Los Alamos National Laboratory  
Los Alamos, NM 87545  
Phone: (505) 667-1926  
Fax: (505) 667-8487  
E-mail: dwb@lanl.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Brown, Lewis M.**

ITN Energy Systems, Inc.  
12401 West 49th Avenue  
Wheat Ridge, CO 80033  
Phone: (303) 285-5109  
Fax: (303) 285-5164  
E-mail: LBrown@itnes.com  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Buford, Marilyn A.**

US Department of Agriculture  
Forest Service  
Vegetation Management and  
Protection Research  
P. O. Box 96090  
Washington, DC 20090-6090  
Phone: (202) 205-1343  
Fax: (202) 205-2497  
E-mail: mbuford/wo@fs.fed.us  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Burruss, Robert G.**

US Geological Survey  
12201 Sunrise Valley Drive, MS 956  
Reston, VA 20192  
Phone: (703) 648-6144  
Fax: (703) 648-6419  
E-mail: burruss@usgs.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Byrer, Charles W.**

US Department of Energy  
National Energy Technology Laboratory  
MS E06, 3610 Collins Ferry Road  
Morgantown, West Virginia 26507-0880  
Phone: (304) 285-4547  
Fax: (304) 285-4403  
E-mail: cbyrer@fetc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Caldeira, Kenneth G.**

LLNL/DOE Center for Research on  
Ocean Carbon Sequestration  
Lawrence Livermore National  
Laboratory  
7000 East Ave, L-103  
Livermore, CA 94550  
Phone: (925) 423-4191  
Fax: (925) 422-6388  
E-mail: kenc@llnl.gov  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Campbell, Brenda W.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P. O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6253  
Phone: (865) 574-4333  
Fax: (865) 574-9869  
E-mail: xbd@ornl.gov

**Campbell, Richard J.**

National Research Council  
2101 Constitution Ave., NW (HA 270)  
Washington, DC 20418  
Phone: (202) 334-2093  
Fax: (202) 334-3370  
E-mail: rcampbel@nas.edu

**Carr, Timothy R.**

KU Energy Research Center  
1930 Constant Ave  
University of Kansas  
Lawrence, KS 66047-3726  
Phone: (785) 864-3965  
Fax: (785) 864-5317  
E-mail: tcarr@kgs.ukans.edu  
Breakout: Geological

**Carter, Lawrence D.**

US Department of Energy, FE-26  
1000 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: (202) 586-9684  
Fax: (202) 586-7085  
E-mail: Douglas.Carter@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Biological

**Chatwin, Terrence D.**

Utah Engineering Experiment Station  
University of Utah  
1495 E. 100 S., Rm 138 KRC  
Salt Lake City, UT 84112  
Phone: (801) 581-6348  
Fax: (801) 581-5440  
E-mail:  
terrence.chatwin@m.cc.utah.edu  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Chen, Zhong-Ying**

Science Applications International  
Corporation  
1710 Goodridge Drive, MS 2-3-1  
McLean, VA 22102  
Phone: (703) 556-7328  
Fax: (703) 821-1134  
E-mail: zhong-  
ying.chen@cpmx.saic.com  
Breakout: Geological

**Ciesar, James A.**

Siemens Westinghouse Power Corp  
1310 Beulah Rd.  
Pittsburgh, PA 15235  
Phone: (412) 256-2564  
Fax: (412) 256-2121  
E-mail:  
james.ciesar@swpc.siemens.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Clark, Howard E.**

ASME International  
1828 L St., NW, Suite 906  
Washington, DC 20036-5104  
Phone: (202) 785-3756  
Fax: (202) 785-8120  
E-mail: clarkh@asme.org

**Clarke, John F.**

Pacific Northwest National Laboratory  
Battelle  
901 D St. SW, Suite 900  
Washington, DC 20024  
Phone: (202) 646-5280  
E-mail: j.f.clarke@pnl.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Coale, Kenneth H.**

Moss Landing Marine Laboratories  
P. O. Box 450  
Moss Landing, CA 95039  
Phone: (831) 755-8655  
Fax: (831) 753-2826  
E-mail: coale@mlml.calstate.edu  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Coda, Michael**

The Nature Conservancy  
4245 North Fairfax Drive  
Arlington, VA 22203  
Phone: (703) 841-4874  
Fax: (703) 841-4880  
E-mail: mcoda@tnc.org  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Cole, David R.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
Chemical and Analytical Sciences  
Division  
P. O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6110  
Phone: (865) 574-5473  
Fax: (865) 574-4961  
E-mail: coledr@ornl.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Cooper, John F.**

Lawrence Livermore National  
Laboratory  
P. O. Box 808, L-352  
Livermore, CA 94550  
Phone: (925) 423-6649  
Fax: (925) 422-0049  
E-mail: Cooper3@LLNL.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Corathers, Lisa A.**

National Mining Association  
1130 17th Street, NW  
Washington, DC 20036-4677  
Phone: (202) 463-9796  
Fax: (202) 833-9636  
E-mail: lcorathers@nma.org  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Counce, Deborah M.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P. O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6121  
Phone: (865) 576-8785  
Fax: (865) 574-9958  
E-mail: xce@ornl.gov

**Creutz, Carol**

BNL Chemistry Department  
Bldg. 555  
Brookhaven National Laboratory  
Upton, NY 11973-5000  
Phone: (516) 344-4301  
Fax: (516) 344-7993  
E-mail: chmchair@bnl.gov

**Crookshank, Steven L.**

American Petroleum Institute  
1220 L Street NW  
Washington, DC 20005  
Phone: (202) 682-8542  
E-mail: crookshanks@api.org  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Dahlman, Roger C.**

DOE Office of Science, SC-74  
19901 Germantown Rd.  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: (301) 903-4951  
Fax: (301) 903-8519  
E-mail:  
roger.dahlman@science.doe.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Dalton, Stuart M.**

EPRI  
3412 Hillview Avenue  
P. O. Box 10412  
Palo Alto, CA 94304  
Phone: (650) 855-2467  
Fax: (650) 855-8759  
E-mail: sdalton@epri.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Dilling, Lisa**

NOAA/OGP  
1100 Wayne Ave., Suite 1210  
Silver Spring, MD 20190  
Phone: (310) 427-2089 ext. 106  
Fax: (301) 427-2073  
E-mail: dilling@ogp.noaa.gov  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**DiPietro, Joseph P.**

Energetics Inc.  
501 School Street, NW  
Washington, DC 20024  
Phone: (202) 479-2748  
Fax: (202) 479-0229  
E-mail: pdipietro@energeticsinc.com  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Doctor, Richard D.**

Argonne National Laboratory  
9700 S. Cass Ave., ES/362  
Argonne, IL 60439-4815  
Phone: (630) 252-5913  
Fax: (630) 252-5210  
E-mail: rdoctor@anl.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Dorchak, Thomas P.**

National Energy Technology Laboratory  
P.O. Box 880  
3610 Collins Ferry Road  
Morgantown, WV 26505  
Phone: (304) 285-4305  
Fax: (304) 285-4469  
E-mail: tdoctor@fetc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Drahovzal, James A.**

Kentucky Geological Survey  
228 MMRB University of Kentucky  
Lexington, Kentucky 40506  
Phone: (606) 257-5500  
Fax: (606) 257-1147  
E-mail: drahovzal@kgs.mm.uky.edu  
Breakout: Geological

**Edwards, Karen C.**

KCE Public Affairs Associates  
5815 Stream Pond Court  
Centreville, VA 20120  
Phone: (703) 502-8980  
Fax: (703) 502-3903  
E-mail:  
kcepublicaffairs@consultant.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Ekmann, James M.**

National Energy Technology Laboratory  
MS 922-178C  
P.O. Box 10940  
Pittsburgh, PA 15236  
Phone: (412) 386-5716  
Fax: (412) 386-4561  
E-mail: ekmann@fetc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Elliott, Scott M.**

Los Alamos National Laboratory  
Atmospheric and Climate Sciences,  
MS D-401  
Los Alamos, NM 87545  
Phone: (505) 667-0949  
Fax: (505) 665-3415  
E-mail: sme@lanl.gov  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Fain, Douglas E.**

Bechtel Jacobs Co. LLC  
P.O. Box 4699, MS 7271  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-7271  
Phone: (865) 574-9932  
Fax: (865) 576-2930  
E-mail: fainde@bechteljacobs.org  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Farrar, Loren**

U.S. Department of Energy  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874  
Phone: (301) 903-2338  
Fax: (301) 903-2406  
E-mail: Loren.Farrar@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Farrell, Michael P.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P. O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6250  
Phone: (865) 576-7785  
Fax: (865) 576-9977  
E-mail: mff@ornl.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Biological

**Ferrell, Frank**

Department of Energy, FE-23  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: (301) 903-3768  
Fax: (301) 903-8350  
E-mail: frank.ferrell@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Fletcher, Jerald J.**

West Virginia University  
Natural Resource Analysis Center  
P. O. Box 6108  
Morgantown, WV 26506-6108  
Phone: (304) 293-4832 ext. 4452  
Fax: (304) 293-3752  
E-mail: jfletch@wvu.edu

**Fredrickson, Dave**

LI-COR, Inc.  
Environmental Division  
4421 Superior  
Lincoln, NE 68504  
Phone: (402) 467-3576  
Fax: (402) 467-2819  
E-mail: dfredrickson@env.licor.com  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Freund, Paul**

IEA Greenhouse Gas R&D Programme  
CRE Group Ltd.  
Cheltenham  
Glos  
GL52 4RZ  
United Kingdom  
Phone: +44 1242 680753  
Fax: +44 1242 680758  
E-mail: paul@ieagreen.demon.co.uk  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Fumich, George**

National Research Center for Coal  
and Energy  
West Virginia University  
Evansdale Drive  
P. O. Box 6064  
Morgantown, WV 26506-6064  
Phone: (703) 527-3406  
Fax: (703) 527-1839  
E-mail: bajura@wvu.edu  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Gilliland, Ralph G.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6248  
Phone: (865) 574-9920  
Fax: (865) 576-6118  
E-mail: gillilandrg@ornl.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Grahame, Thomas J.**

US Department of Energy, FE-26  
1000 Independence Ave. SW,  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: (202) 586-7149  
Fax: (202) 586-7085  
E-mail: Thomas.Grahame@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Greene, George A.**

Brookhaven National Laboratory  
Building 820M  
Upton, NY 11973  
Phone: (516) 344-2296  
Fax: (516) 344-3526  
E-mail: greene@bnl.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Grigg, Reid B.**

New Mexico Petroleum Recovery  
Research Center (PRRC)  
New Mexico Institute of Mining and  
Technology  
801 Leroy Place  
Socorro, NM 87801  
Phone: (505) 835-5403  
Fax: (505) 835-6031  
E-mail: reid@prrc.nmt.edu  
Breakout: Geological

**Gupta, Neeraj**

Battelle  
505 King Ave.  
Columbus, OH 43201  
Phone: (614) 424-3820  
Fax: (614) 424-3667  
E-mail: gupta@battelle.org  
Breakout: Geological

**Gupta, Raghbir**

Research Triangle Institute  
P.O. Box 12194  
3040 Cornwallis Road  
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709-  
2194  
Phone: (919) 541-8023  
Fax: (919) 541-8000  
E-mail: gupta@rti.org  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Gurley, Richard N.**

Idaho National Engineering and  
Environmental Laboratory  
Lockheed Martin Idaho Technologies  
Company  
P. O. Box 1625  
Idaho Falls, ID 83415-3790  
Phone: (208) 526-5958  
Fax: (208) 526-4236  
E-mail: T45@inel.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Guthrie, George D.**

Los Alamos National Laboratory,  
MS D462  
Los Alamos, NM 87545  
Phone: (505) 665-6340  
Fax: (505) 665-3285  
E-mail: gguthrie@lanl.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Guthrie, Hugh D.**

National Energy Technology Laboratory  
P. O. Box 880  
Morgantown, WV 26507-0880  
Phone: (304) 285-4632  
Fax: (304) 285-4469  
E-mail: hguthr@fetc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Heinemann, Heinz**

Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory  
1250 Maryland Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20024  
Phone: (202) 484-0880  
Fax: (202) 484-0888  
E-mail: Hheinemann@lbl.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Hendrey, George**

Brookhaven National Laboratory  
Bldg. 318  
Upton, NY 11973  
Phone: (516) 344-3262  
Fax: (516) 344-2060  
E-mail: hendrey@bnl.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Hendrix, Paul F.**

University of Georgia  
Institute of Ecology  
Athens, GA 30602  
Phone: (706) 542-2968  
Fax: (706) 542-6040  
E-mail:  
phendrix@sparc.ecology.uga.edu  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Herzog, Howard J.**

Massachusetts Institute of Technology  
Energy Laboratory, Room E40-471  
1 Amherst Street  
Cambridge, MA 02139  
Phone: (617) 253-0688  
Fax: (617) 253-8013  
E-mail: [hjherzog@mit.edu](mailto:hjherzog@mit.edu)  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Hill, Gardiner**

BP Amoco  
BP Exploration (Alaska), Inc.  
P. O. Box 190012  
900 E. Benson Blvd.  
Anchorage, AK 99519

**Hoagland, William**

Western Research Institute  
365 North 9th Street  
Laramie, WY 82072  
Phone: (307) 530-1140  
Fax: (307) 530-1385  
E-mail: [bhoaglan@uwyo.edu](mailto:bhoaglan@uwyo.edu)  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Hoffert, Martin I.**

New York University  
Faculty of Arts and Science  
Dept. of Physics, Room 503,  
Mail Code 1013  
4 Washington Place  
New York, NY 10003-6621  
Phone: (212) 460-9418 (Home)  
Fax: (212) 487-0734 (Home)  
E-mail: [marty.hoffert@nyu.edu](mailto:marty.hoffert@nyu.edu)  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Holtz, Mark H.**

Teknecon Energy Risk Advisors  
1 Hedgefield Court, Suite 200  
Austin, TX 78738-1322  
Phone: (512) 633-7984  
Fax: (512) 261-3993  
E-mail: [mholtz@teknecon.com](mailto:mholtz@teknecon.com)  
Breakout: Geological

**Houghton, John C.**

US Department of Energy  
Environmental Sciences Division,  
SC-74  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874-1290  
Phone: (301) 903-8288  
Fax: (301) 903-8519  
E-mail:  
[john.houghton@science.doe.gov](mailto:john.houghton@science.doe.gov)  
Breakout: Geological

**Hovorka, Susan D.**

Bureau of Economic Geology  
Box X  
The University of Texas at Austin  
Austin, TX 78756  
Phone: (512) 471-4863  
Fax: (512) 471-0140  
E-mail: [susan.hovorka@beg.utexas.edu](mailto:susan.hovorka@beg.utexas.edu)  
Breakout: Geological

**Hrubovcak, James**

USDA/OCE/GCPO  
1400 Independence Ave., Stop 3814  
Washington, DC 20250-3814  
Phone: (202) 720-6699  
Fax: (202) 401-1176  
E-mail: [jhrubovcak@oce.usda.gov](mailto:jhrubovcak@oce.usda.gov)  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Huesemann, Michael H.**

Pacific Northwest National Laboratory  
Marine Science Laboratory  
1529 West Sequim Bay Road  
Sequim, WA 98382  
Phone: (360) 681-3618  
Fax: (360) 681-3699  
E-mail: [michael.huesemann@pnl.gov](mailto:michael.huesemann@pnl.gov)  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Isern, Alexandra**

National Research Council  
Ocean Studies Board (HA-470)  
National Research Council  
2101 Constitution Ave., NW  
Washington, DC 20418  
Phone: (202) 334-2742  
Fax: (202) 334-2885  
E-mail: [aisern@nas.edu](mailto:aisern@nas.edu)  
Breakout: Geological

**Jacobs, Gary K.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6035  
Phone: (865) 576-0567  
Fax: (865) 574-7287  
E-mail: [jacobs@ornl.gov](mailto:jacobs@ornl.gov)  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Jahren, Hope**

Department of EPS  
Olin Hall  
Johns Hopkins University  
Baltimore, MD 21218  
Phone: (410) 516-7134  
Fax: (410) 516-7034  
E-mail: [jahren@gauss.eps.jhu.edu](mailto:jahren@gauss.eps.jhu.edu)  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Jardine, Philip M.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008, MS-6038  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6038  
Phone: (865) 574-8058  
Fax: (865) 576-8646  
E-mail: [ipj@ornl.gov](mailto:ipj@ornl.gov)  
Breakout: Geological

**Johnson, Dorothy K.**

McDermott Technology, Inc.  
1562 Beeson Street  
Alliance, OH 44641  
Phone: (330) 829-7395  
Fax: (330) 829-7801  
E-mail: [dot.k.johnson@mcdermott.com](mailto:dot.k.johnson@mcdermott.com)  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Johnson, Dale W.**

Earth and Ecosystem Sciences  
Desert Research Institute  
2215 Raggio Parkway  
Reno, NV 89512  
Phone: (775) 673-7379  
Fax: (775) 673-7485  
E-mail: [dwj@dri.edu](mailto:dwj@dri.edu)  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Johnson, James W.**

GET Division, L-219  
Lawrence Livermore National  
Laboratory  
P.O. Box 808  
Livermore, CA 94550  
Phone: (925) 423-7352  
Fax: (925) 422-0208  
E-mail: [jwjohnson@llnl.gov](mailto:jwjohnson@llnl.gov)  
Breakout: Geological

**Johnson, Rob**

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
Directorate Mail Stop 50A-4119C  
1 Cyclotron Road  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: (510) 486-4920  
E-mail: [rkjohnson@lbl.gov](mailto:rkjohnson@lbl.gov)

**Johnston, Sheridan**

SC Johnston Associates, Inc.  
P.O. Box 2003  
Danville, CA 94526  
Phone: (925) 552-6465  
Fax: (925) 552-6377  
E-mail: [techhelp@scjai.com](mailto:techhelp@scjai.com)  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Jones, Carol Adaire**

USDA  
1800 M St., NW, Rm S4189  
Washington, DC 20036-5831  
Phone: (202) 694-5500  
Fax: (202) 694-5773  
E-mail: [cjones@econ.ag.gov](mailto:cjones@econ.ag.gov)

**Joyce, Edward L.**

Los Alamos National Laboratory  
Science and Technology Base and  
Office of Science Programs, MS D673  
Los Alamos, NM 87545  
Phone: (505) 665-6799  
Fax: (505) 665-3199  
E-mail: Joyce@Lanl.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Judkins, Roddie R.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6084  
Phone: (865) 574-4572  
Fax: (865) 574-5812  
E-mail: judkinsrr@ornl.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Kadyszewski, John P.**

Winrock International  
1611 N. Kent Street, Suite 600  
Arlington, VA 22209  
Phone: (703) 525-9430, Ext. 618  
Fax: (703) 243-1744  
E-mail: jquinteros@winrock.org

**Kajita, Naoki**

NEDO  
1901 L Street, NW, Suite 602  
Washington, DC 20036  
Phone: (202) 822-9298  
Fax: (202) 822-9289  
E-mail: kajita@nedodc.org  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Kane, Robert**

U.S. Department of Energy, FE-26  
1000 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: (202) 586-4753  
E-mail: Robert.Kane@HQ.DOE.GOV  
Breakout: Geological

**Karolchik-Wafle, Trina**

West Virginia University  
P. O. Box 6064  
Evansdale Drive  
Morgantown, WV 26506-6064  
Phone: (304) 293-2867 ext. 5402  
Fax: (304) 293-3749  
E-mail: tkarolch@wvu.edu  
Breakout: Geological

**Keairns, Dale L.**

SAIC  
5419 Northumberland Street  
Pittsburgh, PA 15217  
Phone: (412) 681-7760  
Fax: (412) 681-9804  
E-mail: DLKEAIRNS@worldnet.att.net  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Kerrick, Derrill M.**

Geosciences Dept.  
Penn State University  
243 Deike Bldg.  
University Park, PA 16802  
Phone: (814) 865-7574  
Fax: (814) 865-3191  
E-mail: kerrick@geosc.psu.edu  
Breakout: Geological

**Khan, Ehsan U.**

US Department of Energy  
3H051, 1000 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: (202) 586-4785  
Fax: (202) 586-7719  
E-mail: Ehsan.Khan@science.doe.gov  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**King, Gary M.**

University of Maine  
Darling Marine Center  
193 Clark's Cove Road  
Walpole, ME 04573  
Phone: (207) 563-3146 ext. 207  
Fax: (207) 563-3119  
E-mail: gking@maine.edu  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Klein, Daniel E.**

Twenty-First Strategies, LLC  
6595 Terri Knoll Court  
McLean, VA 22101  
Phone: (703) 893-8333  
Fax: (703) 893-8813  
E-mail: dklein@21st-strategies.com  
Breakout: Geological

**Knauss, Kevin G.**

Lawrence Livermore National  
Laboratory, L-202  
Livermore, CA 94550  
Phone: (925) 422-1372  
Fax: (925) 422-0208  
E-mail: knauss@llnl.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Kono, Hisashi**

WVU College of Engineering and  
Mineral Resources  
P. O. Box 6102  
Morgantown, WV 26506-6102  
Phone: (304) 293-2111 ext. 421  
E-mail: hkono2@wvu.edu  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Kou, Jingyee**

Versar, Inc.  
9200 Rumsey Road  
Columbia, MD 21045  
Phone: (410) 740-6102  
Fax: (410) 964-5156  
E-mail: koujin@versar.com  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Krebs, Martha**

US Department of Energy  
Office of Science, SC-1  
1000 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: (202) 586-5430  
E-mail: Martha.Krebs@science.doe.gov

**Kripowicz, Robert**

US Department of Energy  
Office of Fossil Energy, FE-2  
1000 Independence Ave. SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: (202) 586-4695  
E-mail: Robert.Kripowicz@hq.doe.gov

**Kuuskraa, Vello A.**

Advanced Resources International  
1110 North Glebe Road, Suite 600  
Arlington, VA 22201  
Phone: (703) 528-8420  
Fax: (703) 528-0439  
E-mail: vkuuskraa@adv-res.com  
Breakout: Geological

**Langley, Lorie**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6248  
Phone: (865) 574-4185  
E-mail: langleyla@ornl.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Lee, Arthur**

Texaco  
1111 Bagby Street  
Houston, TX 77002  
Phone: (713) 752-3871  
E-mail: leea@texaco.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Legg, John**

Natural Resources Canada  
580 Booth Street, 14th Floor, C2  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K1A 0E4  
Canada  
Phone: (613) 995-0968  
Fax: (613) 995-6146  
E-mail: jlegg@nrcan.gc.ca  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Lehfeldt, Richard**

Edison Mission Energy  
555 Twelfth St., NW, Suite 640  
Washington, DC 20004  
Phone: (202) 638-0133  
Fax: (202) 638-0534  
E-mail:  
richard\_lehfeldt@missionenergy.com

**Lewis, Craig A.**

Gas Technology Management Team  
Chevron Petroleum Technology  
Company  
2202 Oil Center Court  
Houston, TX 77073  
Phone: (281) 230-2916  
Fax: (281) 230-2669  
E-mail: cral@chevron.com

**Luce, Benjamin P.**

Los Alamos National Laboratory  
MS B284  
Los Alamos, NM 87545  
Phone: (505) 667-2560  
Fax: (505) 665-5757  
E-mail: luceb@lanl.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Mackell, Joe**

Marathon Oil Company  
539 S. Main Street, Room 7008  
Findlay, OH 45840  
Phone: (419) 421-3442  
Fax: (419) 424-1953  
E-mail: jhmackell@marathonoil.com  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Magrini, Kimberly A.**

National Renewable Energy Laboratory  
1617 Cole Blvd.  
Golden, CO 80401  
Phone: (303) 275-3706  
Fax: (303) 275-2905  
E-mail: kim\_magrini@nrel.gov

**Malinverno, Alberto**

Schlumberger-Doll Research  
Old Quarry Road  
Ridgefield, CT 06877  
Phone: (203) 431-5000  
Fax: (203) 438-3819  
E-mail: alberto@ridgefield.sdr.slb.com  
Breakout: Geological

**Manale, Andrew**

US Environmental Protection Agency  
USEPA OPR OPD, Mail Code 2121  
401 M St., SW  
Washington, DC 20460  
Phone: (202) 260-9620  
E-mail: Manale.Andrew@epa.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Markels, Michael**

Ocean Farming, Inc.  
6850 Versar Center  
Springfield, VA 22151  
Phone: (703) 750-3000  
Fax: (703) 642-6850  
E-mail: MMarkels@aol.com  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**McBroom, Martin**

Pew Center on Global Climate Change  
2111 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 350  
Arlington, VA 22201  
Phone: (703) 516-4122  
Fax: (703) 841-1422  
E-mail: McBroom@pewclimate.org  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Megonigal, Patrick**

George Mason University  
Department of Biology (3E1)  
Fairfax, VA 22030-4444  
Phone: (703) 993-1045  
Fax: (703) 993-1046  
E-mail: jmegonig@gmu.edu  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Mehlhorn, Rolf J.**

Lawrence Berkeley National Lab  
Mailstop 70-108B  
1 Cyclotron Rd.  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: (510) 486-5068  
Fax: (510) 486-7303  
E-mail: RJMehlhorn@lbl.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Biological

**Melillo, Jerry M.**

Marine Biological Laboratory  
7 MBL Street  
Woods Hole, MA 02543  
Phone: (508) 289-7494  
Fax: (508) 457-1543  
E-mail: jmelillo@mbl.edu  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Melzer, Steve**

CO<sub>2</sub> Flooding Consultant  
P. O. Box 2083  
Midland, TX 79702-2083  
Phone: (915) 682-7664  
Fax: (915) 682-9955  
E-mail: melzerls@aol.com  
Breakout: Geological

**Metting, F. Blaine**

Pacific Northwest National Laboratory  
902 Battelle Blvd., P7-54  
Richland, WA 99352  
Phone: (509) 372-0317  
E-mail: blaine.metting@pnl.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Muchunas, Peter**

DOE Fossil Energy  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874  
Phone: (301) 903-2603  
E-mail: peter.muchunas@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Biological

**Myer, Larry**

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory  
Earth Science Division, MS 90-1116  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Phone: (510) 486-6456  
Fax: (510) 486-5686  
E-mail: lrmyer@lbl.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Myers, Larry D.**

Allegheny Energy  
800 Cabin Hill Dr.  
Greensburg, PA 15601  
Phone: (724) 838-6806  
Fax: (724) 838-6888  
E-mail: lmyers@alleghenyenergy.com  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Northam, Mark A.**

Mobil Oil Corp.  
3225 Gallows Rd., Rm. 7C2110  
Fairfax, VA 22037  
Phone: (703) 846-4454  
Fax: (703) 846-3226  
E-mail:  
mark\_a\_northam@email.mobil.com  
Breakout: Geological

**Nsakala, Nsakala**

ABB Alstom Power  
2000 Day Hill Road  
Windsor, CT 06095  
Phone: (860) 285-2018  
Fax: (860) 285-3473  
E-mail:  
nsakala.y.nsakala@uspl.mail.abb.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Nunez, Rafael A.**

Southern Company  
600 North 18th St.  
Bin 14N-8195  
Birmingham, AL 35203  
Phone: (205) 257-5950  
Fax: (205) 257-5367  
E-mail: ranunez@southernco.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Oechel, Walter C.**

San Diego State University  
Global Change Research Group  
5500 Campanille Ave.  
San Diego, CA 92182  
Phone: (619) 594 4818  
Fax: (619) 594-4818  
E-mail: oechel@sunstroke.sdsu.edu  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Pennington, Randy**

US Department of Energy  
Office of Fossil Energy  
20005 Wanegarden Ct.  
Germantown, MD 20874  
Phone: (301) 903 3485  
Fax: (301) 903 8350  
E-mail: randy.pennington@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Ornstein, Rick L.**

Pacific Northwest National Laboratory  
P. O. Box 999 / MS K2-21  
Richland, WA 99352  
Phone: (509) 375-2132  
Fax: (509) 375-6904  
E-mail: rl\_ornstein@pnl.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Biological

**Peterson, Tom D.**

Office of Policy and Reinvention  
US Environmental Protection Agency  
401 M Street, SW (2121)  
Washington, DC 20460  
Phone: (202) 260-2148  
Fax: (202) 260-6913  
E-mail: tdp1@cais.com  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Palmisano, Anna C.**

US Department of Energy  
Office of Biological and Environmental  
Research, SC-74  
19901 Germantown Rd.  
Germantown, MD 20874  
Phone: (301) 903-9963  
Fax: (301) 903-8519  
E-mail:  
anna.palmisano@science.doe.gov  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Petty, Barry F.**

Atlantic Richfield Company  
P.O. Box 1610  
Midland, TX 79701  
Phone: (915) 688-5822  
Fax: (915) 688-5271  
E-mail: bpetty@mail.arco.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Petzrick, Paul**

Maryland Department of Natural  
Resources  
Power Plant Assessment Division, B-3  
Tawes State Office Building  
Annapolis, MD 21401  
Phone: (410) 260-8669  
Fax: (410) 260-8670  
E-mail: ppetzrick@dnr.state.md.us

**Palumbo, Anthony V.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6038  
Phone: (865) 576-8002  
Fax: (865) 576-8646  
E-mail: palumboav@ornl.gov  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Phinney, Jonathan T.**

Center for Marine Conservation  
1725 DeSales Street #600  
Washington, DC 20036  
Phone: (202) 429-5609  
Fax: (202) 872-0691  
E-mail: jphinney@dccmc.org  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Pena, Naomi**

Pew Center on Global Climate Change  
2111 Wilson Blvd., Suite 350  
Arlington, VA 22201  
Phone: (703) 516-4148  
E-mail: pena@pewclimate.org  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Portzer, Jeffrey W.**

Research Triangle Institute  
Center for Engineering and  
Environmental Technology  
P. O. Box 2194  
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709-  
2194  
Phone: (919) 541-8025  
Fax: (919) 541-8000  
E-mail: jwp@rti.org  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Poutsma, Marvin L.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P. O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37861-6129  
Phone: (865) 574-5028  
Fax: (865) 574-4902  
E-mail: pou@ornl.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Reck, Ruth A.**

National Institute for Global  
Environmental Change/ U.C. Davis  
University of California  
1490 Drew Ave., Suite 140  
Davis, CA 95616  
Phone: (530) 757 3401  
Fax: (530) 756 6499  
E-mail: rareck@ucdavis.edu  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Reichle, David E.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P. O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6253  
Phone: (865) 574-4333  
Fax: (865) 574-9869  
E-mail: der@ornl.gov

**Rezaiyan, John**

K&M Engineering  
2001 L Street, NW  
Washington, DC 20036  
Phone: (202) 728-0390  
Fax: (202) 872-9174  
E-mail: jrezaiyan@mailer.kmec.com  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Rice, Donald L.**

Division of Ocean Sciences  
National Science Foundation  
4201 Wilson Boulevard  
Arlington, VA 22230  
Phone: (703) 306-1589  
Fax: (703) 306-0390  
E-mail: drice@nsf.gov  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Riley, Robert G.**

Pacific Northwest National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 999, MS K6-96  
Richland, WA 99352  
Phone: (509) 376-1935  
Fax: (509) 372-1704  
E-mail: robert.riley@pnl.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Rochelle, Gary**

Dept. of Chem. Engineering  
University of Texas at Austin  
Campus Mail Code: C0400  
Austin, TX 78712  
Phone: (512) 571-7230  
E-mail: rochelle@che.utexas.edu

**Romanek, Chris**

Savannah River Ecology Lab  
Drawer E  
Aiken, SC 29802  
Phone: (803) 725-5883  
Fax: (803) 725-3309  
E-mail: romanek@srel.edu  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Rosenberg, Norman J.**

Pacific Northwest National Laboratory  
901 D Street SW  
Washington, DC 20024  
Phone: (202) 646- 5029  
Fax: (202) 646 7845  
E-mail: nj.rosenberg@pnl.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Saroff, Lawrence**

Environmental Systems (FE)  
US Department of Energy, FE-23  
19901 Germantown Road  
Gaithersburg, MD 20874  
Phone: (301) 903-9483  
Fax: (301) 903-8350  
E-mail: lawrence.saroff@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Sass, Bruce M.**

Battelle  
505 King Ave.  
Columbus, OH 43201  
Phone: (614) 424-6315  
Fax: (614) 424-3667  
E-mail: sassb@battelle.org  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Schmalzer, David K.**

Argonne National Laboratory  
955 L'Enfant Plaza North, SW  
Washington, DC 20024  
Phone: (202) 488-2415  
Fax: (202) 488-2413  
E-mail: schmalzer@anl.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Schmidt, Charles E.**

US Department of Energy  
P.O. Box 10940  
Pittsburgh, PA 15236-0940  
Phone: (412) 386-6090  
Fax: (412) 386-4822  
E-mail: schmidt@fetc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Schmidt, Thomas W.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P. O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6273  
Phone: (865) 574-4977  
Fax: (865) 574-7229  
E-mail: schmidttw@ornl.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Shah, Tanvir H.**

LI-COR, Inc.  
4421 Superior Street  
P. O. Box 4425  
Lincoln, NE 68504  
Phone: (402) 467-3575  
Fax: (402) 467-2819  
E-mail: tdshah@env.licor.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Sheffield, John**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6248  
Phone: (865) 574-5510  
Fax: (865) 576-6118  
E-mail: sheffieldj@ornl.gov

**Shriner, David S.**

US Department of Agriculture  
Forest Service  
North Central Research Station  
1992 Folwell Avenue  
St. Paul, MN 55108  
Phone: (651) 649-5260  
Fax: (651) 649-5256  
E-mail: dshriner/nc@fs.fed.us  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Silverman, Linda**

Department of Energy  
1000 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: (202) 586-3896  
Fax: (202) 586-4341  
E-mail: linda.silverman@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Simbeck, Dale**

SFA Pacific, Inc.  
444 Castro St., Suite 920  
Mountain View, CA 94041  
Phone: (650) 969-8876  
Fax: (650) 969-1317  
E-mail: Simbeck@sfapac.vip.best.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Smith, Jeffrey L.**

US Department of Agriculture-ARS  
215 Johnson Hall  
Washington State University  
Pullman, WA 99164-6421  
Phone: (509) 335-7648  
Fax: (509) 335-3842  
E-mail: jsmith@mail.wsu.edu  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Smith, Lowell**

US Environmental Protection Agency/  
ORD  
M/C 8601 D  
401 M St., SW  
Washington, DC 20460  
Phone: (202) 564-3389  
Fax: (202) 565-0075  
E-mail: smith.lowell@epa.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Smith, Robert E.**

US Environmental Protection Agency  
401 M St. SW, Mail Stop 4606  
Washington, DC 20460  
Phone: (202) 260-5559  
Fax: (202) 401-2345  
E-mail: Smith.Robert-eu@epa.gov.

**Socolow, Robert**

Engineering Quad H-103  
Princeton University  
Olden Street  
Princeton, NJ 8544  
Phone: (609) 258-5446  
E-mail: socolow@princeton.edu  
Breakout: Geological

**Solomon, Burt R.**

National Journal  
1501 M Street, NW  
Washington, DC 20005  
Phone: (202) 739-8432  
E-mail: BSolomon@njdc.com  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Solomon, Jack**

Praxair Inc.  
777 Old Saw Mill River Rd.  
Tarrytown, NY 10580  
Phone: (914)345-6442  
Fax: (914)345-6486  
E-mail: jack\_solomon@praxair.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Stein, Kim O.**

INEEL  
Lockheed Martin Idaho Technologies  
North Building, Suite 1440  
955 L'Enfant Plaza, SW  
Washington, DC 20024  
Phone: (202) 475-2236  
Fax: (202) 475-2228  
E-mail: STEIKO@INEL.GOV  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Stokes, Bryce J.**

US Department of Agriculture  
Forest Service  
VMPR Staff, I-C  
P.O. Box 96090  
Washington, DC 20090-6090  
Phone: (202) 205-1147  
Fax: (202) 205-2497  
E-mail: bstokes/wo@fs.fed.us  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Stone, Paul D.**

Dow Chemical Co.  
1776 I St., NW, Suite 1050  
Washington, DC 20006  
Phone: (202) 429-3440  
Fax: (202) 429-3467  
E-mail: pstone@dow.com  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Stoots, Tish**

INEEL  
P.O. Box 1625, MS 2110  
Idaho Falls, ID 83415-2110  
Phone: (208) 526-1764  
Fax: (208) 526-9822  
E-mail: reespa@inel.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Biological

**Strycker, Arden**  
TRW Petroleum Technologies  
P. O. Box 2543  
Bartlesville, OK 74005  
Phone: (918) 338-4457  
Fax: (918) 338-4411  
E-mail: astrycker@compuserve.com  
Breakout: Geological

**Summers, Jeffrey S.**  
US Department of Energy, FE-23  
19901 Germantown Rd.  
Germantown, MD 20874  
Phone: (301) 903-4412  
Fax: (301) 903-8350  
E-mail: jeff.summers@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Surles, Terry**  
Lawrence Livermore National  
Laboratory  
P. O. Box 808 M/S 640  
Livermore, CA 94551  
Phone: (925) 423-1415  
Fax: (925) 423-2395  
E-mail: surles1@llnl.gov  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Takahashi, Taro**  
Columbia University  
Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory  
Columbia University  
Route 9W  
Palisades, NY 10964  
Phone: (914) 365-8537  
Fax: (914) 365-8155  
E-mail: taka@ldeo.columbia.edu  
Breakout: Geological

**Taylor, John A.**  
Argonne National Laboratory  
Mathematics and Computer Science  
and Environmental Research  
Divisions  
9700 S. Cass Ave.  
Argonne, IL 60439  
Phone: (630) 252-7162  
Fax: (630) 252-5986  
E-mail: jtaylor@mcs.anl.gov  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Teeri, James A.**  
1111 Natural Science Bldg.  
University of Michigan  
Ann Arbor, MI 48109  
Phone: (734) 763-4461  
Fax: (734) 647-1952  
E-mail: jateeri@umich.edu  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Thomas, Charles P.**  
INEEL  
P.O. Box 1625, MS 2110  
Idaho Falls, ID 83415-2110  
Phone: (208) 526-7004  
Fax: (208) 526-9822  
E-mail: thomcp@inel.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Thomas, David C.**  
BP Amoco Corporation  
150 West Warrenville Road  
P.O. Box 3011  
Naperville, IL 60566-7011  
Phone: (630) 420-5538  
Fax: (630) 961-6508  
E-mail: dthomas@amoco.com  
Breakout: Geological

**Thomas, Steven R.**  
NREL  
1617 Cole Blvd.  
Golden, CO 80401  
Phone: (303) 275-3858  
Fax: (303) 275-3799  
E-mail: steven\_thomas@nrel.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Biological

**Tieszen, Larry L.**  
EROS Data Center  
US Geological Survey  
Mundt Federal Bldg.  
Sioux Falls, SD 57198  
Phone: (605) 594-6056  
Fax: (605) 594-6529  
E-mail: tieszen@edcmail.cr.usgs.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Tomski, Pamela**

Wampler Associates  
1130 17th Street, NW, Suite 312  
Washington, DC 20036  
Phone: (202) 861-2841  
E-mail: ptomski@erols.com  
Breakout: Advanced Biological

**Trabalka, John R.**

Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P.O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6180  
Phone: (865) 574-7382  
Fax: (865) 574-9512  
E-mail: tra@ornl.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Biological

**Tripp, Alan C.**

UEES, University of Utah  
1495 E. 100 S., Rm 138 KRC  
Salt Lake City, UT 84112  
Phone: (435) 462-2112  
Fax: (801) 581-7067  
E-mail: actripp@mines.utah.edu  
Breakout: Geological

**Turner, Paul C.**

Albany Research Center-DOE  
1450 Queen Ave. SW  
Albany, OR 97321  
Phone: (541) 967-5863  
Fax: (541) 967-5958  
E-mail: turner@alrc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Usselman, Thomas M.**

Board on Earth Sciences and  
Resources  
National Academy of Sciences  
2101 Constitution Ave., NW  
Washington, DC 20418  
Phone: (202) 334-2744  
Fax: (202) 334-1377  
E-mail: usselman@nas.edu  
Breakout: Geological

**Van Bibber, Lawrence E.**

SAIC  
P.O. Box 18288  
Pittsburgh, PA 15236  
Phone: (412) 386 4853  
Fax: (412) 386 4604  
E-mail: vanbabb@fetc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Van Ooteghem, Suellen A.**

National Energy Technology Laboratory  
3610 Collins Ferry Rd.  
P. O. Box 880  
Morgantown, WV 26507-0880  
Phone: (304) 285-5443  
Fax: (304) 285-4403  
E-mail: svanoo@fetc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Biological

**Vance, Eric D.**

National Council for Air and Stream  
Improvement, Inc.  
P.O. Box 13318  
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709  
Phone: (919) 558-1979  
Fax: (919) 558-1998  
E-mail: evance@ncasi.org  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Varma, Sneh K.**

STS, Inc.  
Box 30225  
Bethesda, MD 20824  
Phone: (301) 530-2189  
Fax: (301) 897-0185  
E-mail: SNEHK@aol.com

**Verma, Shashi B.**

School of Natural Resource Sciences  
University of Nebraska-Lincoln  
244 L.W. Chase Hall  
Lincoln, NE 68583-0728  
Phone: (402) 472-6702  
Fax: (402) 472-6614  
E-mail: sverma1@UNL.EDU  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Viviani, Don J.**

US Environmental Protection Agency  
401 M Street  
Washington, DC 20460  
Phone: (202) 260-2767  
E-mail: viviani.donn@epamail.epa.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Wafle, Trina K.**

National Research Center for Coal  
and Energy  
West Virginia University  
P. O. Box 6064  
Morgantown, WV 26506-6064  
Phone: (304) 293-2867 ext. 5402  
Fax: (304) 293-3749  
E-mail: tkarolch@wvu.edu  
Breakout: Geological

**Walker, Daniel**

National Research Council  
2101 Constitution Avenue, NW,  
HA-470  
Washington, DC 20418  
Phone: (202) 334-2714  
Fax: (202) 334-2885  
E-mail: dwalker@nas.edu  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Walters, Richard P.**

Albany Research Center-DOE  
1450 Queen Ave. SW  
Albany, OR 97321  
Phone: (541) 967-5873  
Fax: (541) 967-5991  
E-mail: walters@alrc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Chemical

**Warzinski, Robert P.**

National Energy Technology Laboratory  
P.O. Box 10940  
Pittsburgh, PA 15236-0940  
Phone: (412) 386-5863  
Fax: (412) 386-4806  
E-mail: warzinsk@fetc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Direct Injection

**Weedman, Suzanne D.**

US Geological Survey  
MS 915A  
12201 Sunrise Valley Dr.  
Reston, VA 20192  
Phone: (703) 648-6470  
Fax: (703) 648-5464  
E-mail: sweedman@usgs.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Westrich, Henry R.**

Geochemistry Department  
Sandia National Laboratories  
P.O. Box 5800-0750  
Albuquerque, NM 87185-0750  
Phone: (505) 844-9092  
Fax: (505) 844-7354  
E-mail: hrwestr@sandia.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**White, Gregory J.**

Idaho National Engineering and Environmental Laboratory  
P.O. Box 1625-2213  
Idaho Falls, ID 83415-2213  
Phone: (208) 526-9501  
Fax: (208) 526-0603  
E-mail: gjw@inel.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**White, Scott**

KU Energy Research Center  
University of Kansas  
1930 Constant Ave.  
Lawrence, KS 66047-3726  
Phone: (785) 864-3965  
Fax: (785) 864-5317  
E-mail: whites@kgs.ukans.edu  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Whitney, Earl**

Los Alamos National Laboratory  
MS D446  
Los Alamos, NM 87545  
Phone: (505) 667-3595  
Fax: (505) 667-3494  
E-mail: whitney@lanl.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Wickland, Diane E.**  
NASA Office of Earth Science  
Code YS  
300 E Street, SW  
Washington, DC 20546  
Phone: (202) 358-0245  
Fax: (202) 358-2771  
E-mail: Diane.Wickland@hq.nasa.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Wilbur, James T.**  
Concurrent Technologies Corporation  
M/S 922/178c  
P. O. Box 10940  
Pittsburgh, PA 15236-0940  
Phone: (412) 386-5916  
Fax: (412) 366-6404  
E-mail: wilbur@fetc.doe.gov  
Breakout: Separation and Capture

**Wirick, Creighton D.**  
Department of Applied Science  
Building 179A  
Brookhaven National Laboratory  
Upton, NY 11973-5000  
Phone: (516) 344-3063  
Fax: (516) 344-4130  
E-mail: wirick@bnl.gov  
Breakout: Natural Enhancement

**Wojick, David**  
Greening Earth Society  
391 Flickertail Lane  
Star Tannery, VA 22654  
Phone: (540) 858-3503  
E-mail: dwojick@shentel.net  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**Wolfe, Hattie C.**  
US Department of Energy  
Office of Fossil Energy, FE-5  
1000 Independence Ave., SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: (202) 586-2667  
Fax: (202) 586-5146  
E-mail: hattie.wolfe@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Woodward, Nicholas B.**  
Office of Basic Energy Sciences, SC-15  
US Department of Energy  
19901 Germantown Road  
Germantown, MD 20874  
Phone: (301) 903-4061  
Fax: (301) 903-0271  
E-mail:  
nick.woodward@science.doe.gov  
Breakout: Geological

**Wootten, John M.**  
Peabody Group  
701 Market Street, 7th Flr.  
St Louis, MO 63101-1826  
Phone: (314) 34207560  
Fax: (314) 34207562  
E-mail: jwootten@peabodygroup.com  
Breakout: Geological

**Wright, Sara F.**  
USDA-ARS-Soil Microbial Systems Lab  
Bldg. 001, Rm. 140, BARC-W  
10300 Baltimore Ave.  
Beltsville, MD 20705  
Phone: (301) 504-8156  
Fax: (301) 504-8370  
E-mail: swright@asrr.arsusda.gov  
Breakout: Advanced Biological

**Wullschleger, Stan D.**  
Environmental Sciences Division  
Oak Ridge National Laboratory  
P. O. Box 2008  
Oak Ridge, TN 37831-6422  
Phone: (865) 574-7839  
Fax: (865) 576-9939  
E-mail: w5d@ornl.gov  
Breakout: Terrestrial

**York, Michael T.**  
US Department of Energy, FE-30  
1000 Independence Ave. SW  
Washington, DC 20585  
Phone: (202) 586-5669  
Fax: (202) 586-6221  
E-mail: Michael.York@hq.doe.gov  
Breakout: Geological